

# Your Open World Online Practice Activation code





#### Students

- 1 Scratch panel to see code
- 2 Register or log in at cambridgelms.org/main
- 3 Click on 'Activate a New Product' and use your Activation code

In a class?

Your teacher can provide a class code.

Teachers

Go to cambridgelms.org/main for more information.

Help

Go to cambridgelms.org/help

Your activation code can only be used once. It will be valid for 18 months from activation.

### e-Source Access Code

Use this code to access the Audio files for your **Student's Book**:

# owksbssp

### Go to esource.cambridge.org

If you already have an account: enter your email address and password and press **Sign In**.

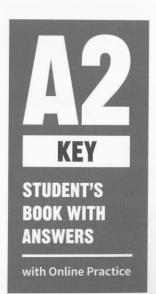
If this is your first time using e-Source: press *Create account* and follow the steps.



Official Cambridge Exam Preparation

**Anna Cowper** 

with Sheila Dignen and Susan White



Cambridge University Press www.cambridge.org/elt

Cambridge Assessment English www.cambridgeenglish.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781108753012

© Cambridge University Press and UCLES 2019

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2019

20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Printed in the United Kingdom by Latimer Trend

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-108-75301-2 Student's Book with answers with Online Practice

The publishers have no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and do not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but the publishers do not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

# CONTENTS

Map of the book				
How to use	e this book	6		
Starter	Who I am	8		
Unit 1	A busy life	14		
Unit 2	Changing world	26		
Progress ch	neck 1	38		
Unit 3	Free time, screen time?	40		
Unit 4	Keep fit, feel good	52		
Unit 5	More than a holiday	64		
Progress ch	neck 2	76		
Unit 6	Time for food	78		
Unit 7	Live life!	90		
Unit 8	Feels like home	102		
Progress ch	114			
Unit 9	Getting along	116		
Unit 10	Out and about	128		
Unit 11	Saving and spending	140		
Progress ch	152			
Unit 12	Through life	154		
Unit 13	About me	166		
Unit 14	Play it, watch it, love it	178		
Progress ch	neck 5	190		
Communic	ation activities	192		
Grammar i	reference	196		
Irregular ve	erb list	226		
Phrasal ver	b bank	227		
Writing ba	nk	229		
Speaking b	pank	237		
Exam infor	mation	243		
Answer key	244			

UNIT TITLE	READING	LISTENING	WRITING
Starter Who I am p. 8	Karl's family Miguel's life	Personal information Pronouncing the letters of the alphabet	A profile
A busy life p. 14	Part 2 Night jobs My journey to work	Routines Part 1 Short dialogues Pronouncing times	An email about a job
2 Changing world p. 26	Living in a different country	Part 2 A trip to the beach A cycle ride	Part 6 An email invitation An email asking for information
Progress check 1 p. 38	-9.579.743	M	Unit 1 A busylise
3 Free time, screen time? p. 40	<b>Part 3</b> A professional video gamer Working in the theatre	Part 5 Weekend activities A trip to the city	A review
4 Keep fit, feel good p. 52	Amazing athletes	Part 4 Short dialogues or monologues	Part 7 A story
<b>More than a holiday</b> p. 64	A camel and me A journey in the Gobi Desert  Part 4 Antoine de Saint-Exupéry An unusual hotel room	Different kinds of traveller A talk about Benedict Allen	An email
Progress check 2 p. 76		SI A	ODDI IDI SIIIII G MILLO
Time for food p. 78	Cooking? No thanks!  Part 1 Signs and notices	Part 3 A dinner party A cooking course	A recipe
7 Live life! p. 90	Part 3 An interview with an actor The night sky	Hobbies The recycled orchestra	A leaflet
8 Feels like home p. 102	Where I live Part 5 Completing an email	A celebrity home	Part 6 An email arrangement An email invitation
Progress check 3 p. 114		154	Shinguanti 21 finU
9 Getting along p. 116	What kind of friend are you?  Part 2 Life change  My boss	Part 4 Short dialogues or monologues	An email giving advice
10 Out and about p. 128	The High Line and the Lowline	Part 1 Short dialogues	A thank you email
Saving and spending p. 140	Money and me Part 1 Signs and notices	Making plans  Part 5 Asking for advice  Talking about a party	A review
Progress check 4 p. 152		229	Annot onithW
12 Through life p. 154	My education Part 4 Rebel Wilson What is a curriculum vitae?	Jobs Part 3 A new job A course	A job application
13 About me p. 166	Family relationships Part 5 Completing an email Best-dressed celebrities	Part 2 A new shop A fashion course	A product review
	The changing face of football	Kenya's amazing young runners	Part 7 A story

	Personal information  What you do and what you like  Describing a photo  Talking about the weekend  Telling a story  Part 2 Different types of holiday	Be Have got Can Present simple – he/she/it  Present simple Question forms Adverbs of frequency  Present continuous Present simple or present continuous?  Past simple of to be Past simple Pronouncing -ed endings  Can and can't; could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as Pronouncing was and were	Countries and nationalities Families  Things I do Jobs B1 Applying for a job  Seasons and months Weather Geography and the natural world Pronouncing months B1 Weather collocations  TV and the Internet Time expressions B1 Adjectives to describe films  The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body  Travel Easily confused words	Talking about yourself in Mexico City  Asking about the weather in Vancouver  Buying tickets for a show in New York  If you're ill in Dublin  Going on a sightseeing tour in Berlin
	Describing a photo  Talking about the weekend  Telling a story  Part 2 Different types of holiday	Present simple – he/she/it  Present simple Question forms Adverbs of frequency  Present continuous Present simple or present continuous?  Past simple of to be Past simple Pronouncing -ed endings  Can and can't; could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	Things I do Jobs B1 Applying for a job  Seasons and months Weather Geography and the natural world Pronouncing months B1 Weather collocations  TV and the Internet Time expressions B1 Adjectives to describe films  The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body  Travel	Asking about the weather in Vancouver  Buying tickets for a show in New York  If you're ill in Dublin  Going on a sightseeing tour in
	Describing a photo  Talking about the weekend  Telling a story  Part 2 Different types of holiday	Present simple – he/she/it  Present simple Question forms Adverbs of frequency  Present continuous Present simple or present continuous?  Past simple of to be Past simple Pronouncing -ed endings  Can and can't; could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	Jobs B1 Applying for a job  Seasons and months Weather Geography and the natural world Pronouncing months B1 Weather collocations  TV and the Internet Time expressions B1 Adjectives to describe films  The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body  Travel	Asking about the weather in Vancouver  Buying tickets for a show in New York  If you're ill in Dublin  Going on a sightseeing tour in
	Describing a photo  Talking about the weekend  Telling a story  Part 2 Different types of holiday	Question forms Adverbs of frequency  Present continuous Present simple or present continuous?  Past simple of to be Past simple Pronouncing -ed endings  Can and can't; could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	Jobs B1 Applying for a job  Seasons and months Weather Geography and the natural world Pronouncing months B1 Weather collocations  TV and the Internet Time expressions B1 Adjectives to describe films  The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body  Travel	Asking about the weather in Vancouver  Buying tickets for a show in New York  If you're ill in Dublin  Going on a sightseeing tour in
	Describing a photo  Talking about the weekend  Telling a story  Part 2 Different types of holiday	Present continuous Present simple or present continuous?  Past simple of to be Past simple Pronouncing -ed endings  Can and can't; could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	Jobs B1 Applying for a job  Seasons and months Weather Geography and the natural world Pronouncing months B1 Weather collocations  TV and the Internet Time expressions B1 Adjectives to describe films  The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body  Travel	Asking about the weather in Vancouver  Buying tickets for a show in New York  If you're ill in Dublin  Going on a sightseeing tour in
	Talking about the weekend  Telling a story  Part 2 Different types of holiday	Present continuous Present simple or present continuous?  Past simple of to be Past simple Pronouncing -ed endings  Can and can't; could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	Seasons and months Weather Geography and the natural world Pronouncing months B1 Weather collocations  TV and the Internet Time expressions B1 Adjectives to describe films  The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body  Travel	Buying tickets for a show in New York  If you're ill in Dublin  Going on a sightseeing tour in
	Talking about the weekend  Telling a story  Part 2 Different types of holiday	Past simple of to be Past simple Pronouncing -ed endings  Can and can't; could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	Weather Geography and the natural world Pronouncing months B1 Weather collocations  TV and the Internet Time expressions B1 Adjectives to describe films  The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body  Travel	Buying tickets for a show in New York  If you're ill in Dublin  Going on a sightseeing tour in
	Telling a story  Part 2 Different types of holiday	Past simple of to be Past simple Pronouncing -ed endings  Can and can't; could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	Geography and the natural world Pronouncing months B1 Weather collocations  TV and the Internet Time expressions B1 Adjectives to describe films  The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body  Travel	Buying tickets for a show in New York  If you're ill in Dublin  Going on a sightseeing tour in
	Telling a story  Part 2 Different types of holiday	Past simple Pronouncing -ed endings  Can and can't; could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	Pronouncing months B1 Weather collocations  TV and the Internet Time expressions B1 Adjectives to describe films  The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body  Travel	New York  If you're ill in Dublin  Going on a sightseeing tour in
	Telling a story  Part 2 Different types of holiday	Past simple Pronouncing -ed endings  Can and can't; could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	TV and the Internet Time expressions B1 Adjectives to describe films The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body Travel	New York  If you're ill in Dublin  Going on a sightseeing tour i
	Telling a story  Part 2 Different types of holiday	Past simple Pronouncing -ed endings  Can and can't; could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	Time expressions B1 Adjectives to describe films The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body Travel	New York  If you're ill in Dublin  Going on a sightseeing tour i
	Telling a story  Part 2 Different types of holiday	Past simple Pronouncing -ed endings  Can and can't; could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	Time expressions B1 Adjectives to describe films The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body Travel	New York  If you're ill in Dublin  Going on a sightseeing tour in
	Part 2 Different types of holiday	Pronouncing -ed endings  Can and can't; could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	B1 Adjectives to describe films  The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body  Travel	If you're ill in Dublin  Going on a sightseeing tour in
	Part 2 Different types of holiday	Can and can't, could and couldn't Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	The body Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body Travel	Going on a sightseeing tour in
	Part 2 Different types of holiday	Should/shouldn't for giving advice Stressed and unstressed can and could  Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	Illness and injury Linking words B1 Parts of the body Travel	Going on a sightseeing tour in
	holiday	Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	Linking words B1 Parts of the body Travel	Going on a sightseeing tour in
	holiday	Past continuous Past simple and past continuous B1 When, while and as	B1 Parts of the body Travel	Going on a sightseeing tour in
	holiday	Past simple and past continuous B1 <i>When, while</i> and <i>as</i>	Travel	Going on a sightseeing tour i
	holiday	Past simple and past continuous B1 <i>When, while</i> and <i>as</i>	77 77 77	Going on a sightseeing tour i
		B1 When, while and as	Lasily Confused words	
	Malitan			Del IIII
	AA-L-S			
	k4-1:			
	Making suggestions	Countable and uncountable nouns	Food and meals	Buying a coffee and a snack
		A/an, some and any	B1 Preparing food	Vienna
		Expressions of quantity Pronouncing -s endings		
_	Part 1 Talking about your		Free time	c !: [
	hobbies	Present perfect: Have you ever? Present perfect with just	The theatre	Spending your free time in London
		Pronouncing Have you ever?	Music performers	Loridon
		,	B1 Linking words	
	Describing where you live	Present perfect with for and since	Houses	Living and learning in Malta
	B1 Describing a picture	Present perfect with yet and already	Kitchen items	
		Present perfect vs past simple	Prepositions	
-			Pronouncing prepositions	
-	C:: 1:	V. L. J. P. v		
	Giving advice	Verbs/adjectives + to + infinitive Verbs + -ing	Feelings and emotions	Meeting people in Melbourne
		B1 More expressions with -ing and to		
		Unstressed to		
	Part 1 Talking about where	Will/may/might	Places in a town	Visiting tourist sites in Rome
	you live	Will/shall for offers and promises	Directions	
			B1 City words	
-	61 1 1 1 1		Intonation	The Asymptotical
	Shopping habits	The present continuous for fixed plans	Spending and saving	Dealing with money in Stockholm
		The present simple for schedules and timetables	Shopping B1 Money and shopping	SIOCKHOIM
		Going to	bi Moriey and shopping	
-		Unstressed to in going to		
	A job interview	Zero conditional	School subjects	Planning to study in Geneva
	Intonation in questions	First conditional The passive	Jobs and work	
		B1 Unless and when		
	Appearance and personality	Comparative adjectives	Personality adjectives	Shopping for clothes in Dubai
		Superlative adjectives	Look like and be like	
		B1 Equal comparisons with (not) as as		
	D - 0 T   1	Pronouncing -est endings		
	Part 2 Talking about sports	Can, must, have to, need to	Sports	Going to a sports event in
		Tenses review The /ɔː/ sound	Do, play and go with sports B1 Adverbs	Madrid

# HOW TO USE THIS BOOK

# WELCOME TO OPEN WORLD THE COURSE THAT TAKES YOU FURTHER

Learn about the features in your new Student's Book

Large images at the start of each unit introduce the topic and get you talking

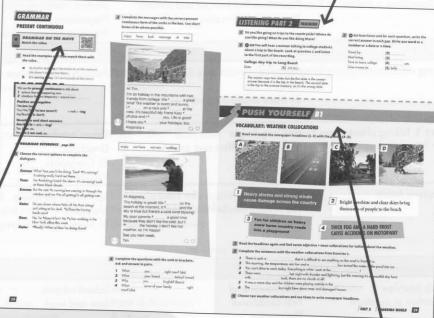


## **EXAM TRAINING**

'Training' exam tasks provide guidance and tips on each part of the exam

# DID YOU KNOW?

Learn the differences between British English and American English



### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE

Scan the QR codes to watch grammar animations in your free time to learn about each grammar point

#### **PUSH YOURSELF**

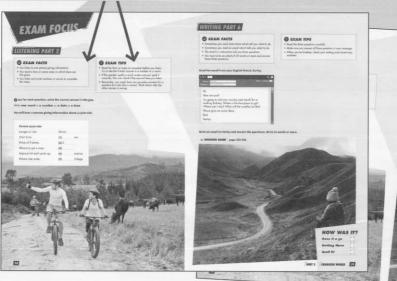
Learn and practise more challenging language and skills that take you to the next level

# **EXAM FOCUS**

Read exam tips and facts and do two complete practice exam tasks after every unit

# **EXAM CHECKS**

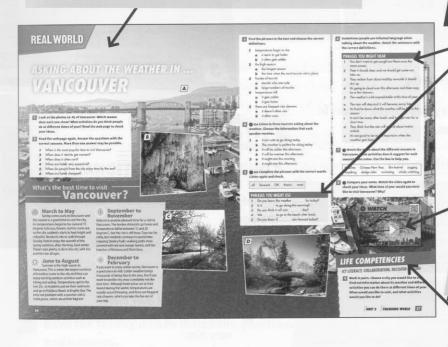
test what you remember about the exam





## **REAL WORLD**

pages take you outside the classroom and into the real world



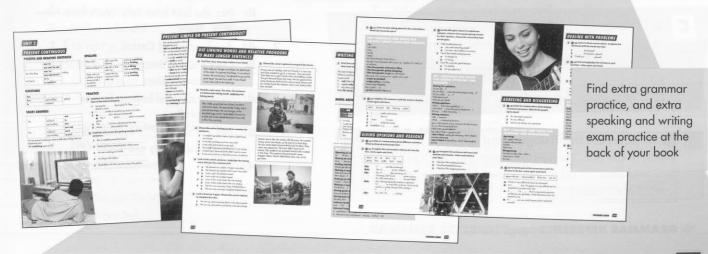
# PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE AND HEAR

Learn and practise phrases you might use and hear when you are using English in the real world

> Scan the QR codes to watch videos of different locations around the world on your mobile phone

# LIFE COMPETENCIES

Develop important skills, knowledge and attitudes that you can use in your daily life





the box with the photos and the dialogues.

in an English class at a sports centre on holiday

A 1	Hi, I Ben. What's y	vour name?
2	Hello, Ben. My name	Jim. Nice to meet you.
3	Nice to meet you, too, Jim.	this the basketball clubs
	No, it It	

В	5	you	British?		
			. We	Canadian.	
	7	Oh that	interestin	a. Where	you from in Canada?

8		he our English tead	cher?
9	Yes, he	. His name	is Mr Robinson.
	He	very nice.	you a new students
10	Yes, I		
11	Where	you from?	

002 Now read the dialogues and complete them with the words in the box. Then listen again and check your answers.

am	are	aren't	is	isn't	'm	's	're
						_	

#### **⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE** / page 196

# **VOCABULARY**

American

#### **COUNTRIES AND NATIONALITIES**

Complete the dialogues with the words in the box.

French

Italian

N	lexico	an Spanish Chinese
1	A:	Who's that girl over there?
	B:	That's Mia. She's in my class. She's very nice.
	A:	Is she?
	B:	No, she isn't from Italy. She's from New York. She's
2	A:	Are Juana and Carlos?
	B:	Carlos is, but Juana isn't from Spain. She's from Mexico so she's
3	A:	Where are you from in France? Are you from Paris?
	B:	No, I'm not, I'm Canadian. What nationality are you?

. I'm from Shanghai in China.

# READING

Read the information about Karl's family. Look at the photos and write the names.





Karl is 33 and he's a sports teacher. He's married and his wife's name is Zadie. She's 31 and she's a computer programmer. Their son, Adam, is seven years old.

Karl's father is a sports teacher, too. His name is Robert and he's 62. Karl's mother's name is Adi. She's 64 and she doesn't work.

Karl's brother's name is Leroy. He's 28 and he's a nurse in a hospital. He's single.

Karl has also got a sister. Her name is Lily. She's an actor. She's married and her husband is an actor, too. His name is Marco. Lily and Marco are 30. Marco is Italian and he comes from Naples.

Was	
7	
•	

#### Read the text again and match the questions and answers.

- How old is Karl's son?
- Who is Leroy?
- What is Zadie's job?
- 4 Where is Marco from?
- Whose husband is an actor?
- How many children have Karl's parents got?
- She's a computer programmer.
- He's seven.
- c He's Karl's brother.
- d Lily's

na.

- They've got three.
- He's from Italy.

#### Look at the questions in Exercise 2. Which question word(s) in pink do we use to:

- ask a question about a person?
- ask about a place?
- ask a question about a thing?
- 4 ask a question about a person's age?
- ask about something that belongs to someone else?
- ask about the number of things or people?

Karl's family = the family of Karl

He's a sports teacher. = He is a sports teacher.

His parents' names are ... = The names of his parents are ...

The children's book is new. = the book of the children is new.

**⇒** GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 197

8

# VOCABULARY

#### **FAMILIES**

Look at Luca's family tree and read the texts. Then complete the sentences with the pink words.



- Luca's parents' names are Lucia and Massimo. They've got three children and four grandchildren: two grandsons and two granddaughters.
- Luca hasn't got a brother, but he's got two sisters. They are both married and they've both got a son and a daughter. This means that Luca and Anna are the uncle and aunt of two nephews and two nieces. Their nephews are Pietro and Matteo (the boys) and their nieces are Camilla and Maria (the girls).
- Massimo and Lucia are the grandfather and grandmother of Sofia's and Francesca's children.
- Camilla and Matteo have got two cousins: Pietro, and Maria.
- Your parents' parents are your
- 2 If your brother has a son, he's your
- 3 My \_\_\_\_\_ is my mum or dad's brother.
- 4 If your sister has two daughters, they are your
- 5 Your mum's sister is your \_\_\_\_
- 6 If your mum or dad's brothers or sisters have children, they are your
- 7 I'm a girl. I'm my grandmother's \_\_\_\_\_ and my brother's
- Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

	irandad Dad Mum Grandma irandpa Granny		
1	In families, people often call their mother	*	
2	People also often call their father	*	
3	Many people call their grandmother	or	
4	Many people call their grandfather	or	



#### HAVE GOT



# GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE Watch the video



Read the examples and the rules and then choose the correct answers.

They've got three children and four grandchildren. Luca hasn't got a brother, but he's got two sisters.

	I/You/We/They	He/She/It
Positive	have got/'ve got	has got/'s got
Negative	have not got/haven't got	has not got/ hasn't got
Questions	Have got?	Has got?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/we/they have. No, I/you/we/they haven't.	Yes, he/she has. No, he/she hasn't

#### **⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE** / page 196

- 1 He's/'ve got four brothers and two sisters.
- 2 We hasn't/haven't got a big house.
- 3 Have/'ve you got a dog? Yes, I have/I've got.
- 4 Has/have your mum got a computer? Yes, she's/has.
- Complete the questions with the correct form of have got. Ask and answer in pairs.

1	youa	ny brothers and
	sisters?	
2	your best friend	a car?
3	How many children	your grandfather
4	your friend	a cat or a dog?

# READING

- Look at the photo. What do you think his job is?
  What languages do you think he can speak?
- Now read the text and check your answers.

Miguel is 30 years old. He comes from Porto in Portugal, but he doesn't live there. He lives in New York. He works at a dance school as a dance teacher. He can speak English and Portuguese and of course he can dance very well! Miguel isn't married and he hasn't got any children. He's got a family in Portugal. His parents live in Porto and he's got two sisters. He can phone his family but he can't visit them.

New York is very interesting and Miguel **loves** the city. He's got lots of friends and he **likes** his job.

- Read the text again and choose the correct answers.
  - 1 Miguel comes from New York/Porto.
  - 2 He can speak two languages/three languages.
  - 3 He's a Portuguese teacher/a dance teacher.
  - 4 Miguel has got two sisters/two daughters.
  - 5 Miguel can dance/visit his family.

# GRAMMAR

CAN



#### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE

Watch the video



Read the examples and complete the rules.

He **can speak** English and Portuguese. He **can dance** very well. He **can't visit** his family. **Can** he visit his family? No, he **can't**.

Positive I/You/He/She/It/We/They <sup>1</sup>
Negative I/You/He/She/It/We/They <sup>2</sup>
Questions <sup>3</sup> I/you/he/she/it/we/they?
Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they can.
No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they <sup>4</sup>

#### GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 197

Use the words and phrases to make questions with can. Ask and answer with a partner. Think of three more questions to ask.

speak English dance swim play tennis cook

Can you speak Chinese?

Yes, I can, a little.

No, I can't.

/cannot

#### PRESENT SIMPLE - HE/SHE/IT

3 Read the sentences and complete the rules with like.

He comes from Porto. He loves the city. He doesn't live there. He likes his job.

Does he work at a dance school? Yes, he does.

Positive	He/Sh	e/lt 1	
Negative	He/Sh	e/lt <sup>2</sup>	
Questions	3	he/she/it 4	Ś
Short answers	Yes, he	e/she/it <sup>5</sup>	
	No, he	e/she/it 6	

#### **⇒** GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 197

Read the information about Polly and complete the sentences with the verbs in the box.



7	Polly	in South London.
2	Polly	from Ireland.
3	Polly	cooking and music.
4	Polly	at a pizza restaurant.

- Match the questions and answers a-c.
  - 1 Where does Polly come from?
  - 2 Does she like computers?
  - 3 Does she like cats?
  - a No, she doesn't.
  - b Yes, she does.
  - c She comes from Ireland.
- 6 Complete the sentences and questions about Polly with the verbs in brackets. Write answers for the questions.

7	Polly			in Ireland. (not live)
2	***************************************	Polly		Italian? (can/speak)
3	***************************************	she		a job? (have got)
4	Where		Polly	? (work)
5		Polly		snakes? (like)
6	Polly	•		cars. (not like)



#### PERSONAL INFORMATION

P Work in pairs. Can you say the alphabet in English? Are there any letters that you don't know how to say? Which ones?

# ABCDEFGHIJK LMNOPQRST UVWXYZ

- P @ 003 Listen and repeat.
- © 004 Work in pairs. Practise saying these groups of letters. What do you think they mean? Listen and check your answers.

1 UK 2 USA 3 EU 4 DOB 5 LOL

#### DID YOU KNOW?

British English speakers pronounce the letter **z** as /zed/, but American English speakers say /zi:/.

- Have you got: a passport/a driving licence/a national ID card? What information is on it?
- 5 005 Listen to George giving information about himself. Where is he?

005 Listen again and complete part 1.
First name
Surname
006 Now listen to the rest of the conversation and nplete part 2.
DOB
Address
Phone number
ad the answers and complete the questions.
What's your ? My name's Jane Fairley.
How do you that?  J-A-N-E F-A-I-R-L-E-Y
How are you? I'm 18.

Work in pairs. Take turns to ask for and give your personal information. Ask your partner the questions

4 What's your \_\_\_

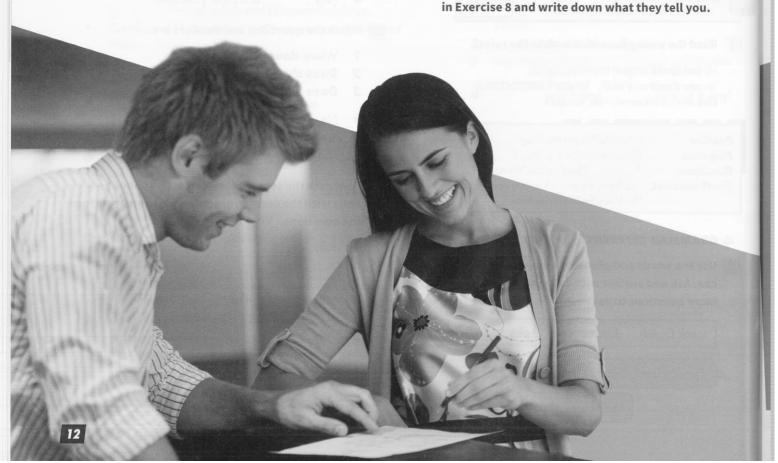
5 What's your

6 What's your

It's 0721 883 6458.

It's the 18th of March, 1999.

It's 24 Lea Road, Littletown, NR4 8GJ.



# SPEAKING

#### **PERSONAL INFORMATION**

- Look at the photos of the famous people. Discuss in pairs.
  - 1 What are their jobs? Why are they famous?
  - 2 Where are they from?
- 007 Work in pairs. Match the people in Exercise 1 with their dates of birth. Listen and check your answers.

19 February 2004 29 November 1990 4 September 1981

Write down three dates that are important to you.
Your partner has to guess why they are important.

Is it someone's birthday?

Yes, it is.

Is it your birthday?

Beyoncé

# WRITING

#### **A PROFILE**

What can you remember about the dance teacher Miguel who lives in New York? Complete the information. Then turn to page 11 to check your answers.

Name: Likes:

Lives: Age:

Family: Is from:

Languages: Things he can do:

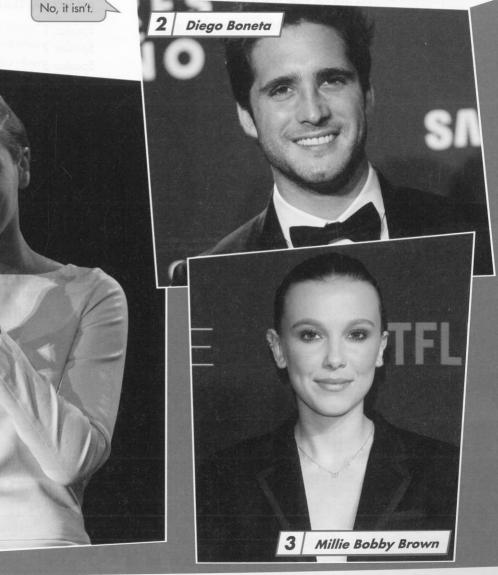
- Choose a famous person or someone who you know and find out about them. Copy the list in Exercise 1 and complete it with information about this person.
- 3 Use the information to write a profile for your person. Use as much language from this unit as you can.

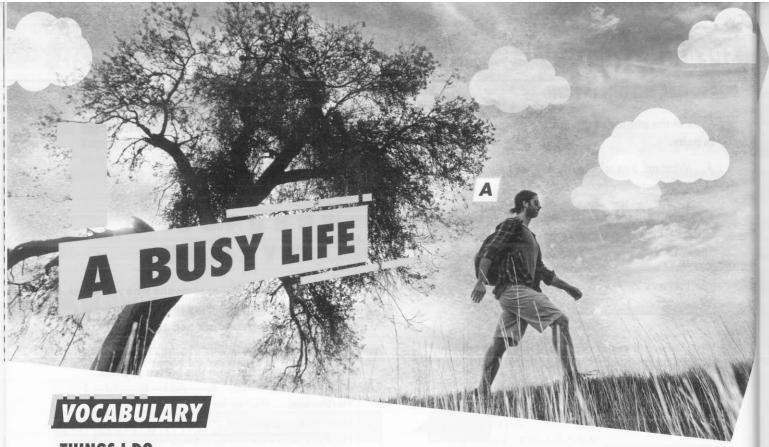
He/She lives ... His/Her family is/isn't big.

He/She likes/doesn't like ...

He/She comes from ... He/She has/hasn't got ...

He/She can/can't ...





#### THINGS I DO

- 1 What is a perfect day for you? Discuss in pairs.
  - Is it on holiday, at the weekend, at the beach or in the city?
  - Are you alone or with friends or with family?
  - Do you go shopping, relax at home or do sport?
- 2 Look at the people in the photos. Match the photos A-F with the activities in the box.

go shopping play or watch sport play video games relax at home spend time alone spend time with friends

B





3 © 008 Listen to four people talking about their perfect day. Match the speakers with the photos.

Speaker 1 \_\_\_\_\_ Speaker 2 \_\_\_\_ Speaker 3 \_\_\_\_ Speaker 4

- 4 008 Answer the questions. Then listen again and check your answers.
  - 1 Where does Speaker 1 like to be on her perfect day?
  - 2 What does Speaker 2 do when he and his friends get tired?
  - 3 What does Speaker 3 enjoy doing on his perfect day?
  - 4 What does Speaker 4 do with her friends in the evening at the end of her perfect day?
- 5 Do you do any of the things in the photos? When do you do them?







# LISTENING

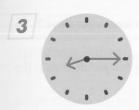
#### ROUTINES

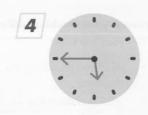
1 Write the correct time under each clock.

quarter past eight half past nine one o'clock quarter to six









2 P 🕲 009 Listen and repeat these times.

at half past six at half past two at quarter to four at quarter to seven at quarter past nine at quarter past eleven

- 3 P @ 009 Listen again and answer the questions.
  - 1 Which words are stressed?
  - 2 Which letter is silent in the pronunciation of half (/haːf/)?
  - 3 How do we pronounce the unstressed o in to (/tə/) and the unstressed a in at (/ət/)?
- 4 Where are you at these times on weekdays (Monday to Friday)? Tell your partner.
  - 1 8.00 in the morning
  - 2 1.30 in the afternoon
  - 3 7.45 in the evening
- 5 © 010 Listen to Amy talking about her day and answer the questions.
  - 1 What's her job?
  - 2 What's her sister's job?
  - 3 Where do they live?
- 6 Oli Now listen to the whole interview. Are these statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
  - 1 Amy wakes up at 7.30.
  - 2 She gets dressed after she has breakfast.
  - 3 Amy usually goes to work by bus.
  - 4 She starts teaching at 8.45.
  - 5 Amy often has lunch with her friends from work.
  - 6 She gets home at 5.15.
  - 7 After dinner, she always watches TV.

# 7 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box from Amy's interview.

get dressed get on get up put on take off wake up

- My brothers have a lot of clothes and they take a long time to \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the morning.
- 2 Please your shoes when you come inside.
- 3 Before you \_\_\_\_\_ the bus, ask the driver if it stops at the correct bus stop.
- 4 Sometimes I \_\_\_\_\_ during the night and can't go back to sleep again.
- 5 The teacher told us to \_\_\_\_ our sports clothes and go to the gym.
- 6 It's Sunday, so we don't need to early.
  We can stay in bed.

#### **BEFORE AND AFTER**

I do my homework **after** school. (First I go to school, then I do my homework.)

I put on my shoes **before** I go to work. (First I put on my shoes, then I go to work.)





#### PRESENT SIMPLE



# GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE Watch the video



1 Read the sentences and then choose the correct options to complete the rules.

I usually **wake up** at quarter past seven, but I **don't get up!**No, she **doesn't catch** the bus. She **goes** by car.
We both **drink** coffee for breakfast. We **don't like** tea.

1 We use the **present simple** to talk about things that happen regularly/at the moment of speaking.

2 We also use the present simple to talk about things that are always true/happening now.

Positive

I/you/we/they + verb

Negative

I/you/we/they + don't + verb

Question Short answers **Do** I/you/we/they + verb? Yes, I/you/we/they **do**.

No, I/you/we/they don't.

Go back to page 11 for he/she/it.

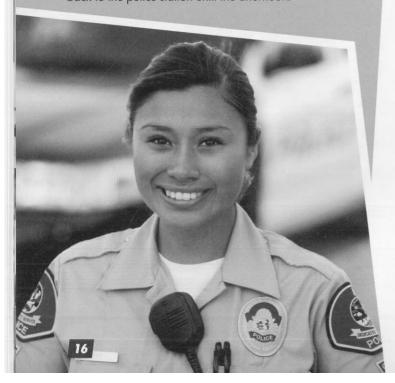
#### GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 198

2 Choose the correct options to complete the information about Olivia's day.

I \*ldon't/doesn't have the same working hours every day.

Sometimes I start work at 6.00 am and so I \*2get up/gets up at 4.00 am! After breakfast, I drive to the police station and \*meet/meets my partner, Joe. Joe \*ldon't/doesn't like getting up early. He \*sfeel/feels very tired!

All the police officers \*has/have a meeting at the beginning of the day. After that, Joe and I \*go/goes to the police garage and collect our car. We \*don't/doesn't come back to the police station until the afternoon.



3 Complete the sentences, questions and short answers with the verbs in the box in the correct form.

catch	go	ho	ave	not ed	at
not get	dresse	ed	not	write	walk

1	My sister	when	she	gets	up.	She	puts	on	her
	clothes after break	fast.							

- 2 He usually \_\_\_\_\_ a cup of coffee for breakfast, but no toast or cereal. He \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning.
- 3 My dad doesn't have a car, so he \_\_\_\_\_ to the station every day at 7.30 and catches the train to London.
- 4 '\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ to work by train, too?'
  'No, I \_\_\_\_\_ the bus.'
- 5 | \_\_\_\_\_ emails to my friends. I text them or talk to them on the phone.

# 4 How is your weekend different from your week? Tell your partner:

- what you do during the week that you don't do at the weekend.
- what you do at the weekend that you don't do during the week.

#### **QUESTION FORMS**

5 Read these questions and complete the rules.

What time **do** you **get up?** How **does** Olivia **go** to work? Where **do** you **have** lunch? I get up at half past seven. She goes by car. I have lunch in a café.

	[H. 18] [M. 18] [H. 18]	
7	To make questions with the present simple we use do an	id
	in front of the main yerh	

2	We use question v	words such	as Who,	Where,	When,	Why
	and	at	the begin	ining of th	ne questio	on.

#### -> GRAMMAR REFERENCE | page 198

- 6 Match the questions (1-6) with the correct answers (a-f).
  - 1 What job do you do?
  - 2 Where do your friends work?
  - 3 How does your sister get to school?
  - 4 Who do you have lunch with?
  - 5 When does your brother finish work?
  - 6 Why do you go for a walk after dinner?
  - a I eat with my colleagues in the café.
  - **b** She walks or catches the bus.
  - c Late just before midnight.
  - **d** Because it helps me to sleep.
  - e I'm a teacher.
  - f In the city centre.

7 Write questions with do and does for these answers about a young man called Sergio.

## NAME: SERGIO AGUZZI AGE: 21

- What \_\_\_\_\_?
  He's an apprentice.
- Where \_\_\_\_\_?

  He works for a telephone company in Rome.
- Where \_\_\_\_\_live?

  He lives in a small flat near the university.
- 4 Who \_\_\_\_\_ with?
  He lives with two friends. They're students.
- 5 How \_\_\_\_\_ work?
  He cycles. He doesn't like walking.
- 6 What time \_\_\_\_\_ work? He starts work at 9.00 am and finishes at 5.00 pm.
- What \_\_\_\_\_evening?He watches TV or listens to music.He doesn't like studying for his job after 9 pm.
- 8 Why \_\_\_\_\_ his job?
  He likes it because
  it's interesting.



# SPEAKING

n.

#### WHAT YOU DO AND WHAT YOU LIKE

- 1 012 Listen to Sergio and complete the sentences.
  - 1 I like \_\_\_\_\_ TV and I love \_\_\_\_\_ to music.
  - 2 I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ in the evenings. And I hate
- 2 Look at the verbs which follow *like*, *love* and *hate* in Exercise 1. Complete the rule.

After the verbs *love/like/hate*, the second verb in the sentence ends in \_\_\_\_\_\_.

3 Complete the text with a verb in the box.

dancing having listening to meeting playing shopping staying watching

At the weekend, I love <sup>1</sup> in bed in the morning.

I like <sup>2</sup> music and then going downstairs and

3 a big breakfast. On Saturdays, I like going into town and <sup>4</sup> my friends. In the evening, we like going to clubs and <sup>5</sup>.

On Sundays, I like <sup>6</sup> sports or <sup>7</sup> a film.

I also buy food for the week. I hate <sup>8</sup> for food, so I usually only go to the supermarket once a week.

- 4 Tell your partner. What do you like/love/not like doing at the weekends/at school/at work?
- 5 Interview your partner and use the question words from Exercise 7. Ask them about their job, school or university.

Where do you work/study/go to school?

How do you go to school?

Why do you like/don't you like your school?

6 Look at the photos (A & B). Where are the people? What jobs do they do?





Work in pairs. Student A, turn to page 192, Student B, turn to page 194. Read the information. Take turns to ask and answer questions to complete the missing information.

# READING PART 2 TRAINING

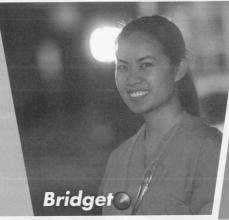
- Do you know anybody who works at night? What job do they do? What are the good things and the bad things about working at night?
- 2 Look at the photos below and match the jobs with the people. Then read and check your answers.

the DJ the security guard the nurse

I don't like working at night, but it's part of my job. I'm a nurse at a large hospital in Valencia.

I work five nights a month, from 11 pm to 7 am. The hospital isn't busy at night and I like the quiet.

I have more time for the patients and like talking to the ones who can't sleep. I don't usually feel hungry during the night so I just have a sandwich or some fruit at 2 or 3 am.

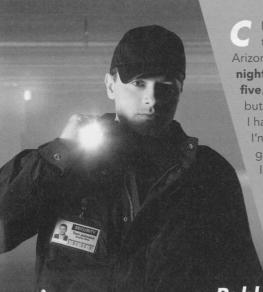


I work at the Divo Club, Berlin.

I work four nights a week from

10 pm to 6 am. I'm a DJ and I love
playing music. I also enjoy working at
night. I like being awake when most
other people are asleep! I see a
different side of Berlin. I never have time
to eat at work, but I have a big breakfast
in the morning when the club closes.

I often go to a café with the others from
the club and watch the sunrise.



I work from 10 pm until 8 am at the Plaza shopping Mall in Reno, Arizona. I sometimes work six nights a week, but usually I work five. I'm often busy until midnight but after that, it's very quiet.

I have time to write my book – I'm a writer as well as a security guard. I stop to eat at 2 am and I always go to the all-night burger restaurant. It's the only time I speak to other people! But that's OK.

I'm happy working alone.

Pablo



3 Look at question 1 below and read the tip. Then read questions 2-6 and choose the correct answers.

1 Which person doesn't always work the same number of nights?

Look at the three texts and find the sentence where the people talk about how many nights they work. This is what they say: Bridget works 'five nights a month'. Tobi works 'four nights a week'. Pablo says he 'sometimes' works 'six nights a week' but he 'usually' works 'five'. So C is the correct answer.

- 2 Which person likes working at night?
- 3 Which person has breakfast after finishing work?
- 4 Which person enjoys talking to people at work?
- 5 Which person has more than one job?
- 6 Which person doesn't eat a lot at work during the night?

4 Discuss in pairs.

- 1 Can you think of any other jobs where people work at night?
- 2 Would you like to work at night? Why?/Why not?

Bridget Tobi Pablo

A B C

A B C
A B C
A B C
A B C

# GRAMMAR

#### ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY



#### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE

Watch the video



1 Read the sentences and choose the correct options to complete the rules.

I sometimes work six nights a week. I don't usually feel hungry. I'm often busy until midnight.

We use adverbs of frequency	to say how often something
happens. In a sentence, the adverb	of frequency comes:

- before/after all verbs except the verb be.
- 2 before/after the verb be.
- 3 before/between/after don't or doesn't and the main verb.

always	usually	often	sometimes		never
100%	-	-	50%	$\rightarrow$	0%

#### - GRAMMAR REFERENCE | page 199

2 Complete the sentences about Bridget, Tobi and Pablo with these words.

C	ılways	never	often	sometimes	usually
7				works five ni six nights.	ghts a week,
2	Tobi	***************************************	eats at v	vork – he's to	o busy.
3			eats at		estaurant – he
4				et doesn't war n't	nt to eat much very hungry.
5	After he	e finishe	es work,		has breakfast

3 Now complete these sentences about you. Then tell your partner.

7	I don't usually	at the weekend
2	I never	in the evenings.
3	I sometimes	in the summer.
4	I don't always	in the morning
5	I often	on holiday.

#### ONCE/TWICE A ...

4 Read the interview with Tobi and complete the rules.

	How often do you exercise, Tobi?
Tobi:	Well, I sometimes dance all night! But I also
	go to the gym <b>once</b> or <b>twice</b> a week.
	Do you ever leave the city and visit the beach or mountains?
	Not very often. I like the city! I go to the countryside <b>three</b> or <b>four times</b> a year.

We can answer the question How often? with an adverb of frequency, or we can say how many times we do something

a day/a week/a me	onin/a year.
one time = 1	two times = 2
three/four/five times, etc	

#### 5 Tell your partner about how often you do these things.

- go running
- go to the cinema
- cook a meal
- go to the beach
- buy new clothes
- dance

I don't often go to the cinema - maybe twice a year.

I go out dancing about once a month.



# VOCABULARY

mechanic

#### **JOBS**

1 @ 013 Listen to these people talking about their jobs. Number the photos in the order you hear them and write the jobs.

photographer

pilot





police officer





#### 2 Complete the descriptions with the correct jobs.

UNIT 1

- repairs machines.
- takes interesting photos.
- flies planes.
- helps to keep people safe.

#### **VOCABULARY: APPLYING FOR A JOB**

**So you want to be a journalist?** For many young people it seems a glamorous job but remember the **salary** is low and the hours are long, especially at the beginning! You can study to get a **qualification** in journalism at some universities, but the most important thing really is to get **experience** writing articles for a small local or student newspaper, or for an online magazine or blog.

Newspapers usually select new **employees** using recruitment web sites first, so it's important to write a good **CV** too. An interesting CV that gets the employer's attention is the thing that gets you a personal **interview**, then at the interview you can show them some of your writing and hope they like it!



Read the text about how to become a journalist. Match the beginnings of the definitions (1-6) with the endings (a-f).

- 1 A job interview is a meeting where you have to answer questions
- 2 Your salary is the money
- 3 You have experience of something
- 4 An employee is a person
- 5 Your CV is a written description
- 6 A qualification is something you get

- a when you have done it before.
- **b** who is paid to work for a company.
- c of your education and other jobs.
- d you get for doing your job.
- e after you pass an exam.
- f to show that you are the right person for a job.

# LISTENING PART 1 TRAINING

- 1 Discuss the questions in pairs.
  - 1 What's your idea of a perfect job? Why?
  - 2 What is important for you in a job?
- 2 014 You are going to hear a journalist on the radio asking some people about work. Listen and choose the correct answer for question 1.
  - 1 What job does the woman want to do when she finishes her studies?







Read the question carefully. The woman will talk about all three jobs, but the question is asking about when she finishes her studies. Listen to the recording.

A is wrong because she is studying to be a nurse now but she doesn't want to work as a nurse. B is wrong because she will only become a teacher if she can't make any money as a DJ. C is correct because she wants to become a DJ after her course ends.

#### DID YOU KNOW?



American English speakers say **sales clerk** instead of **shop assistant**.

- 3 © 015 Look at questions 2 and 3. In each question underline the important information you need to listen for. Then listen and choose the correct answer.
  - 2 What does the police officer do first when he gets home from work?







3 What time does the man get up in the morning?



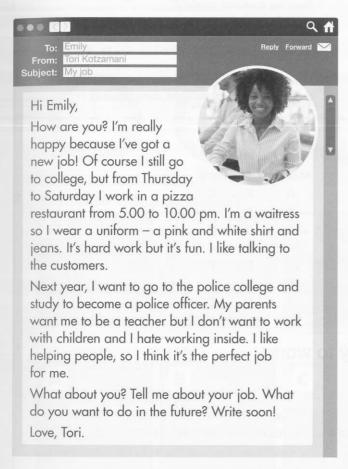






#### **AN EMAIL ABOUT A JOB**

- How do you communicate with friends and family who you don't see every day? Who do you send emails to? Is there anyone you send emails to in English?
- 2 Read the email from Tori, a student, to a friend. What's her new job? Why does she like it?



3 Read the email again and underline the expressions Tori uses to begin and end her email. Add them to the table.

BEGINNING AN EMAIL	ENDING AN EMAIL
Pear Jello	Best wishes All the best
	All roses to a second at

4 You are a student and work as a shop assistant in a games store at the weekends. You want to be a photographer in the future. Write to Tori and tell her about the job you do now and the job you want to do in the future. Complete these notes.

	YOUR JOB NOW	THE JOB YOU WANT TO DO
What's the job?	Shop assistant	
Where do you In a games store work?		
What time do you start/finish?	9 am/5 pm	
Do you wear a uniform? Do you work inside/outside/with people/alone?	o you work side/outside/with	
What do you like/ not like about this job?	I like playing new games I don't get a lot of money	Imag films will
Why do you want to do this job?		

Write an email in reply to Tori. Use this plan to help you.

Begin Dear To	
Let me	tell you about my job
Paraa	raph 1:
Your jo	
	in/at, I work from to
Parag	raph 2:
The job	you want to do:
In the	future I want to because
Parag	raph 3:
Ask Tor	i to tell you about her free time and what
	es at weekends when she's not working:
	bout you? What do you?
End:	
Ask Tor	i to write soon and end your email.

# EXAM FOCUS

# **READING PART 2**

#### **EXAM FACTS**

- You read three short texts.
- · You answer seven questions about the texts.
- The answer to each question will be A, B or C.

#### EXAM TIPS

- · Read the questions carefully.
- Underline or highlight words in the texts that mean the same as words in the questions.
- For each question (1–7), find the answer (A, B or C) which answers the question.
- Remember that the question may not use the same words as the text, but it will have the same meaning.

#### For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 1 Which person plans her day during her journey?
- 2 Which person starts her journey earlier than she needs to?
- 3 Which person enjoys having time alone while she's travelling?
- 4 Which person hates being late for work?
- 5 Which person never uses her phone during her journey?
- 6 Which person works while she's travelling?
- 7 Which person reads the news while she's travelling?

Marta	Gia	Rosa
A	В	C
A	В	C
A	В	C
A	В	C
A	В	C
A	В	C
A	В	C

#### My journey to work



#### Marta

I travel to work by train. When I first started, I left home at eight and hurried to get to work by nine. I was never late, but I didn't enjoy hurrying. So now I make sure I'm out of the house by seven thirty. I go slowly, buy a coffee and chat to people in the coffee shop. On the train I use my phone to send emails, which saves time when I get to the office.



#### Gia

I usually have to run to the station to catch my train – I should probably plan my mornings better and get up earlier! My train isn't busy, and it's nice to be on my own for a while, just to think or read a book. I know lots of people play games or read the news on their phones, but I just check mine quickly when I get to work. And I don't work on the train – I'm a nurse, so I can't do that!



#### Rosa

I like to read about what's happening around the world, so I use the internet to do that when I'm on the train – usually on my phone. I can't really work on the train, but I make a list of the things I have to do when I get to work, and I think about what I'm going to do first. The worst kind of day for me is when there are delays on the trains, and I arrive after the time I should. That makes me really angry.

# LISTENING PART 1

#### EXAM FACTS

- You listen to five short conversations.
- For each conversation, you read a question and choose the correct picture, A, B or C.
- You hear each conversation twice.

#### EXAM TIPS

- Before you listen, read the questions carefully.
- Make sure you listen to the whole conversation before you choose your answer.
- Remember, the speakers may talk about all three pictures, but only one is the correct answer to the question.
- When you listen the second time, check your answers.

#### 🙆 016 For each question, choose the correct answer.

1 What time does the man start work?







2 Where did the woman go with her friend?







3 How should the man contact Eva?

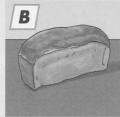






4 What does the man need to buy?







5 Why was the woman late for work?







HOW WAS IT?

Gave it a go

**Getting there** 

Aced it!

# **REAL WORLD**

# TALKING ABOUT YOURSELF IN ... MEXICO CITY



- Look at the photos (A-C) of Mexico city. What can you see?
  What do you know about Mexico City?
- Work in pairs. What can you learn when you stay with a family in another country? Discuss and then read the information about homestays. Which of your ideas does it talk about?
- 3 Read about four families you can stay with in Mexico City. Which family ...
  - 1 doesn't have any children?
  - 2 has a pet?
  - 3 wants to show you the city?
  - 4 lives near some places that are popular with tourists?



#### **FAMILY HOMESTAY**

Everyone likes visiting other countries. But staying in hotels isn't always fun because you don't learn about the country you are in. At Family Homestay, we can find the perfect family for you. We check all our families carefully, so we know they will look after you well.

With our families, you can:

- ilearn the language of the country
- njoy the food that people in the country eat
- # understand the way local people live

Book here to find your perfect Family Homestay.

- make new friends
- nd get help with any problems you have





A Hi! We live in a big apartment right in the middle of the city, and it's within walking distance of many of the tourist sites like the National Palace and all the museums. We have three children, all teenagers. All meals are included in the price.



Hello. There are four people in our family. We live in a small house in a quiet part of the city. We do a lot of things together, and we always eat together in the evenings. We know a lot about the city. We can take you to visit some interesting places and tell you about them. We also offer airport pickup.



We are the Ruiz family from Mexico City. There are five people in our family, me, my husband, our two children and our little cat. We love having students from other countries living in our home! We live in the south of the city. There's good public transport, like buses and trains, so you can get to the city centre easily.



We are a young couple in Mexico City. There are just the two of us, so our home is very quiet. We would love to welcome you. Your room has a bed and a desk, and you have your own bathroom. We have wi-fi at home, and there's a very nice park nearby. You can enjoy our home cooking, or you have free use of the kitchen to make your own food.

- Find the phrases in the text and choose the correct definitions.
  - 1 within walking distance
    - a it's too far to walk there
    - **b** you can walk there
  - 2 all meals are included
    - a you don't pay extra for meals
    - **b** you pay extra for meals
  - 3 airport pickup
    - a we live near the airport
    - **b** we can come and meet you at the airport
  - 4 good public transport
    - a lots of buses and trains
    - **b** we have a good car
  - 5 the city centre
    - a the middle part of the city
    - **b** the area outside the city
  - 6 enjoy our home cooking
    - a cook your own food in our home
    - b eat food that we cook at home
- 5 © 017 Listen to three conversations. Where is the student in each conversation? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.
  - a at a party
- c on public transport
- b at the airport
- d with the host family
- 6 017 Complete the phrases with the correct words in the box. Listen again and check.

allergic from I'll I'm staying I've got really like student very excited

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE**

- 1 be here for five weeks.
- 2 with a family.
- 3 one brother.
- 4 I'm to be here.
- "
- 5 I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ to anything.
- 6 I'm Harrow, in the UK.
- 7 I'm a \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I the city.



7 Sometimes people use words and phrases that you don't know when they ask about you. Choose the correct definitions.

#### PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR

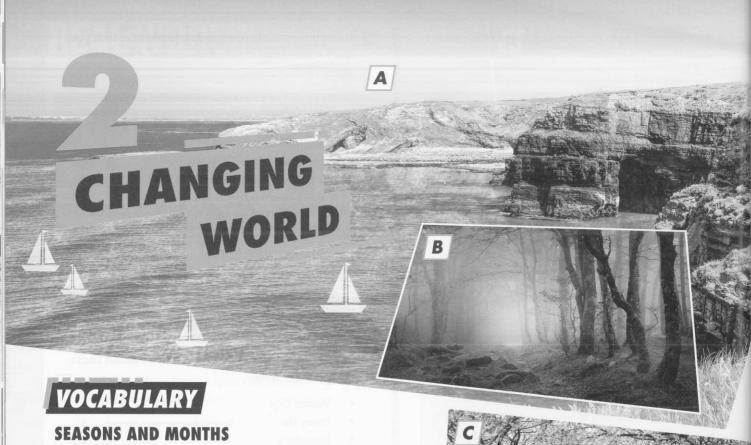
- 1 What's the purpose of your visit?
  - a Why are you here?
  - b How long will you be here?
- 2 Is that convenient for you?
  - When would you like to do that?
  - b Is that OK for you?
- 3 What do you think of Mexico?
  - a Do you like Mexico?
  - b Why did you choose to come to Mexico?
- 4 Maybe we should go and get some food.
  - a Do you have any food?
  - b Would you like some food?
- Watch the video. What do you learn about these things? Make notes.
  - Mexico City
  - family life
  - homestays
- Compare your notes. Watch the video again to check your ideas.



# LIFE COMPETENCIES

COMMUNICATION, UNDERSTANDING AND CULTURE

Work in groups and make a list of the most important things for people to know if they come to live in your city. Compare your ideas with other groups.



- 1 Look at the weather in the photos. Discuss the questions in pairs.
  - 1 Which photo is like the weather in your country today?
  - 2 What kind of weather do you like best? Why?
- 2 018 Listen to Sonia describing her friends' holiday photos (A-D) and answer the questions.

Which photo ...

- is Sonia's photo from her holiday in Ireland?
- 2 is from a trip to New York?
- 3 shows a forest in France?
- 4 shows a park in Japan?
- 3 018 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Listen again and check.

autumn spring summer winter

- 1 It shows the view from the window of his hotel. I think it's December or January – it's definitely
- 2 That one is from her trip to Kyoto with her family in - in April or May, I think.
- 3 My friend Nathalie visits her grandparents in the forest of Orléans every , so I think this photo is from October or November.
- 4 Look at the clear, green sea. Isn't it beautiful? It's a \_\_day at the end of July.

#### **DID YOU KNOW?**

American English speakers say fall, but in the UK people say autumn.



P Complete the months with words from Exercise 3. Underline the stressed syllable in each one.

7	, Feb	ruary, March, 2	3
June, 4		, August, Septembe	r, <sup>5</sup> ,
6	7		

- 5 P 🙆 019 Listen to check your answers and repeat.
- 6 Tell your partner some things you often do in each season. What is your favourite season? Why?

# VOCABULARY

#### WEATHER

What do you do at the weekend when the weather is very hot or very cold? Where do you go? What do you wear?



2 Read the texts (1-3) and match with the photos (A-C).





#### ALEX

e 3.

My brother is living in Antarctica at the moment. He's studying the weather there. It doesn't usually snow or rain much because it's too cold – you can see it isn't snowing in the photo. The temperature is usually freezing and the ground is icy. It's also very windy. But the temperature is getting warmer and the ice is getting thinner. And this changing weather is a problem for people everywhere.

#### **VIJAY**

I'm staying with my cousins in Mawsynram in India for a month. It's the rainy season, so the weather is very wet. It's raining today, as usual. The village is famous for its fog because the weather is often cloudy and foggy. In the summer, there are big storms with thunder and lightning. But our rainy seasons are changing too and bringing floods to some areas.

# **2** VERONICA

This week I'm visiting my grandparents who live in the Chihuahuan Desert in Mexico. There aren't many clouds in the bright, blue sky and there's hot sunshine all day long in summer. Of course, it's also very dry. When the sun is shining, like it is today, the temperature sometimes goes up to 50°C. In the winter and at night, it can be cool. Here too, the weather is changing and small changes can be a big problem for plants and animals here.

- 3 Read the texts again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
  - 1 Antarctica is very windy as well as very cold.
  - 2 It's often dry and sunny in Mawsynram.
  - 3 It's always hot in the Chihuahuan Desert at night.
- 4 Complete the sentences. Use the texts in Exercise 2 to help you.

cloudy foggy freezing snows storm sunshine temperature thunder wet

- 1 It's a lovely day with blue skies and lots of
- 2 It's very wet and windy. I think a \_\_\_\_\_ is coming.
- 3 When the weather is \_\_\_\_\_, water turns to ice.
- 4 The opposite of dry weather is \_\_\_\_\_ weather.
- 5 I like the lightning, but the \_\_\_\_\_ is too loud!
- 6 It only when the weather is very cold.
- 7 It's hard to see in weather.
- 8 In the desert, the is very high during the day.
- **9** The sky is grey and \_\_\_\_\_; we can't see any sun.

5 Look at the words in purple in the text and the examples below and complete the rule.

 $sun \rightarrow sunny$   $rain \rightarrow rainy$   $snow \rightarrow snowy$  $storm \rightarrow stormy$   $ice \rightarrow icy$   $cloud \rightarrow cloudy$ 

To change some weather nouns into adjectives, we add

- 6 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.
  - 1 How do you feel when there's a storm?
  - 2 What problems can there be in your country if there isn't enough rain?
  - 3 Is the weather changing in your country? Is this a problem?



#### **PRESENT CONTINUOUS**



#### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE

Watch the video



#### 1 Read the examples and then match them with the rules.

- My brother is living in the Antarctic at the moment. (He doesn't always live there.)
- **b** It's raining today. (It's wet outside at this time.)

We use the **present continuous** to talk about:

- 1 actions that are happening now.
- 2 situations that are temporary around now.

Positive and negative

I'm/am (not)

You/We/They're/are (aren't)

+ verb + -ing

He/She/It's/is (isn't)

**Questions and short answers** 

Am/Are/Is + verb + -ing?

Yes, I am, etc.

No, I'm (I am not), etc.

#### ⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 200

# 2 Choose the correct options to complete the dialogues.

7

Emma: What ¹are you/is he doing, Tom? ²It's raining/

It raining really hard out there.

**Tom:** I'm <sup>3</sup>watching/watch the storm. It's amazing! Look

at those black clouds.

Emma: But the rain 4 is coming/are coming in through the

window and we 5're all getting/is all getting wet.

2

Kate: Do you know where Felix is? He \*not sitting/

isn't sitting at his desk. 7ls/Does he having

lunch now?

Dan: No, he 8 doesn't/isn't. He 9's/are working in the

New York office this week.

Kate: 10 Really! What is/does he doing there?

3 Complete the messages with the correct present continuous form of the verbs in the box. Use short forms of be where possible.

enjoy have look message sit take



Hi Tim,

I'm on holiday in the mountains with two friends from college. We 1 a great time! The weather is warm and sunny.

I 2 on a rock and 3 at the view. It's beautiful! My friend Katy 4 photos and I 5 you. Life is good!

I hope you 6 your holidays, too.

Alejandra x

enjoy not have not rain walking



Hi Alejandra,

The holiday is great! We 7\_\_\_\_\_ on the beach at the moment. It 8\_\_\_\_ and the sky is blue but there's a cold wind blowing!

My poor parents <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ a good time because they don't like the cold, but I <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_ the holiday. I don't like hot

weather, so I'm happy!

See you next week.

Tim



4 Complete the questions with the verb in brackets.
Ask and answer in pairs.

1	What	you	right now? (do)
2	What	your friend	today? (wear)
3	Why	VOU	Fnalish? (learn)

What \_\_\_\_\_ some of your family \_\_\_\_ right now? (do)

# LISTENING PART 2 TRAINING

- Do you like going on trips to the countryside? Where do you like going? What do you like doing there?
- © 020 You will hear a woman talking to college students about a trip to the beach. Look at question 1 and listen to the first part of the recording.

#### College day trip to Long Beach

Date:

(1) 6th May

The woman says two dates but the first date is the correct answer because it is the trip to the beach. The second date is the trip to the science museum, so it's the wrong date. 3 © 021 Now listen and for each question, write the correct answer in each gap. Write one word or a number or a date or a time.

Travel by:	(2)
Must bring:	(3)
Time to leave college:	(4) am
Give money to:	(5) Sally

# PUSH YOURSELF BI

#### **VOCABULARY: WEATHER COLLOCATIONS**

Read and match the newspaper headlines (1-4) with the photos (A-D).





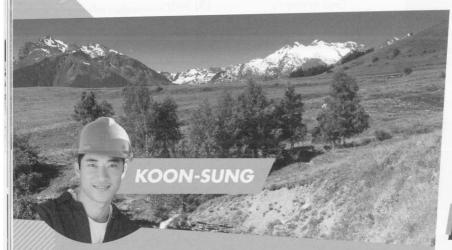




- Heavy storms and strong winds cause damage across the country
- Bright sunshine and clear skies bring thousands of people to the beach
- Fun for children as heavy snow turns country roads into a playground
- THICK FOG AND A HARD FROST CAUSE ACCIDENTS ON MOTORWAY
- 2 Read the headlines again and find seven adjective + noun collocations for talking about the weather.
- 3 Complete the sentences with the weather collocations from Exercise 1.
  - There is such a \_\_\_\_\_ that it is difficult to see anything on the road in front of us.
  - This morning, the temperatures are low and a \_\_\_\_\_ has turned the water in the pond into ice.
    You can't drive to work today. Everything is white. Look at the \_\_\_\_\_!
  - There were last night with thunder and lightning, but this morning it's a beautiful day here with Look, there are no clouds at all!
  - 5 It was a warm day and the children were playing outside in the
  - 6 The \_\_\_\_\_ last night blew down trees and damaged houses.
- Choose two weather collocations and use them to write newspaper headlines.

# READING

- Would you like to spend time living in a different country or city? Where would you like to go? Why?
- 2 Read about Koon-Sung and Carla and answer the questions.
  - 1 Where do they usually live? Where are they living now?
  - 2 Why are they spending time in a different place?



My name is Koon-Sung. I'm an engineer and I'm from Singapore. At the moment, I'm living in Turin in the north of Italy. I'm working on a project to make a road in the mountains. My life here is very different from my life at home. I'm staying in a big house on a hill so I have a great view of the city. The house is near a forest with lots of beautiful trees. From my bedroom window, I can also see the mountains. At the weekend, I enjoy walking in the Aosta Valley and taking photos of waterfalls, rivers and lakes. At home in Singapore, all the buildings are very tall and I can only see the street from my window!

I'm Carla and I'm studying to be a doctor. I'm from Mexico City, but this year I'm on a student exchange programme in the United Arab Emirates. At home in Mexico, I usually go to classes and study a lot, but here I'm working as a doctor in a hospital.

This week I'm on holiday, which is fun. I'm staying on the east coast. My hotel is by the sea and I can spend all day at the beach if I want. There are also lots of boat trips, so I'm visiting the little islands along the coast this week. Today I'm sandboarding in the desert. I'm having a great time!

# 3 Read the texts again and choose the correct answers.

- 1 At the moment Koon-Sung is living in
  - a big city in the mountains.
  - **b** an apartment in a valley.
  - a house on a hill.
- 2 From the window of his apartment at home, he can see
  - a the valley.
  - **b** the city.
  - c the mountains.
- 3 This year, Carla is
  - a studying hard.
  - **b** working in a hospital.
  - c spending a lot of time in class.
- 4 Today, she's
  - sandboarding in the desert.
  - b in Dubai.
  - c on a boat trip.

# VOCABULARY

#### **GEOGRAPHY AND THE NATURAL WORLD**

	implete	ne sen	tences	with	tne	words	in re	90
in	the text.	There	is one	word	you	don't	nee	d.

7	People enjoy hiking up big in the	
	summer and doing sports on them in the snow	w
	in winter.	

- **2** \_\_\_\_\_ often have lots of beaches and are great places to go on holiday.
- **3** From the top of the mountain, you can look down into the
- 4 I love the sea and I would like to live on the one day.
- Many people say that a \_\_\_\_\_ becomes a mountain if it is more than 300 metres high.
- 6 In the summer, I love lying under the green trees
- 7 There are lots of fish in the \_\_\_\_\_\_ because the water is so clean.
- 8 You can't take the boat there because there are two big \_\_\_\_\_ where the river goes down into the valley.





o de

2 Work in pairs and discuss.

What would you tell a tourist in your country who wants to:

- a visit a waterfall?
- b walk in the hills or mountains?
- c visit some beautiful places on the coast?

  Are they in the north, south, east or west?
- 3 Do you prefer the mountains, the coast or the desert? Why?

# GRAMMAR

# PRESENT SIMPLE OR PRESENT CONTINUOUS?



GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE
Watch the video



1 Read the examples and match them with the rules.

- 1 I'm from Singapore.
- 2 I work in an office every day.
- 3 I'm sandboarding in the desert!
- 4 At the moment, I'm living in Turin.
- We use the present simple for a habit or regular action.
- **b** We use the present continuous for something temporary happening around now.
- We use the present simple for a fact something that is always true.
- d We use the present continuous for an action happening at the moment of speaking.

#### ⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 201

#### 2 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 It often rains/is raining in the spring.
- 2 1'm staying/stay at my friend's house at the moment.
- 3 Look it snows/'s snowing!
- 4 London is my home. I live/'m living there all the time.

3 Complete the text with the verbs in the box in the present simple or present continuous tense.

go learn not like play practise stay travel wear

and one black one!

Leila Bruni <sup>1</sup> the guitar and sings in a rock band. She lives in Rome but she <sup>2</sup> to different countries a lot with the band.

This week she's in America. She <sup>3</sup> in a hotel in Los Angeles. At the moment, she <sup>4</sup> with the

in Los Angeles. At the moment, she with the band before their concert. They some new songs.

The band gives concerts once or twice a week.

After a concert, Leila always between to bed very late. She getting up early the next day and sometimes she gets dressed too quickly.

Today she between one red sock



#### 4 Work in pairs and discuss.

- 1 What are you doing at the moment? What do you usually do at this time on other days?
- What clothes do you usually wear at school/work? What are you wearing today?
- **3** What things make you feel good? What are you feeling good about at the moment?

UNIT 2

RLD

red

IOW

; a

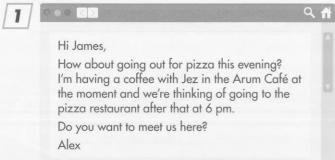
trees

are

# WRITING PART 6 TRAINING

#### **INVITATIONS AND REPLIES**

- How do you invite your friends to do things? Do you usually call them/send texts/write emails? What are you doing with friends or family in your free time this week?
- 2 Look at the emails (1-3). What are the writers inviting their friends to do? Where and what time do they want to meet?



Hey Luca,
Do you want to come to the beach with me and
Ali this weekend? We can meet in the
supermarket car park at 10:00 on Saturday
morning. What about camping on Saturday
night? Have you got a tent?
Let me know.
Charlie

Dear Alice,
I've got tickets for the football match on
Saturday. It's at five at the stadium. Would you
be interested in coming with me? You can come
to my house at 4.30 and I can drive us to the
stadium. What do you think?
Hope you can make it!
Love Rose

#### 3 Look at how the writers begin and finish their emails.

- Write the different ways they begin the emails. Can you think of any others?
- **2** Write the different ways they finish the emails. Do you know any others?
- 4 Match the answers (a-c) with the invitations in Exercise 2.
  - a I'd love to come, but I'm afraid I've got a music exam on Saturday afternoon. Can we meet for a coffee after the match instead?
  - **b** Thanks, that sounds great. I'd love to come, but I haven't got a tent. I need to get one. Can I let you know tomorrow?
  - Thanks for asking but I'm babysitting at the moment so I can't come out for a pizza tonight. Maybe next week?

5 Which expressions do the writers use to say 'yes' and 'no' to the invitations.

PHRASES FOR SAYING 'YES'	PHRASES FOR SAYING		
	Children Springer (1917)		

6 Complete the invitations and the answers with the phrases in the box.

a	bout	afraid	come	interested	like	sounds
7		w you lik		o would you ght?	be	in
2	How Sund		going f	or a boat trip	along	the river or
3		nchtime?	tc	come for a p	oicnic ir	n the park
4	I'm I'm away in London all weekend. Another time perhaps?					
5	That	Necosia Constitution Constituti	great! V	What time do	es the fi	lm start?
6		ve to 9.30 this		t I'm afraid I	don't fir	nish work

7 Look at the exam question and answer. Does the answer include all the 3 points?

You would like to go camping next weekend.
Write an email to your English friend, Morgan.

In the email:

- invite Morgan to come with you
- say where you are going to camp
- tell Morgan what to bring

Write 25 words or more.

Hi Morgan

Would you like to go camping with me next weekend? I'm planning to go to a campsite near the river. I have a tent and all the cooking equipment, so you only need to bring clothes and a sleeping bag. Let me know if you want to come.

invite Morgan

what to bring

8 You would like to play tennis next Saturday with your English friend Jo. Write an email to Jo.

#### In your email:

- ask Jo to play tennis
- say where you want to play tennis
- say what she needs to bring

Write 25 words or more.

# SPEAKING

nd

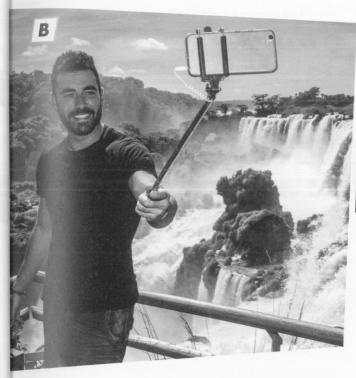
IG

an

ng

#### **DESCRIBING A PHOTO**

Do you like taking photos? What do you take photos of? Do you take a lot of selfies? Where/ when do you take them? Discuss in pairs.



- 2 Look at the photos (A and B). What can you see? Take turns with a partner to describe them. Try to say at least four sentences about each one. Think about:
  - what you can see in the photo.
  - where different things are in the photo.
  - what is happening in the photo.
  - what you think/feel/like etc. about the photo.
- 3 © 022 Listen to Irina describing one of the photos. Which photo is it?
- 4 © 022 Listen again and complete the sentences from the description.

-	The man's got	ana a
2	The man is wearing a	and
	. He looks	*
3	He's holding his phone on a	selfie stick and he's
4	Maybe he's visiting the	with
5	I think the fence is to stop pe	eople from falling

5 Find three expressions in Exercise 4 which Irina uses to say what she thinks and give her own ideas about the photo.

7	He	(She/It)	looks	
-				

\_\_\_\_

3



6 Complete the expressions Irina uses for describing where things are in the photo. Use the words in the box.

b	ehind	bottom	middle	next	top	
7		see a man tiful waterf		anding _		to a big,
2	The n	nan is in th	е	of the	photo.	
3	At the	)	of the pho	oto we d	an see	a fence.
4		the fe	nce is the i	river.		
5		forest.	of the pho	oto we o	an see	the trees of

7 Prepare to describe a photo. Student A and B look at page 192. Make notes using the box below.

## **USEFUL LANGUAGE**

Think about what's in the photo.

In the photo, I can see ... There is/there are ...

Think about where things are in the photo.

At the top/bottom/in the middle/on the right/left ...

Talk about the weather in the photo.

The sun is shining ... There are clouds in the sky ...

Think about how to say what is happening using the present continuous.

A man is standing ... The people are looking at ...
A woman is sitting ...

Think of adjectives to describe the objects and people and more details to give.

He/She/It is ... They're wearing ...

Give your opinions/say what you think.

He/She/It could ... Perhaps they are ...

Describe your photo to your partner.

UNIT 2

# EXAM FOCUS

# LISTENING PART 2

#### EXAM FACTS

- You listen to one person giving information.
- You read a form or some notes in which there are five gaps.
- You listen and write numbers or words to complete the notes.

#### **EXAM TIPS**

- Read the form or notes to complete before you listen. Try to decide if each answer is a number or a word.
- If the speaker spells a word, make sure you spell it correctly. You can check it the second time you listen.
- Remember, you might hear two possible answers for a question but only one is correct. Think about why the other answer is wrong.

© 023 For each question, write the correct answer in the gap.

Write one word or a number or a date or a time.

You will hear a woman giving information about a cycle ride.

#### Forest cycle ride

Length of ride:

30 km

Start time:

(1) am

Price of T-shirts:

(2) £

Where to get a map:

(3)

Highest hill we'll cycle up:

(4) metres

Where ride ends:

(5) Village



# WRITING PART 6

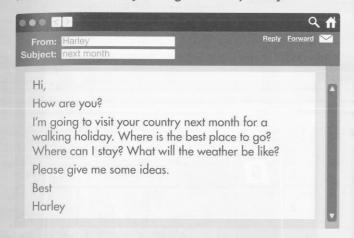
#### EXAM FACTS

- Sometimes you read instructions which tell you what to do.
- Sometimes you read an email which tells you what to do.
- The email or instructions ask you three questions.
- You must write an email of 25 words or more and answer these three questions.

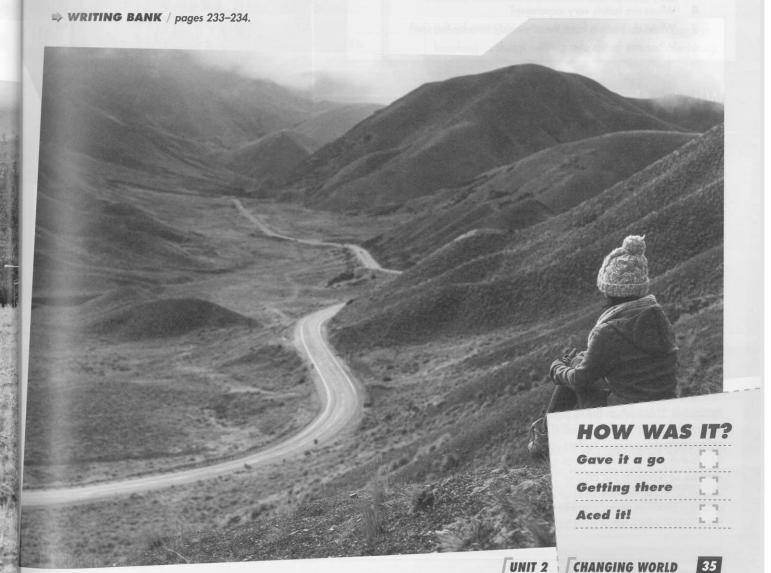
#### EXAM TIPS

- Read the three questions carefully.
- Make sure you answer all three questions in your message.
- When you've finished, check your writing and correct any mistakes.

#### Read the email from your English friend, Harley.



Write an email to Harley and answer the questions. Write 25 words or more.



# **REAL WORLD**

# ASKING ABOUT THE WEATHER IN ... VANCOUVER

- 1 Look at the photos (A-D) of Vancouver. Which season does each one show? What activities do you think people do at different times of year? Read the web page to check your ideas.
- Read the web page again. Answer the questions with the correct seasons. More than one answer may be possible.
  - When is the most popular time to visit Vancouver?
  - 2 When does it start to get warmer?

- 3 When does it often rain?
- 4 When are hotels very expensive?
- 5 When do people from the city enjoy time by the sea?
- 6 When are hotels cheapest?





Spring comes early in Vancouver and this season is a good time to visit the city. As temperatures begin to rise (around 15 degrees Celscius), flowers start to come out, so the city suddenly starts to look bright and colourful. Residents like to walk through Stanley Park to enjoy the warmth of the spring sunshine, after the long, hard winter. There's also plenty to do in the city, with fun activities for all ages.

#### **June to August**

Summer is the high season in Vancouver. This is when the largest numbers of travellers come to the city and they can enjoy exciting outdoor activities such as hiking and sailing. Temperatures get to the low 20s, so residents put on their swimsuits and go to Kitsilano Beach at English Bay. The only real problem with a summer visit is hotel prices, which are at their highest.

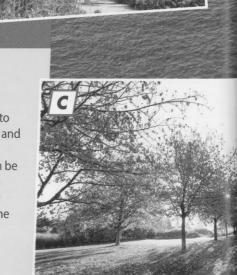


#### September to November

Autumn is another pleasant time for a visit to Vancouver. The hordes of tourists go home and temperatures fall to between 15 and 20 degrees C, but the city is still busy. Days can be chilly, but residents continue to spend time enjoying Stanley Park's walking paths (now covered with red and orange leaves), and the beaches of Kitsilano and Point Grey.

# December to February

If you want to enjoy winter sports, Vancouver is a great place to visit. Colder weather brings thousands of skiing fans to the area. But if you want to see the city, now is probably not the best time. Although hotel prices are at their lowest during the winter, temperatures are usually around freezing, and there are frequent rain showers, which can take the fun out of your trip.



- Find the phrases in the text and choose the correct definitions.
  - temperatures begin to rise
    - it starts to get hotter
    - it often gets colder
  - the high season
    - the longest season
    - the time when the most tourists visit a place
  - hordes of tourists
    - a tourists who are rude
    - large numbers of tourists
  - temperatures fall
    - it gets colder
    - it gets hotter
  - there are frequent rain showers
    - it doesn't often rain
    - it often rains
- 024 Listen to three tourists asking about the weather. Choose the information that each speaker receives.
  - It isn't safe to go skiing today.
    - The weather is perfect for skiing today.
  - It will be colder this afternoon.
    - It will be warmer this afternoon.
  - It might rain this morning.
    - It might rain this afternoon.
- 024 Complete the phrases with the correct words. Listen again and check.

all	forecast	OK	there's	want
	1010000			

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE**

- Do you know the weather for today?
- to go skiing this morning? 2
- Do you think it will rain 3
- We \_\_\_\_\_ to go to the beach after lunch.
- Do you know if

Sometimes people use informal language when talking about the weather. Match the sentences with the correct definitions.

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR**

- You don't want to get caught out there once the
- Then it should clear and we should get some sun
- They reckon from about midday onwards it should
- It's going to cloud over this afternoon and there may be a few showers.
- The weather's a bit unpredictable at this time of year.
- The rain will stop and it will become sunny later.
- It's hard to know what the weather will be like in this
- It won't be sunny after lunch, and it might rain for a
- d They think that the rain will stop at about twelve
- It's not good to be on the mountains when the weather gets bad.
- Watch the video about the different seasons in Vancouver. What activities does it suggest for each season? Make notes. Use the box to help you.

Chinese New Year beaches film festival jogging sledge rides kayaking swimming whale watching

8 Compare your notes. Watch the video again to check your ideas. What time of year would you most like to visit Vancouver? Why?



# ICT LITERACY, COLLABORATION, DECISION-MAKING

9 Work in pairs. Choose a city you would like to visit. Find out information about its weather and different activities you can do there at different times of year. When would you like to visit, and what activities would you like to do?

# PROGRESS CHECK 1

#### **UNITS S-2**

1 Look at the photos and complete the sentences about what these people do each day. Use the verbs in the box.

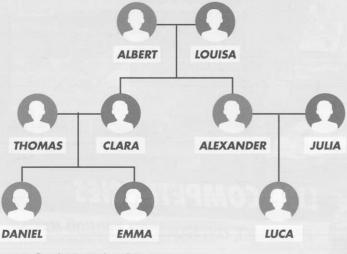
get dressed get on get up put on take off wake up





- 1 The man at \_\_\_\_\_\_at \_\_\_\_at \_\_\_\_at \_\_\_\_at \_\_\_\_at \_\_\_\_at \_\_\_\_at
- 3 The man at
- 4 The woman \_\_\_\_\_ her jacket and leaves the house at \_\_\_\_\_.
- The girl the bus at .The boy his shoes when he arrives home
- at \_\_\_\_\_. his snoes when he arrives nome

2 Look at this family tree and complete the sentences.



- 1 Louisa is Luca's
- 2 Emma is Julia's \_\_\_
- 3 Alexander is Emma's
- 4 Luca is Thomas'
- 5 Daniel is Luca's
- 6 Albert is Emma's

3	Complete the sentences about Emma's family, using
	the correct form of the verbs be and have got.

7 F	mma	(have)	one	brother.

- 2 Albert and Louisa (have) two children.
- 3 Luca (be) Daniel's cousin.
- 4 Thomas and Clara \_\_\_\_\_ (be) Daniel and Emma's parents.
- **5** Luca (not have) any brothers or sisters.
- 6 Emma (have) any sisters?

# 4 Choose a place from box A and a season from box B to match each sentence (1-4).

A	lake	coast	mountain	forest
	spring	summ	er autumr	n winter

- This is high, and you can ski on it when it's cold and there is snow. A:
  B:
- People go here to enjoy the sun and swim in the sea when it's hot and sunny. A:
  B:
- **3** This is full of trees and is a nice place to go for a walk when the leaves change colour.
  - A: B:
- 4 If you go to a park when the weather starts to get warmer, you will often see ducks on this area of water.
  - A: B

#### 5 Complete the sentences with words in the box.

desert	hills	island	north
valley	water	fall w	est

- 1 Great Britain is an \_\_\_\_\_ an area of land with water all around it.
- 2 The sun comes up in the east and goes down in the
- 3 A \_\_\_\_ is a low area of land between \_\_\_\_ and often has a river going through it.
- 4 Niagara is a famous \_\_\_\_\_ between Canada and the USA.
- **5** Germany is a country in the \_\_\_\_\_ of Europe, but Greece is in the south.
- 6 A \_\_\_\_\_ is a very dry place where it doesn't rain very often.

# 6 Put the letters in the correct order to make a country or nationality.

- 1 eFarnc
- 2 niatlal
- 3 oxMeci
- 4 pinSahs

# Put the adverbs in the box in the correct place in each sentence.

always every day never often sometimes usually

#### I work at night a lot.

ng

a's

d

ralk

ater.

nd

out

itry

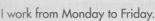
 Nurses have to work at night.





I practise from Monday to Sunday.

Musicians need to practise.



3 Teachers go to school at the weekend.





I have to wear these clothes for school.

4 Some school children wear a uniform.

My shop is often busy on Saturdays and Sundays.

5 Is your shop busy at weekends?





I travel to other countries about once a month.

6 Business people travel to other countries.

# 8 Choose the correct option to complete the sentences.

- I drink/I'm drinking coffee when I get up in the morning.
- 2 I don't want to go out today it rains/it's raining.
- 3 I wake up/I'm waking up at seven thirty every day.
- 4 In my country it never snows/it's never snowing.
- 5 Where's Jack? Does he play/Is he playing football?
- 6 We go/We are going to the beach every summer.

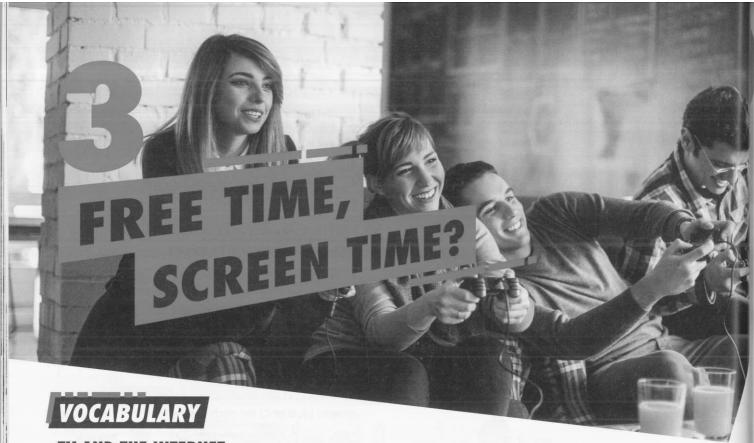
#### 9 Read the sentences and correct any mistakes in the verb tense or adverb of frequency.

- 1 I am sorry that I can't coming to the class tomorrow.
- 2 She have green eyes and blonde hair.
- 3 The people there is very friendly.
- 4 I usually can write twice a month.
- 5 The club is open always.
- 6 I sell a bike that I bought two years ago.

# 10 Read the text about Olivia, and choose the correct answer (A, B or C) for each gap.

Oliv	/ia w	orks in a hospita	l. Sh	e is a 1	. Sh	e gets
2		at six o'clock e	every	morning. For br	eak	fast she
3		some toast an	dad	cup of coffee. Aft	ter b	reakfast
she	4	her shoes	and	coat and 5		the
hou	se. C	Olivia can't drive t	o w	ork because she	does	sn't have
a 6		. If the weat	ner i	s nice, she walks	, but	she
doe	sn't l	ike getting wet, so	o if i	r's 7, sh	ne w	alks to
the	bus s	stop and 8	fo	or the bus.		
7	A	shop assistant	В	photographer	C	nurse
2			D		-	-tt

1	A	shop assistant	В	photographer	C	nurse
2	A	on	В	up	C	off
3	A	has	В	does	C	takes
4	A	brings back	В	goes in	C	puts on
5	A	misses	В	leaves	C	goes
6	A	driving licence	В	passport	C	ID card
7	A	foggy	В	rainy	C	sunny
8	A	hopes	В	stays	C	waits



# TV AND THE INTERNET

How many hours a week do you use screens, watch TV or play video games? Discuss in pairs.

# FREE TIME 54% 20% 12% 8% 6%

Look at the diagram about how people usually spend their leisure time. In pairs, match the activities below with the percentages.

> playing sports and doing exercise watching TV watching videos online using social media playing video games

- 3 025 Listen and check. Were you correct? Are you surprised by any of the answers?
- @ 026 Read the quiz below. Then listen to Roz and answer the questions.
  - 1 What is Roz's score for each activity?
  - 2 What is Roz's final score? What does it mean?

# MY SCREEN LIFE

How much time do you spend in front of screens and on the internet?

#### How often do you ...

- · chat online?
- message friends?
- upload photos?
- download films?

#### Choose from 0-5:

- 0 = less than once a month
- 1 = several times a month
- 2 = once a week
- 3 = several times a week
- 4 = once a day
- 5 = several times a day

- watch an episode/series?
- · write or follow a blog?
- · watch vlogs?
- stream music?



# 026 Complete the sentences. Then listen again and check.

1 | with you every evening!

2 I \_\_\_\_ my \_\_\_ all day. That's how we talk to each other if we aren't together.

3 I like \_\_\_\_\_\_ to social media sites to share them with my friends.

4 I usually \_\_\_\_ an \_\_\_ from my favourite series every day.

5 I music all the time.

Work in pairs and do the quiz. Turn to page 192 and calculate your scores. Ask questions to find out more about what your partner watches and listens to.

What kind of music do you stream?

Which series do you watch?

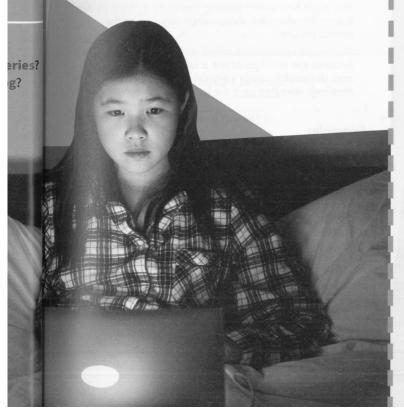
Who do you message the most?

Who's your favourite blogger?

Work in pairs and discuss the questions.
Use the words in the box.

action film comedy crime drama documentary horror news quiz show cartoon

- What kind of programmes do you often/ sometimes/never watch?
- 2 Talk about a programme you like. What's it called? When do you watch it? What genre is it? Who's in it? Why do you like it?



# PUSH YOURSELF BI

# VOCABULARY: ADJECTIVES TO DESCRIBE FILMS

#### Read the reviews and answer the questions.

- 1 Which one is about a science-fiction film? a horror film? a comedy?
- 2 Which films did the writer enjoy/not enjoy?

If you like amusing stories, you will love this funny film about a woman who is looking for her lost love. The story is silly and hard to believe, but the actors are great and play their roles well. I know it isn't like real life, but the brilliant ending will make you laugh out loud and feel good.

I was excited about watching this film. I expected it to be really scary, but it was actually very disappointing. The actors were awful and the story was just boring.

I'm someone who usually doesn't enjoy films like this. I find them uninteresting and a bit too serious, but this one was fantastic. Most of the story is set on a spaceship far away from Earth, with only four characters. However, it's never dull and the excellent actors and the exciting story make this a very enjoyable film.

# 2 Match the beginnings of the definitions with the correct endings.

- 1 If something is disappointing
- 2 A scary film
- 3 If I say something is awful
- 4 If we say something is silly
- 5 Uninteresting means that
- 6 If something is enjoyable
- 7 If something is never dull
- 8 If I say something is brilliant
- 9 A serious film or book
- 10 The opposite of an amusing film
- a doesn't try to be funny but it makes you think.
- b makes you feel frightened.
- c it makes you feel good.
- d it is not as good as we hoped it to be.
- e it isn't ever boring.
- f I think it's very good.
- g is a film that isn't funny.
- **h** something is not interesting.
- i we mean that it isn't clever, but it might be funny.
- i I think it's very bad.



#### PAST SIMPLE OF TO BE



#### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE

Watch the video



#### Look at the examples and complete the rules.

It wasn't very funny - it was a bit boring actually. We were at home on Friday night. The action films weren't very exciting. Was it good? No, it wasn't.

Positive and Negative	
I/He/She/It was/wasn't	
You/We/They were/werer	n't
Questions and short ans	swers
Was I/he/she/it there	Yes, I/he/she/it was.
yesterday?	No, I/he/she/it wasn't.
Were you/we/they there	Yes, you/we/they were.
yesterday?	No, you/we/they weren't

#### **⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE** / page 202

2	Read the conversation and complete with was,
	wasn't, were and weren't.

Charlie: Were you at home last night?

Steve: No, 1<sup>1</sup> . I was at Joel's party.

Charlie: you? Was it good?

Steve: It was OK.

Charlie: Were there many people there?

Steve: Yes, there 3

**Charlie:** And what about Gabi? 4 Gabi there?

No she 5 Steve: . Where were you anyway? Why 6

Charlie: Because I was at Leila's party. It was fantastic!

you there?

#### Work in pairs and ask and answer.

Where was/were you/your best friend/your parents ...

- at six/eight o'clock this morning?
- at lunchtime?
- on Saturday?
- at ten o'clock yesterday evening?
- at 3 o'clock yesterday morning?
- this time yesterday?

#### LISTENING PART

TRAINING

1 What do you enjoy doing at the weekend? Where were you last weekend?



© 027 For these questions, choose the correct

You will hear Abby talking to Sophie about what they and their friends did on Saturday. Where were they? Listen to the first part of the recording.

You might hear words from several of the options (A–G) below. This does not always mean they will be the

Sophie talks about the football stadium, but A is wrong because she didn't go to see a football match. She says she went to see (= visited) her cousin (= a family member), who lives near the football stadium.

#### Example:

Sophie Answer: F

© 028 For questions 1-4, choose the correct answer.

#### People

Alice

Meg

Ben

James

#### **Activities**

A at a football match

**B** at work

C in bed

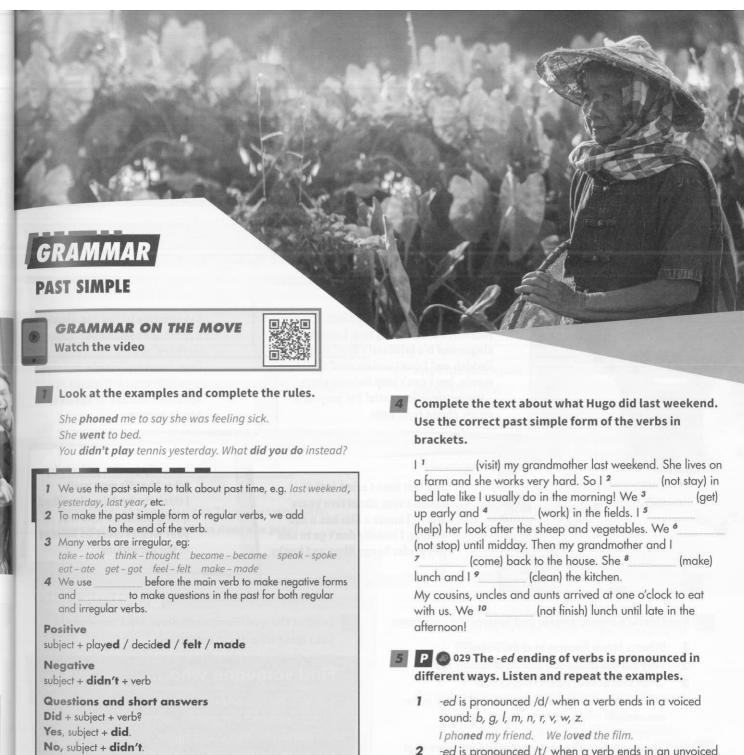
shopping

studying at home

visiting a family member

watching videos





- 2 -ed is pronounced /t/ when a verb ends in an unvoiced sound: c, ch, k, f, p, s, sh, x.
  She cooked lunch. I helped my grandmother.
- **3** -ed is pronounced /Id/ when a verb ends in t or d. She invited my cousins. We downloaded a film.
- 6 030 Practise saying these sentences with a partner. Then listen, check your answers and repeat.
  - 1 | Uploaded lots of photos. 4 | He streamed some music.
    - We cooked lunch. 5 I liked the film.
  - They started early. 6 We enjoyed the party.
- Use the words to make questions in the past simple.
  Ask and answer with your partner.
  - 1 What / do / last weekend?
  - 2 Where / go / on your last holiday?
  - 3 How / you / come / to class / today?
  - 4 What / be / the last / really good film / you see?

hey

ey?

GI

er.

#### Write the past forms of the verbs.

 1 see
 4 go

 2 get up
 5 say

 3 come
 6 have

#### Use the words to make sentences in the past simple.

- 1 She / say / 'good morning' / when / she / see / us.
- 2 1 / not see / her / there.
- 3 They / have / a / really good time.
- 4 She / stay / with / you / last week?
- 5 No / she / not.
- 6 He / play / video games / until midnight.

# VOCABULARY

#### TIME EXPRESSIONS

Look at the questionnaire and then read some of Maria's answers to it. Write which questions she answered.

# When was the

# last time you ...?

... read a really good book?

... downloaded a great song?

... watched a film that made you cry?

... posted a comment on social media?

... phoned a friend?

... played a game/sport?

... walked more than 5 km?



The last time I did this was last week. It's a new song by a Turkish singer and it's brilliant! I don't speak Turkish and I don't understand the words, but I can't stop listening to it - the music is fantastic! I'm playing it on my phone right now.

> The last time I cried in the cinema was about two years ago. If I know a film has a sad ending, I usually don't go to see it! I prefer happy films and books.

I phoned my friend Joe about five minutes ago to say 'happy birthday' to him. Most of the time, I text my friends, but this was different. A birthday is special! I wanted to speak to him in person.

> I usually go everywhere by bike, I hardly ever walk. I think the last time I walked a long distance was last year when I went on holiday in the mountains.

- Read Maria's answers again and answer the questions.
  - What is Maria listening to at the moment?
  - Why did she phone Joe instead of texting him?
  - What kind of films doesn't Maria like?
  - 4 What did Maria do when she was on holiday in the mountains?
- 3 Find the expression in each of Maria's answers that tells us when she did the actions.

last week

Put the time expressions in the boxes in the correct places on the time lines.

an hour ago yesterday afternoon

last night

five minutes ago

past

now

last month

last year

the day before yesterday

3 months ago 4\_

a week ago 5

past

now

Look at the questionnaire below. Find someone in your class who did these things.

#### Find someone who ...

- went to bed after 11.00 pm last night.
- didn't use social media yesterday.
- listened to music last night.
- watched a film last weekend.
- didn't have breakfast this morning.
- did some exercise last week.
- Write a question to ask about each activity.
- 2 Ask questions with What/Where/When/Why did you ... to get more information.

Did you go to bed after 11.00 pm last night?

Yes, I did.

What time did you go to sleep?

At 12.00 pm.

Now work with a partner and tell him or her what you found out about your classmates.

## READING PART 3 TRAINING

edia?

out

рру

1e

to

by

Iked

iday

- Do you enjoy playing video games? Why?/Why not? Are you a good player? What's your favourite game?
- 2 Read the information about e-sports. Does anything surprise you? Would you like to watch or take part in e-sports?

E-sports or electronic sports are competitions using video games. The first big e-sports competitions were in South Korea but now they are in lots of countries. Most players are professional gamers, which means that they play video games as their job. If you win a big competition, you can get a lot of prize money.

3 In pairs, discuss what the words in the box mean.

competition prize professional win

4 Read the text about Haiyun Tang, a professional female gamer. Which games does she play?

Heliyun Tene is a gamer from Shanghai. When she was a teenager, she loved playing video games, and her favourite game was *World of Warcraft*. She became really good at playing this game and, after a few years, she joined *STARS*, a special club for excellent players. This meant she could begin playing in national competitions in China, and she soon won a number of these.

Later Haiyun decided that she would like to enter international competitions, so she learned a new game called *Hearthstone* and practised 12–16 hours a day. In 2015, an American professional team called *Tempo Storm* saw Haiyun playing in a Chinese competition. They invited her to join them. She chose the professional name 'Eloise' for herself and became a professional Hearthstone player.

Eloise won \$16,000 in prize money in her first two years with the team *Tempo Storm*. She also started playing on *Twitch TV*, an online service where people can stream video game competitions. At first, playing on *Twitch TV* was hard for Hiayun because she didn't speak much English, but now thousands of people pay to watch her playing. They also chat with her online, and she can make \$4,000 per month on Twitch TV.



5 Read the text again. For each question, choose the correct answer.

Look at Question 1. Think about the order of what happened: First, she was playing games when she was a teenager. A few years later she joined STARS. Then she played in competitions. So B is the answer.

- Hiayun started playing in important competitions in China
  - A before she was a teenager.
  - B after she joined the games club STARS.
  - **c** as soon as she started playing World of Warcraft.
- 2 Why did Hiayun learn to play Hearthstone?
  - A She thought the game could help her improve.
  - **B** She saw a team called *Tempo Storm* playing this game.
  - C She wanted to play against people from other countries.
- 3 In her first two years with Tempo Storm, Hiayun
  - A was the only woman on the team.
  - **B** earned \$16,000 from winning competitions.
  - **C** played in more games than her team mates.
- 6 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.
  - 1 What do you think are the good and the bad things about being a professional gamer?
  - Would you like to be a professional gamer? Why?/Why not?



# WRITING

#### **A REVIEW**

- Are you watching a series on TV or the internet at the moment? Which one(s)? What kind of programmes do you like/not like?
- Read a review of a TV series. What did the writer enjoy most about it?

Home About

Reviews

Search

## The Originals

I downloaded a really enjoyable series at the weekend and watched it with some friends. It's called *The Originals* and it's a science-fiction comedy-drama. The **setting** is the city of Madrid in the future and the story is about a group of young people. They are students and are all studying science at university. One night, they do a science experiment in their flat. They all get special powers and lots of strange but very funny things start to happen.

My favourite **character** is Valeria. She's clever and makes jokes all the time but she also does some very silly things! For a long time, she doesn't know what her special power is. My favourite **scene** is when she falls out of a window and finds out that she can fly.

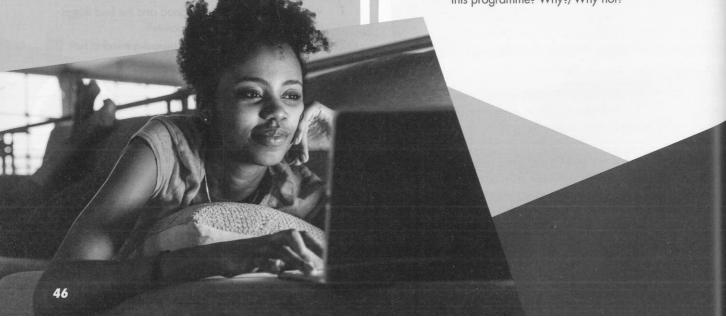
I like *The Originals* because it's so unusual. The **plot** is sometimes difficult to understand but it's always funny and very exciting. But for me, the best thing about the series is the characters: they are just like real people. Some of them are like my friends. I also really enjoy the **dialogue**. The characters always say interesting things that make me think and laugh at the same time!

- 3 Match the words in blue in the review with the definitions (a-e) below.
  - a the story what happens in the series
  - **b** what the people in the story say to each other
  - c a person in the story
  - d a moment in the story when something happens
  - e the place where the story happens
- Read the review again and find this information.
  - 1 What is the title of the series?
  - 2 What is the setting of the series.
  - 3 What sort of people are the characters?
  - 4 What is the genre of the series?
  - 5 Who is the writer's favourite character and why?
  - 6 What is the writer's favourite scene?
  - 7 Why does the writer like the plot?
  - 8 Why does the writer enjoy the dialogue?
- 5 Read the review again and answer the questions.
  - 1 Which paragraphs talk about the things in the box?
  - 2 Write the key words from the review that describe each thing.

setting genre why the writer likes it favourite scene plot characters

		KEY WORDS
paragraph 1	setting	The city of Madrid in the future
paragraph 2		
paragraph 3		Enot not le

- 6 Now plan your own review. Choose a series you want to write about. Copy the table in Exercise 5 and use it to plan what you want to say.
- Write your review. When you have finished, exchange reviews with a partner and check each other's work.
  - Did your partner include enough information?
  - Can you find any grammar or spelling mistakes?
  - Is the review interesting? Would you like to watch this programme? Why?/Why not?



# SPEAKING

#### TALKING ABOUT THE WEEKEND

- Have you got any friends or family who live in other countries? Where do they live? How often do you speak to them? What kind of things do you talk about?
- 031 Listen to Sara, who lives in England, talking online to her sister Iman, who works in New York. Who had a fun weekend?



#### DID YOU KNOW?

Some British English speakers say that they are watching **telly**, but American English speakers always say that they are watching **TV**.

Put the words in order to make questions for asking about the weekend.

- 1 a / you / have / weekend? / Did / nice
- 2 was / weekend? / your / How
- 3 up / did / get / Sunday? / to / on / What / you
- 4 the / do / at / did / weekend? / you / What

#### 4 031 Listen again. Who gave these answers to questions about the weekend? Write I (Iman) or S (Sara).

It was			
$\square$ really good	$\square$ not great	☐ really quiet	quite busy
What did you o	qoś		
not much	this and tha		

- 5 Match the questions (1-6) with the correct answers (a-f). Which are in the present and which are in the past tense?
  - 1 So how was your Saturday?
  - 2 What did you get up to at the weekend?
  - 3 What did you do on Friday night?
  - 4 Did you have a good weekend?
  - 5 What do you usually do at the weekend?
  - 6 Do you see your friends at the weekends?
  - **a** I met some friends after work and we went to the cinema.
  - **b** I go shopping and clean the house but I try to do something interesting too.
  - c Not great. I was sick and stayed in bed all day.
  - d What weekend? I worked all day Saturday and Sunday!
  - **e** No, they work at the weekends, but I usually see them during the week.
  - **f** Yes, I did, thanks. It was really quiet, but it was nice to stay at home.
- Write at least five questions to ask your partner about the weekend, then ask and answer.
  - Include some present tense questions about what he/she normally/usually does.
  - Include some past tense questions about last weekend.
  - Include a mixture of yes/no questions (with do/did) and Wh- questions with What/Where/When/ Who/Why.



ζŚ

re

ant se it

ange ork.

# EXAM FOCUS

# **READING PART 3**

#### EXAM FACTS

- · You read a long text.
- · You answer five questions about the text.
- One question might be about the whole text, not just a section of the text.

#### @ EXAM TIPS

- Look at the question numbers to find out which part of the text the answer is in.
- Read the question carefully and underline the part of the text where you can find the answer.
- Look at all three options A, B and C and decide which one is the correct answer to the questions.
- Remember that words from A, B and C may all be in the text, but only one is the correct answer.

For each question, choose the correct answer.

#### Working in the theatre

By Grace Mellor

I love my job! I studied dance at university, but I was never sure I wanted to be a dancer. One day, when I was reading an entertainment magazine, I saw advertisements for stage managers. 'That's what I want to do,' I thought. I've got a friend who does make-up in a small theatre, so I contacted her. I was lucky because the stage manager there needed an assistant.

My boss, the stage manager, tells me what everyone needs to do, and it's my job as assistant stage manager to see that they do it when they should. She seems to spend her day answering questions from people – actors, writers, and everyone else who works here. And they all want her to decide immediately!

Most people don't really understand my job. They think it's all about moving heavy things on and off stage. It isn't, which is good because I'm not that strong! People say, 'Are you doing this until you get better-paid work as a dancer?' They can't believe I want to work behind the scenes, not as the star of the show.

Some of my colleagues think we work too much. They want to go out with friends more. I have so many friends in the theatre, I don't feel like that. But one thing that is difficult is how hot it gets behind the stage. I didn't know that until I started here. I also didn't know just how many different jobs a stage manager – or the assistant – has to do. But that's one of the things I enjoy.

- 1 How did Grace get her job?
  - A She saw an advertisement in a theatre.
  - **B** She knew someone who worked in the theatre.
  - C She had help from a friend at university.
- 2 As assistant stage manager, Grace has to
  - A work with different types of people.
  - B decide quickly what needs to be done.
  - c make sure things happen at the right time.
- 3 Grace says other people are often surprised that
  - A she doesn't want to be a dancer.
  - **B** she isn't looking for a job with more money.
  - C she is not very strong.

- 4 What doesn't Grace like about being an assistant stage manager?
  - A the long hours that she works
  - B the temperature behind the stage
  - C having to do so many different things
- 5 What is Grace doing in this text?
  - A explaining a job that not everyone knows about
  - B giving information about different jobs in the theatre
  - c helping people choose which job they want to do

# LISTENING PART 5

#### **EXAM FACTS**

he

- You listen to a conversation between two people.
- You see two lists (1–5 and A–H), and you match the people, places or things in the list 1–5 with the options A–H.
- You hear the conversation twice.

#### EXAM TIPS

- Remember that you hear about the people from list 1-5 in the order that you read them and you will hear their names BEFORE you hear the answer for that person.
- You might hear about the things on list A-H more than once, but each is the correct answer for only one person.
- There is always an example for this task, with the answer given. Cross this answer off in the A–H list, as you won't need to use it again.
- There are two options in the list A–H that you will not need to use.

For each question, choose the correct answer.

© 032 You will hear Luis talking to his friend about a weekend trip to the city. What activity is each person going to do?

le:				
s D				
	Act	tivities		
ella 🗌	A	go shopping		
rco 🗆	В	go to a concert		
	С	go to the theatre		
hard $\Box$	D	meet a friend		
ıra 🗌	E	take a bus tour		
	F	take a river trip		
	G	visit a museum		
	Н	walk with a guide		
	101 110	MATE DEALET	The state of the s	HOW WAS IT
		Acceptance of the second of th	Route du	HOW WAS IT
	THE LEW	Acceptance of the second of th	The state of the s	Gave it a se
	ella   urco   chard	ella	A go shopping  B go to a concert  C go to the theatre  Chard  D meet a friend  E take a bus tour  F take a river trip  G visit a museum	A go shopping  B go to a concert  C go to the theatre  Chard  D meet a friend  E take a bus tour  F take a river trip  G visit a museum



- Look at the people in the photos (A-C). Where are they? What do you think they are doing?
- 2 Read the text about going to see a show on Broadway. Match the headings with the paragraphs.

What to buy

What to see

Where to eat before the show

Where to get tickets

Where to sit

# **BROADWAY SHOWS**

Want to watch a Broadway show? Here's everything you need to know!

1

To help you decide, think about who is going to the show with you. If you're going with younger brothers and sisters, don't choose something too scary. And think about when you want to go, too. Some popular shows are booked up for months ahead. Check that there are tickets available before you start planning your trip.

2

Once you've chosen your show, book as early as possible. Prices are high, but discounts are available, so you don't have to pay full price. You can often get cheaper tickets online. If you're happy to go in the afternoon rather than the evening, matinee tickets are often half price. The TKTS Discount Booths sell same-day theatre tickets for 50% off. And many shows have standing tickets for sale a few hours before each performance.

3

Many theatre fans think that it's best to choose orchestra seats as close to the stage as possible. But this isn't always true. Sometimes you want to be further away, to get a bigger picture of what's happening. The mezzanine is higher up, and you usually get a good view. If you're tall, choose an aisle seat because you get extra space for your legs.

4

There are lots of restaurants around Times Square, but they are usually expensive, and the food isn't great. Look at restaurant reviews to find cheaper places to eat that are a bit further away from the theatres. These are often the places where New Yorkers eat and you'll get a much better meal.

E

Nothing! All theatres sell merchandise for their shows, but it costs a lot! If you really want a T-shirt or something else to help you remember your trip, look at the merchandise in the theatres, then look online to see if you can find the same thing at a lower price.





- Read the text again. Decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F). Correct the false statements.
  - 1 You have to wait a long time to see some shows.
  - 2 It's usually more expensive to watch a show in the afternoon.
  - 3 It's always a good idea to choose tickets that are near the stage.
  - 4 You can get cheap meals in restaurants around Times Square.
  - 5 The things that theatres sell to help you remember the show are usually expensive.
- 4 Find the phrases in the text and choose the correct definitions.
  - 1 some shows are booked up
    - a all the tickets are sold
    - **b** there are lots of tickets that you can book
  - 2 discounts are available
    - a the prices are all the same
    - **b** you can get cheaper tickets
  - 3 matinee tickets
    - tickets for an evening show
    - **b** tickets for an afternoon show
  - 4 orchestra seats
    - a seats that are high up in the theatre
    - b tickets in the lowest part of the theatre
  - 5 an aisle seat
    - a seat that is on the end of a line of seats
    - **b** a seat that is in the middle of a line of seats
- © 033 Listen to three tourists booking tickets for a Broadway show. Complete the details for the tickets that each tourist buys.

Speaker	Show	Day	Evening or matinee	Seats
1			evening	
2		Tuesday		
3	Charlie and the Chocolate Factory	Julian Delimentaria	40104414000001000100	Mezzanine

6 033 Complete the phrases with the correct words. Listen again and check.

Can I Do you sell I'd like Is there these vouchers

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE**

- 1 to book four tickets for Wicked on Thursday.
- 2 tickets for School of Rock here?
- 3 a discount for students?
- 4 book tickets for Charlie and the Chocolate Factory here?
- **5** Can I use \_\_\_\_\_ to pay for the tickets?

Sometimes people use certain phrases when talking about theatre bookings. Match the sentences with the correct definitions.

#### PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR

- 1 The matinee's sold out.
- 2 I don't have four in a block.
- 3 I have two twos.
- 4 We don't offer any concessions.
- 5 Do you mind the back row?
- a There aren't four seats together.
- **b** Are you happy to sit far away from the stage?
- c There are no tickets left for the afternoon show.
- d There are two groups of two seats.
- e There are no discounts.
- Watch the video about Broadway. Match the numbers with the correct facts.
  - 1 40
  - 2 1,933
  - **3** 11,400
  - 4 79
  - **5** 70%
  - 6 20-50%
- the number of times a popular show was performed
- b the amount of money (in millions) that one show cost
- the number of theaters in the Theater District
- d the discount you can get if you buy tickets at a TKTS booth
- **e** the number of seats in the Gershwin Theater
- f the number of seats that tourists buy
- Discuss the questions. Watch the video again to check your ideas.



# LIFE COMPETENCIES

#### MAKING NOTES AND GIVING INFORMATION

IO Work in groups. Find out what shows you can see in your city, or a city near you. Find information about the prices, the different seats available, and discounts. Discuss the shows and agree on which one you would all like to see. Tell your classmates about your show and why you chose it.



# READING

- Can you swim? How often do you swim? Do you like running? Have you got a bike? How often do you use it?
- 2 Our bodies can do lots of amazing things. Read the quiz and match the photos (A-F) with the questions. Then complete the quiz.





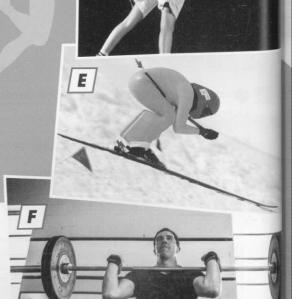


# **BRILLIANT BODIES**

We hang out with our bodies all the time, so it's easy to forget how amazing they are. Did you know:

- There are athletes who can run up to:
  - a 44 km per hour 5 37 km per hour
- c 24 km per hour
- 2 Basketball players and dancers can jump nearly:
  - a 0.3 m
- 6 1 m
- c 1.3 m
- 3 In one hour, it's possible for a cyclist to cycle:
- **b** 54 km
- 4 There is a freediver who can stay under water for:
  - a 13 minutes
- b 22 minutes
- c 33 minutes
- 5 Speed skiers can ski up to:

  - a 150 km per hour b 200 km per hour
- c 250 km per hour
- 6 It's possible for a person to lift up to:
  - a 284 kg
- 6 2,840 kg
- c 28,400 kg
- 034 Listen and check your answers. Does anything surprise you?
- 4 You are going to read interviews with some people who can do amazing things with their bodies. Read the texts. Which of the things can you do? Which would you like to be able to do?



# **AMAZING ATHLETES**

Which athletes have the fittest bodies and can do the most amazing things? We spoke to two top athletes to find out.

## MIKHAIL - BALLET DANCER

'Ballet is great exercise: it's good for the heart because you are moving all the time and also jumping a lot.
I can jump one metre in the air when I'm dancing. My dance partner, Inna, can't jump as high as I can, but she can dance en pointe—on her toes—which I don't do. You need to have very strong feet for this: it takes years to learn and your feet hurt!
I need to have strong arms and a strong back because I sometimes lift Inna over my head as part of a dance. We usually practise for six to nine hours every day.
We get very tired but we love dancing!'

## **OSCAR** – QUARTERBACK

The great thing about American football is that there is a position for everyone. Players are often big and strong, but if you are small and fast, you can play American football too. I'm a quarterback and this position is very important. I need to play with my brain and my body. I have big hands and strong fingers, so I can throw the ball a long way. It's a very physical sport and there are often injuries. Neck, shoulder and knee injuries are a big problem and last year



# Read the texts again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

- Ballet dancers jump a lot when they dance.
- 2 Only men dance on their toes.
- 3 It's important for Mikhail to have strong arms.
- 4 Small athletes can't play American football.
- 5 Oscar thinks a lot when he's playing.
- Oscar could play in every game last year.

#### 6 Which parts of the body can:

- 1 dancers sometimes hurt?
- 2 American footballers often hurt?

# VOCABULARY

#### THE BODY

1 Label the diagram of the body with words in red from the text.

I couldn't play for three months after

another player hit me in the stomach

with his helmet.

	5	
1	6	
2 3	7	
	8	
4		

Complete the sentences with the correct words from Exercise 1.

1	People who write with the	can't use their hands and fingers can learn to eir
2		to hurt your when you lift something heavy.
3		joins your head to the rest of your body.
4		hurts. I think I ate my sandwich too quickly.
5		moves blood around their body.
6	People who	have long can play the piano more easily.
7	We use our	to think and control our bodies.
Q		is in the middle part of your lea.

# GRAMMAR

#### CAN AND CAN'T; COULD AND COULDN'T



#### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE

Watch the video



Look at the examples and complete the rules for can and could.

I can jump one metre in the air when I'm dancing. Inna can't jump as high as I can. Last year I couldn't play for three months. I could throw the ball a long way when I was a young player. Could you skateboard when you were a child? No, I couldn't.

for things we are able to do in the present. We use 2 We use for things we were able to do in the past.

#### Positive/Negative

Subject + can/can't + verb

Subject + could/couldn't + verb

#### Questions and short answers

Can + subject + verb?

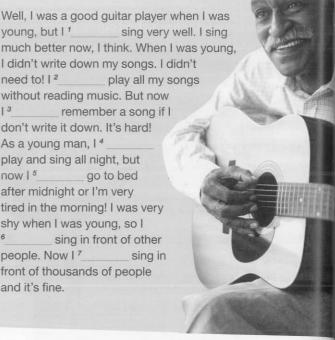
Yes/No + subject + can/can't.

#### GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 204

- 2 Match the beginnings of the sentences (1-6) with the endings (a-f).
  - Can you finish the work by tomorrow
  - When I was a child I could stand on my head
  - He spoke very quietly
  - Be careful when you take Ben to the beach
  - There was so much food
  - Could you speak English
  - that they couldn't eat it all.
  - b or do you need more time?
  - when you were a child? C
  - because he can't swim. d
  - and I couldn't hear what he said.
  - but I can't do it now.
- Musician Ivan Morrison is talking about his life now and his life when he was young. Complete the sentences with can, can't, could or couldn't.

# Now and then

young, but I 1 much better now, I think. When I was young, I didn't write down my songs. I didn't need to! | 2 play all my songs without reading music. But now remember a song if I don't write it down. It's hard! As a young man, I 4 play and sing all night, but now | 5 go to bed after midnight or I'm very tired in the morning! I was very shy when I was young, so I sing in front of other people. Now 17 sing in front of thousands of people and it's fine.



P @ 035 Read and listen to the dialogues. Notice which words are stressed. Circle the two unstressed examples of can in dialogue 1 and could in dialogue 2. How are can and could pronounced differently when they are unstressed?

1 A: Can you stand on your

B: No, I can't. Can you?

A: Yes, I can and I can walk on my hands, too!

2 A: Could you read when you were six years old?

> B: Yes, I could, a little. Could you?

A: Yes, I could and I could write quite well, too.



Use the words in the box to make questions with can and could. Ask and answer in pairs. Be careful of the pronunciation!

> speak more than one language play the guitar swim 500 metres ride a bike cook drive a car

Can you cook?

Yes, I can. I'm a good cook!

Could you ride a bike when you were six years old?

No, I couldn't.

# VOCABULARY

#### **ILLNESS AND INJURY**

© 036 Listen and match the people (1–8) with the photos (A–H). What health problems have they got? Who hasn't got a health problem?

















1	Jack	5	Harry	
2	Alissa	6	Jenna	
3	Mina	7	Daniel	
4	Luca	8	Sally	

036 Listen again and complete the information. Use the words in the box.

1		backache cold feels hurt stomach ache	
7	Jack's got	aache.	
2		se heryesterday.	
3	Mina's got	•	
4		his leg at football traini	ng.
5		ta	
6		got a and she	sick
7	Daniel's go	of tooth	
8	Sally feels	<u> </u>	

3 036 Match the beginnings of the sentences (1-7) with the endings (a-g). Listen again to check your answers.

1 Jack's headache is

can

the

- 2 Alissa's friend called an ambulance
- 3 Mina needs to sit down
- 4 Luca hurt his leg
- 5 Harry went to the pharmacy
- 6 Jenna is ill because
- 7 Daniel's friend thinks

- a to get some medicine for his cold.
- b he should go to the dentist.
- c she ate some bad fish.
- **d** and she went to hospital.
- e because of the sun.
- f but he didn't break it.
- g and have a rest.

4 Complete these expressions with one word.

better	hurt	matter	sorry	well	your
1 2	Are you (	OK, Roy? '	What's th	ne	Ś
2 4	How are	you, Sally	? Are you	J	ś
3	Does you	ır arm	ŝ		rb
4 2	l'm	to he	ar that.		
5	I hope sh	e gets	sc	oon.	
6 5	How's	kr	ieeś	EJKE	

# 5 Which of the expressions in Exercise 4 do we use:

- 1 to ask about a person's health?
- 2 to respond to information about a person's health?

#### 6 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- When was the last time you felt ill?
- 2 What do you do when you:
  - a have a headache?
  - b have a cold?
- **3** What number do you ring for an ambulance in your country?
- 4 How often do you go to the dentist?

# GRAMMAR

#### SHOULD/SHOULDN'T FOR GIVING ADVICE



# GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE Watch the video



Do you think you have a healthy lifestyle? Discuss the questions in pairs.

- 1 Do you eat fruit and vegetables every day?
- 2 How many hours do you sleep at night?
- 3 Are you fit? How often do you exercise?
- 4 How much water do you drink every day?
- Read the information about how to be fit and healthy and complete with the numbers in the box.

1.6 10 25 9 5 30

#### FACT FILE:

# HOW TO BE FIT AND

#### FOOD:

You should eat at least <sup>1</sup> pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables per day.

You shouldn't eat more than 60g of fat. <sup>2</sup>

You shouldn't eat more than 60g of fat, <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_ g of sugar and 2g of salt per day.

#### **WATER:**

It's important to drink enough water, but you shouldn't drink too much.

Men should drink 2 litres of water a day and women should drink 3 litres.

#### > SLEEP:

Teenagers should sleep 8–4 hours a night and adults should sleep 7–5 hours.

#### **EXERCISE:**

Everybody should do some form of exercise for  $20^{-6}$  minutes per day.

3 Look at the examples of should and shouldn't and complete the rules.

Men **should** drink two litres of water a day. You **shouldn't** eat more than 60g of fat.

1	We use <b>should</b> and <b>shouldn't</b> to give advice.			
	You 1	do this. = 'It's a good idea to do this'.		
	You 2	do this. = 'It's not a good idea to do this'.		
2	In question	s, <b>should</b> goes in front of the subject,		
	e.g. <sup>3</sup>	he do this?		
	Yes, he sho	uld. / No, he 4		

⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 205

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of should and one of the verbs in the box.

d	rink	drive	eat	exercise	walk	
1	He's	s always	hungr	y: he	more for	breakfast.
2	1 do			nergy and I 'Yes, you		
3	1		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	more wa	ter during th	e day!
4		needs to shop, he		se more: he	there. It's	not far!

5 What changes should you make to have a more healthy lifestyle? Tell your partner.

I should drink more water.

I shouldn't stay up late at night.

# SPEAKING

#### **GIVING ADVICE**

037 Look at the photos and read the questions.
Listen to a health and fitness expert giving advice to two people. Do you think she gives good advice?

V.	I love fast food - I eat it all the
	time. Is it really bad for me?

I want to get fit so I started running but I hate it! It makes me feel terrible. What should I do?

037 Listen again and complete the expressions she uses to give advice.

1 3	ou should how about why don't you ou shouldn't what about		
7	Perhapsstart exercising more slowly.		
2	To begin with, walking for half an hour every day?		
3	try some different types of exercise?		
4	It's OK to eat fast food sometimes, buteat i all the time.		
5	try some other types of food?		
6	If you really want a burger, having a salad with it?		

3 Work in pairs. Take turns to give each other advice about a healthy lifestyle.

#### LISTENING PART 4 TRAINING

🚺 🙆 038 Listen to three conversations about people with different types of health problems. For each question, choose the correct answer.

ast.

2?

at it

ad

First look at question 1 and the options. Listen to the first part of the recording.

The women talk about the ideas in the three options (A, B and C), but they don't always use the same words that you read in the question. Think about how to say each idea using different words. For example, I'm tired = I need to sleep, or I'm worried = I'm thinking about problems and feel stressed.

A is correct because she didn't sleep last night and she can't keep her eyes open. B is wrong because she was sick yesterday but her stomach's better today. C is wrong because she has finished all her work today.

- Annie is talking to her friend at work. What's the matter with Annie?
  - (A) She's feeling very tired.
  - She's got a stomach ache.
  - She's worried about her work.
- **2** 039 <u>Underline</u> the important information you need to listen for in questions 2 and 3 and the A, B, C options. Then listen and choose the correct answer.
  - You will hear Victor phoning his friend Karen. Why is Victor phoning?
    - A He can't leave his house today.
    - He can't take her to the doctor's.
    - He can't go for a walk.
  - You will hear Jake talking to his friend Naomi. What's the matter with Jake?
    - His tooth hurts.

# He has a headache. There's a problem with his neck.

## PUSH YOURSELF

#### VOCABULARY: PARTS OF THE BODY

1 Read the interview with Dr Jones, a specialist sports doctor. Do sports people usually injure the same parts of their bodies as ordinary people?

So, Dr Jones, your job is looking after sports people. Are their bodies very different from ordinary people?

Well, sports people are always fit and strong but in different ways. For example, if you run or swim a lot, your lungs get

stronger because they need to hold more air. Swimmers also get very strong muscles in their arms and shoulders, and runners, of course, have strong legs,

feet and ankles.

And do sports people hurt themselves in different ways from us?

Yes, sports people hurt the parts of their bodies that they use a lot for their particular sport. So for example, tennis players have more problems with their elbows and their wrists than the rest of us because they use their arms so much. Skiers are another example. They often have problems with their hips where the legs join the body - because of how they move when they ski. Sports players also break their bones more often than ordinary people.

Match the words in orange in the interview with these definitions

CIT	se demin	ons.
7	Vour	are where your feet join the hady

to breathe and bring air into We use our our bodies.

Your are where your arms join your body, near your neck.

to move all different parts We need strong of our bodies and to carry things.

are the parts of the body between the hands and the arms.

are hard things inside the body that support it.

are in the middle of the arms. The

are at the top of your legs where they Your join the body.

#### **LINKING WORDS**

- When was the last time you had an accident? Where? When? What happened?
- Read two stories about an accident and answer the questions.



Last year I was on holiday in the mountains with my family. One day, we went skiing. It was a lovely sunny day and we went to the top of the hill. I put on my skis and looked around. I felt very happy. 'I love skiing!' I thought and I started to ski slowly down the hill.

**Suddenly** a man skied in front of me! I tried to stop but I couldn't. I bumped into him and **then** I fell over. The man was OK, but he didn't stop.

I hurt my leg and my family took me to hospital. **After that**, I couldn't go skiing for the rest of the holiday. It was really boring!



One sunny afternoon, I was reading in our garden and I saw Sam, my nephew, climb a big tree. Sam didn't come back down so I went to have a look. He was stuck! I wanted to help Sam so I climbed the tree to get him.

When I got to the top, I took the boy in my arms and I started to climb down the tree but then I got stuck too. I couldn't move up or down.

**Suddenly**, Sam got frightened; he started to move in my arms and I fell out of the tree. I broke my arm when I hit the ground but Sam was fine! **After that**, he didn't climb any more trees!



- 1 Where were the people?
- 2 When did the accident happen?
- 3 How did it happen?
- 4 What part of their body did they hurt?
- 3 Look at the words and expressions in blue in the stories. They help us to link the different parts of the story. Which one(s) tell us:
  - 1 when the story happened?
  - 2 in what order events in the story happened?
  - 3 that something happened quickly and was a surprise?
- 4 Find these verbs in the stories and then complete the sentences with the correct form.

b	oump into fall over get stuck	hit
7	The little boy ran so fast that he	and hurt his leg.
2	When I threw the ball it	the sports teacher on his head. He was very angry!
3	My dog went into a hole after a	a rabbit. He was too big to get out and he!
4	It was dark and I couldn't see as	nything, so I my friend.

# WRITING PART 7 TRAINING

In this exam task, you see three pictures, which together tell a story. You can write the story in the present or the past. Try to use linking words and time expressions and don't forget to write full sentences and check your spelling.

- Read the sentences from a story about an accident and put them in order. Use the words in bold to help you.
  - a 'Don't worry!' said Emily.
  - b 'Sorry. We didn't know he was such a crazy horse!' said Joanna.
  - c One afternoon, Martha went horse riding with her friends Emily and Joanna.
  - d But when they got to the field, the horse **suddenly** went really fast, and Martha fell off.
  - e When Martha got on the horse, she asked, 'Are you sure this horse is safe to ride?'
  - f After that Martha had to go to hospital because her leg was broken.
- 2 Look at the three pictures. Write the story shown in the pictures. Write 35 words or more. Use the words below to help you.

Useful words:

Time expressions: suddenly, one day, after that, one afternoon

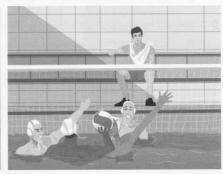
Picture 1: swimming pool, water polo, sign, no running, fell, wet floor

Picture 2: hurt, arm, ambulance, hospital

Picture 3: the next week, couldn't swim, arm, broken, watch his friends, bored







# SPEAKING

#### **TELLING A STORY**

040 You are going to hear Alex telling a story. Listen and fill in the table about what happened.

When and where?	
Who with?	
What did they do?	
How did he feel?	
What happened?	
What happened after that?	

- Prepare to tell your partner a story about an accident. Make some notes using the questions in the table in Exercise 1.
- Work in pairs and take turns to tell your stories. Ask your partner at least one question about their story.

# EXAM FOCUS

# LISTENING PART 4

#### EXAM FACTS

- You listen to five short recordings in which one person or two people are speaking.
- For each recording, you read a question and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.
- You hear each recording twice.

#### EXAM TIPS

- Before you listen, read each situation and question carefully.
- Don't worry if you hear words that you don't understand.
   You can choose the correct answer without understanding every word you hear.
- Remember, the speakers may use words from all three options, but only one is the correct answer to the question.
- When you listen the second time, check your answers.

#### 041 For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 1 You will hear two friends talking about doing exercise. What does the man say about it?
  - A He thinks exercise is better with other people.
  - **B** He thinks he should exercise more.
  - C He thinks doing exercise is boring.
- 2 You will hear a woman leaving a message for a doctor's receptionist. Why did the woman call?
  - A She's forgotten the time of her appointment.
  - **B** She wants to change her appointment.
  - C She needs to make an appointment.
- 3 You will hear a woman called Lara talking to a friend about going shopping. What does Lara want her friend to do?
  - A help her choose something
  - **B** lend her some money
  - C give her a lift
- 4 You will hear a man talking about his new job. How does the man feel about his new job?
  - A He's glad he's earning more money.
  - **B** He likes his working hours.
  - C He thinks the boss is good.
- 5 You will hear two friends talking about an exhibition of photographs. Where will the exhibition be?
  - A in a train station
  - B in a hospital
  - **C** in a hotel

# WRITING PART 7

#### **EXAM FACTS**

- You see three pictures which, together, tell a story.
- You write the story which is shown in the pictures.
- You write at least 35 words.

Look at the three pictures.

Write the story shown in the pictures.

Write 35 words or more.

ng

on.

WRITING BANK / pages 235-236.

#### EXAM TIPS

- · You can write the story in the present or in the past, but use the same tense for the whole story.
- Write in full sentences, and join your ideas with words like and, so, because, and when.
- · When you finish, check your spelling.







#### **HOW WAS IT?** Gave it a go

**Getting there** 

Aced it!

# **REAL WORLD**

# IF YOU'RE ILL IN ... DIIBITA

- Look at the photos (A-C) of places in Dublin. Why do people go to the places in these photos?
- 2 Read the webpage about what to do if you get ill or have an accident in Dublin. Match the photos with the paragraphs.

HOME | ABOUT | Q SEARCH

Being sick in Dublin is no fun, just like anywhere else in the world. So where should you go if you need prescription medicines or a consultation with a doctor?

Where can I buy medicine?
You can buy medicines in lots of different places.
Supermarkets, small shops and petrol stations will probably sell a few standard medicines for headaches, sore throats and coughs. Many also sell medicines for allergies.
Pharmacies are the only places that sell prescription medicines.
Note that you will need an Irish prescription to get these.

What should I do if I need a doctor?

If you need to see a doctor during the day, ask your hotel who your nearest GP (general practitioner) is, and phone the medical centre to book an appointment. You will probably have to pay cash for the consultation, but this should not be more than €60. Remember, if you are an EU member, take your EHIC card (European Health Insurance Card) with you. Most doctors are open from nine to five, Mondays to Fridays. Outside these times, you will need to find a DOC (Doctor on Call), who will probably be at one of the larger medical centres. If you have an injury such as a broken bone, you can also go to the A&E (Accident and Emergency) department of a hospital.

What should I do in an emergency?
In any life-threatening emergency, you should call 112 or 999 and ask for an ambulance. An ambulance will be sent immediately and you will be taken to the nearest hospital.
A nurse will decide how bad your illness or injury is and you will then wait to see a doctor. You may have to pay €100.
Remember, when you are travelling, it's always a good idea to have travel insurance to pay for medicines or to see a doctor abroad.



- Find the words and phrases in the text and match them with the correct definitions.
  - 1 consultation
  - 2 prescription medicines
  - 3 GP
  - 4 medical centre
  - 5 EHIC card
  - 6 DOC
  - 7 life-threatening emergency
  - 8 travel insurance
  - a doctor who sees people with lots of different medical problems
  - **b** an agreement in which you pay money to a company and they agree to pay if something bad happens to you
  - c a meeting with a doctor
  - d a doctor who is available at night or at the weekend
  - e a time when your life is suddenly in danger
  - f medicines that you can only get with a note from a doctor
  - g a card that says EU members can see a doctor in EU countries without paying
  - h a place where a doctor sees people who are ill
- 4 Read the text again. Answer the questions.
  - Where can you buy standard medicines for a headache or sore throat?
  - 2 Where can you buy medicines for allergies?
  - 3 Where can you buy prescription medicines?
  - 4 What should you do if you need to see a doctor during the day?
  - 5 What should you do if you need to see a doctor at the weekend?
  - 6 What should you do if you have a very bad injury?
- 042 Listen to three conversations about health problems. Where does each conversation take place? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.
  - a at a hotel
  - **b** at a pharmacy
  - c in a GP's waiting room
  - d at a hospital emergency department
- 042 Complete the phrases with the correct words. Listen again and check.

medicines painkillers prescription sore tablets

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE**

- 1 I have a from the doctor.
- 2 I'm not taking any at the moment.
- 3 I take for my headaches.
- 4 I have a really bad throat.
- 5 I just need some

7 Match the sentences from the listening with the correct definitions.

#### PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR

- 1 Any other medical conditions?
- 2 You didn't have any side effects?
- 3 You must finish the whole course.
- 4 You can probably claim it back.
- a It's important to take all the tablets or medicine.
- b You will get back the money you pay.
- c Do you have any other problems with your health?
- d Did the medicine make you feel ill?
- Watch the video. What do you learn about these things? Make notes.
  - the city
  - pharmacies
  - medical centres
- doctors
- A&E departments
- the emergency number
- Compare your notes. Watch the video again to check your ideas.



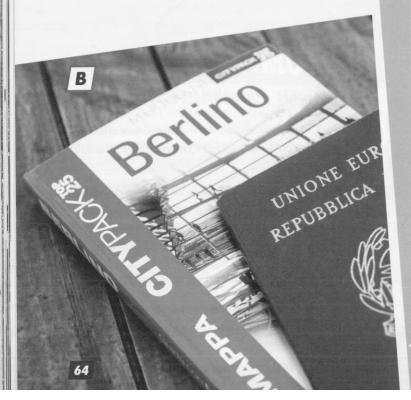
# LIFE COMPETENCIES

## SHARING IDEAS, AND PROBLEM-SOLVING

- Work in groups. Find information about what visitors can do if they are ill in your city. Discuss the questions.
  - Where can you buy medicines such as painkillers?
  - Where can you get prescription medicines?
  - Do you have to pay to see a doctor?
  - How can you see a doctor at night or at the weekend?
  - Where should you go in an emergency?
- 11 Make an information leaflet for visitors to your city. Present it to your classmates.



- Is your country a popular holiday destination? Is it a problem when too many tourists visit some places?
- Read the quiz and match each question with one of the photos.
- Work in pairs. Take turns to ask and answer the questions. What kind of traveller are you?
  - 1 Go to page 193 to find the result for your partner.
  - 2 Tell your partner their result. Do they agree?



# ARE YOU AN ADVENTUROUS TRAVELLER?

- Before you travel, do you ...
  - **a** find out as much information about your **destination** as possible and plan everything you can?
  - b decide one or two places you want to visit and things you want to do?
  - c not plan too much you like surprises!
- Your accommodation must be ...
- a a good hotel room with a bathroom, TV and WiFi.
  - **b** with local people it's the only way to know a place.
  - **c** a simple, clean place that's not expensive or a tent on a campsite.
- When you arrive in a new city, do you ...
  - a go out and walk around?
    - **b** go to a tourist information centre and book your place of a tour with a tour guide?
  - c just visit the most famous and interesting places?
- Your luggage for a two-week holiday is ...
  - a two or three bags and suitcases you want to be sure you have everything you need.
    - b one suitcase but it isn't easy to get all your things in it!
  - c just a backpack, you don't like carrying lots of things.
- You are driving to the airport to catch your flight. There is a lot of traffic on the road, how do you feel?
  - **a** Fine. You left your house very early, so you still have lots of time to catch your flight.
  - **b** Worried. This **delay** will make you late. You could miss your flight.
  - c Fine. If you miss this flight, you can catch the next one.





# LISTENING

on

place of

sure you

s in it!

ere is a

ve

miss

one.

043 Listen to four people talking about what kind of traveller they are. Match them with their ideal holiday.

Loli the city
Chloe and Lisa the beach
Jamie the mountains

043 Listen again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.

- 1 Loli likes the beach but she doesn't enjoying swimming.
- 2 Loli often books her travel and accommodation online.
- 3 Lisa doesn't like staying in campsites.
- 4 Chloe and Lisa don't like travelling to places where they can't speak the language.
- Jamie likes learning about the history of the places he visits.
- Jamie often goes to the tourist information centre to find out about good restaurants.



# 3 Complete the sentences with words in pink from the quiz.

1	For me, staying with local people in their houses is the	е		
	best kind of holiday			

- The only problem with cheap travel is that if you your flight because of a \_\_\_\_\_ getting to the airport, you can't just catch the next one.
- We often go walking and camping in the mountains;
  We don't take much \_\_\_\_\_\_, just a \_\_\_\_\_\_ to
  sleep in and a \_\_\_\_\_\_ with food and water.
- 4 An interesting city with lots of museums and restaurants is always a good \_\_\_\_\_\_ for me!
- 5 I like to pack a small \_\_\_\_\_ on Friday night and fly to a city for the weekend.
- 6 When I visit a city for the first time, I take a proper city tour with a \_\_\_\_\_\_, so I can learn all about its history.
- 7 I think that asking at the \_\_\_\_\_\_ is a good way to find out about what's on.

# Match the beginnings of the questions (1-6) with the endings (a-f). Then ask and answer with a partner.

- 1 What's your favourite kind of
- 2 What kind of holiday accommodation
- 3 Do you usually take a lot of
- 4 What do you do if you're camping
- 5 What do you think you need to know
- 6 When was the last time you
- a and it starts raining?
- b missed a flight? What happened?
- c to be a good tour guide?
- d holiday destination?
- e do you like staying in?
- f luggage with you when you travel?

When was the last time you missed a flight?

Last year our train was delayed by an hour and we missed our flight.

#### DID YOU KNOW?

British English speakers use the word **luggage** when they are travelling, but American English speakers use the word **baggage**.

# READING

- Do you know how to ride a horse? Would you like to try riding a camel? Why?/Why not?
- 2 Read the text about Jon's camel ride.
  - 1 Why did Jon want to ride a camel? Did he enjoy it?
  - 2 Why did he want to get off?

# A CAMEL AND ME

Last year when we were visiting Morocco, my friend Ali and I were trying to find something exciting to do, so we booked a three-day tour in the desert – travelling by camel.

We started our tour at 9 o'clock in the morning. Our tour guide's name was Mr Babou and he explained that travelling by camel is a very special experience.

'Camels are very friendly,' he said. 'They love their owners and are strong and brave.'

My camel's name was Aya. She was certainly big and strong but she didn't look very friendly. She was making strange, loud noises when I first saw her. Aya was saying hello to me.

Aya sat down and I got onto her but, as she was standing up, I fell off. This happened the first time – and also the second, third and fourth times! Finally, when Aya stood up for the fifth time, I didn't fall off and we started out across the desert.

After half an hour, I started to feel sick. I realised that riding a camel is a bit like being in a boat and I hate travelling by boat! After another half an hour, I was feeling so bad that I had to stop.

'Stop!' I shouted to Mr Babou. 'I can't do this!'

Aya stopped, and I fell off her again.

As I was lying in the sand, Aya turned her head and looked at me. She had a kind face. I could see that she was a nice animal but it was no good. At two o'clock that afternoon, we were driving to the coast in a rented car. Our camel tour was over.

#### 3 Read the text again and answer the questions.

- 1 What does Mr Babou think is special about camels?
- 2 What made Jon feel frightened?
- 3 Why did Aya make strange noises?
- 4 Why do camels sit down when you want to ride them?
- 5 Why did Jon start feeling sick when he was riding Aya?
- 6 What did Jon think about Aya at the end?

# GRAMMAR

#### **PAST CONTINUOUS**



# GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE Watch the video



water the video

Look at the examples and choose the correct option to complete the rules.

At two o'clock that afternoon, we **were driving** to the coast in a rented car.

Last year when we **were visiting** Morocco, my friend Ali and I **were trying** to find something exciting to do.

- 1 We use the past continuous to talk about an action in progress at a time in the past/finished events in the past.
- 2 We use the past continuous to talk about two things happening at the same time/at different times in the past.

#### Positive/Negative

'No, he

I/He/She/It was (wasn't) waiting for you.
You/We/They were (weren't) waiting for him.

Questions and short answers

Were they waiting for us? Yes, they were. / No, they weren't.

#### GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 206

Complete the sentences and questions with the correct past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

1	what		at te	n o'clock last	
2			it!	(not rain/snow)	
3	They on the bed in their hotel room and TV at midnight. (lie/watch)				
4			her suitcase		
5	1	in Paris las	t year. I	in Berlin. (no	
	live/stud	y)			
6	1	he	the tour qui	de yesterday?'	

.' (look for/not be)

şsle

hem? Aya?

tion

ast in

and I

ss at

(not



# Use the words to make sentences in the past continuous.

- 1 Where / you / go / yesterday afternoon?
- 2 The children / not play / on the beach this morning.
- 3 She / try / take / a photo?
- 4 Your friend / not stay / this hotel.
- 5 'He / look at / her?' 'No / not.'
- 6 Which / city / they / visiting?

# 044 Listen to the dialogue and note where was and were are stressed.

- A: Where were you last night? Were you at the party?
- B: Yes, we were.
- A: Was it good?
- B: Yes, it was great! Weren't you invited?
- A: Yes, we were. But we couldn't go because my mum was cooking us dinner.

# 5 P © 045 Read the rules and choose the correct options. Then listen and check your answers.

Was and were are usually unstressed in sentences. However they are stressed when used in negative contractions (weren't/wasn't) and at the end of sentences (Yes, they were).

- 1 A: Was it hot that day?
- stressed/unstressed
- B: No, it wasn't.
- stressed/unstressed
- 2 A: Was the exam really three hours long?
- stressed/unstressed stressed/unstressed
- B: Yes, it was.The actors in the play were
- really funny.
  - stressed/unstressed

#### Work in pairs and ask and answer.

- Where were you living five years ago?
- 2 What were you doing before you came to class?
- 3 What were you doing this time yesterday?

# LISTENING

- Benedict Allen is a British explorer. A few years ago he crossed the Gobi Desert alone. Discuss the following questions with a partner.
  - 1 Which countries is the Gobi Desert in?
  - 2 What sort of problems do you think Benedict Allen had on his journey? (Think about weather, food, water, transport, etc.)
- 046 Listen to part of a talk about Benedict's Allen's journey across the Gobi Desert. What was the weather like during his journey?
- 046 Listen again and choose the correct answers.
  - 1 Benedict Allen started his journey across the Gobi Desert in
    - August 1987.
- **b** August 1997.
- c August 1998.
- 2 It was a journey of
  - a 6,000 km.
- **b** 1,600 km.
- c 16,000 km.
- 3 Benedict didn't use ... to help him find his way.
  - a animals
- **b** cars and motorbikes
- c modern technology
- 4 He needed to cross the desert
  - a before the end of the winter.
  - **b** before the beginning of the winter.
  - c during the winter months.
- 5 One of Benedict Allen's camels ran away because it
  - a was lost.
- **b** didn't want to leave the desert.
- c was afraid.
- 6 His most difficult problem was
  - a not having enough food.
  - **b** the cold.
  - c not having enough water.

#### Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- What do you think are the good and bad things about being an explorer?
- 2 Which parts of the world would you like to travel to and explore? Why? Where wouldn't you like to go?

# GRAMMAR

#### **PAST SIMPLE AND PAST CONTINUOUS**



#### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE

Watch the video



Read the examples and then choose the correct options to complete the rules.

Aya **stopped** and I **fell** off her again. When they **were watching** the news, he **heard** the beginning of a story.

- 1 We use the past continuous with the past simple to talk about one action happening in the middle of/after another one.
- 2 We use the **past simple** to talk about finished actions in the past that can happen at the same time/after each other.

#### **⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE** / page 207

- 2 Read and underline the actions that happened in the middle of another action in these sentences.
  - 1 We were packing our bags when the dog ran out of the house.
  - When we were driving home, I realised I didn't have my passport.
- 3 Choose the correct form of the verb past simple or past continuous.
  - 1 We were visiting/visited the city centre when I was losing/lost my purse.
  - 2 The bus stopped/was stopping and we got off/ were getting off.
  - **3** This time yesterday, I had/was having dinner in a restaurant and read/reading a book.
  - 4 He met/was meeting his friend when he walked/ was walking on the beach.
- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb using the past simple or past continuous.

1	Where	you	(go) when we	
	met you?			
2	My friends	(sail) c	lown the river wher	
	the storm	(start).		
3	We	(drive) home	when a dog	
	(run) in front of the car.			
4	The sun	(shine) w	nen we	
	(come out)	of the museum.		

# PUSH YOURSELF BI

#### GRAMMAR: WHEN, WHILE AND AS

Read about Helen Skelton and look at the sentences with *while*, *as* and *when*. Choose the best options to complete the rules.



Helen Skelton is a young woman who travelled 3,000 kilometres down the Amazon River alone by boat and, two years later, crossed Antarctica. While she was working on children's television in the UK in 2010, the director of the programme asked her to travel down the Amazon to raise money for charity. Some people didn't believe that she could finish such a difficult trip, but she did! A TV crew filmed her as she was doing it and lots of people were waiting to welcome her when she finished her journey. Two years later, she travelled 800 kilometres across snow and ice in Antarctica on skis and by bike.

- 1 We can use when or while or as + past continuous, to mean 'during the time that' and to connect two things that are happening at the same time/different times.
- We can use when + past simple to introduce a finished action that happens in the middle of/after a longer action.

#### ⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 207

- 2 Match the beginnings of the sentences 1-6 with the endings a-f.
  - 1 When I was travelling across the desert,
  - 2 As she was running out of the house,
  - 3 While you were swimming in the sea,
  - 4 More people were arriving at the party
  - 5 My parents met
  - 6 I finished packing our suitcases
  - a while you were looking for your passport.
  - **b** when they were working in South America.
  - c as we were leaving.
  - d I saw a lot of snakes.
  - e I was lying on the beach.
  - f she tripped and fell.

# VOCABULARY

best

led

nd

en

the

#### **EASILY CONFUSED WORDS**

Read the text. What does Eliza do for her job?
What kind of travelling doesn't she enjoy?

My friend Eliza works for a hotel company in Rome and she has to travel a lot. Her company often sends her on trips to visit hotels in far-away places, so she sometimes spends hours and hours on planes and trains. On a long journey, she reads or listens to music on her tablet. She says that travelling isn't a problem for her if she has a good book to read!

However, she sometimes has to go on quite long cruises because her company also offers this kind of holiday. She doesn't enjoy this at all because boats make her very sick. Even the short sea crossing between France and England was too long for her when she came to visit me last year. She doesn't mind spending hours on a plane, though, and two 15-hour flights in a week is normal for her.

# Read the text again and match the beginnings and endings of the definitions.

- To travel
- 2 If you go on a journey
- 3 A cruise is when
- 4 A trip is when
- 5 A crossing is a journey
- 6 A flight is when
- a across a large area of water, like a sea.
- **b** you travel from one place to another.
- c you go somewhere by plane.
- d you go on holiday in a ship and stop to visit places.
- e is to go from one place to another.
- f you visit a place for a short time and come back again.

#### 3 Choose the correct option.

- 1 The journey/trip from Madrid to Barcelona takes about six hours by car.
- We went on a great camping trip/crossing in the mountains last weekend.
- 3 Did you travel/trip to Tijuana for work last week?
- 4 My aunt went on a cruise/flight down the coast of France and Italy last year and visited lots of beautiful places.
- 5 I got a cheap flight/crossing from Paris to London, but I didn't realise that the airport was so far from the city centre.
- 6 The weather was very stormy during the crossing/travel; many of the passengers were ill and it took longer than usual to reach the other side.

# READING PART 4 TRAINING

Read the text about Antoine de Saint-Exupéry and the exam tip.

#### **Antoine de Saint-Exupéry**

Antoine de Saint-Exupéry was born in France in 1900. He learned to 1 a plane at the age of 12.

When he grew up, he became one of the first pilots to deliver mail 2 plane. He went on 3 over the Sahara Desert and the Andes Mountains, bringing mail to people there.

Once he 4 lost while travelling over Africa and crashed his plane in the middle of the desert. He wasn't

killed but his story was in all the newspapers. When he 5\_\_\_\_\_ to Paris after his adventure, he was very famous. He later wrote books about his adventures, such as Night Flight and Wind, Sand and Stars, but people probably know his book called The Little Prince best.

Look at the first gap in the text and the possible answers below. Which verb do we use with a plane? We can say drive a car and ride a bike but the pilot of a plane flies it, so B is the correct answer.

# 2 Look at the other gaps. For each question, look at the three possible answers and decide which one fits the gap best.

- 1 A drive
- B
- Hy
- C ride

- 2 A in
- B on
- C by

- 3 A trips
- **B** holidays
- C visits

4 A went

stayed

- B gotB visited
- C took





## SPEAKING PART 2 TRAINING

#### **DIFFERENT TYPES OF HOLIDAY**









- 1 Look at the pictures of the different types of holiday and discuss the questions.
  - What can you see in the pictures?
  - Which words in the box would you use to describe each picture?

crowded fantastic lovely noisy popular quiet relaxing terrible tiring

2 © 047 Listen to four people talking about their holidays. Match the speakers with the types of holiday in the pictures from Exercise 1. Which picture isn't mentioned?

Pablo Arturo
Julia Teresa

- 3 © 047 Listen again. Who had a good time and who didn't enjoy their holiday?
- 4 Complete the sentences with the phrases in the box.

For me, a holiday is a time to relax
The weather was fantastic I didn't have a good time
I think that the best holidays are It was lovely

. It was terrible! I hate being out in the rain.

The place was so quiet – it was really nice.

I didn't really enjoy it. , but New York is too noisy and crowded for that.

We had a great time. – really warm and sunny.

when you are with your friends.



- Work in pairs. Look at the pictures again. Do you like these different things to do on holiday? Say why or why not.
- 6 Now ask and answer the questions.
  - 1 Do you think walking in the mountains is good for you?
  - 2 Do you think going to a fun park is exciting? Why?/Why not?
  - 3 Which of these things to do on holiday do you like best?
  - 4 Do you prefer to go on holiday with your friends or your family? Why?/Why not?
  - 5 What did you do on your last holiday? Did you have a good time? Why?/Why not?
- 7 @ 048 Now listen to some candidates doing Speaking Part 2. Look at the checklist and tick what the candidates do.

The candidates ask each other questions.
The candidates give longer answers.
The candidates give reasons using because.
The candidates use phrases like I think, and In my opinion.

#### WRITING Look at the time expressions in blue in Lily's email. Match the expressions with the phrases that mean the same thing. **EMAIL ABOUT SOMETHING THAT** Right now PENED ON HOLIDAY After that the time just before the night 049 Listen to Lily calling her friend Carla and Yesterday at this moment answer the questions. the day before today In the evening d This morning before lunch, today Where is she? What's she doing? this day Today Who is she on holiday with? Is she having a good time? Choose a time expression from Exercise 3 to complete the sentences. Use each expression once. Read Lily's email to Carla later in the week. We spent the day on the beach; we went What changed during the week? home to change and we went out to a club. the weather was It's raining today, but fantastic and we were out all day. Hi Carla, I'm sitting in the sunshine, enjoying the view Right now I'm sitting in a café in town to write I can see across the valley. we got up early and we went for a long walk, this email. It's cold and raining outside and I'm so this afternoon, we're going to have a rest. drinking coffee and eating cake. But today I'm Yesterday morning, we visited lots of interesting places finally beginning to enjoy the holiday! in the old city; we had a fantastic lunch in a Yesterday, we went for a long walk in the restaurant. mountains. We carried everything with us on our is the first day of our holidays. I'm so excited. backs. I had to carry a big backpack with all the food and I hated it! In the evening, when we You are going to write an email to a friend about your were cooking our dinner we saw lots of sheep. holiday. Use the ideas below to help you plan what They were coming down the mountain towards you are going to say. Write some notes. our campsite. They damaged the tents so badly that we decided to stay at a hotel. Paragraph 1: Where are you on holiday? This morning, when we were eating breakfast Who are you on holiday with? my friend Jo said that she wanted to stay at the Where are you when you are writing the email? hotel for the rest of the holidays, so we aren't What are you doing? going back to the campsite! After that, we How are you feeling right now? went shopping and I bought some souvenirs -Paragraph 2: I'm really enjoying my holiday now! Think about something that happened on your holiday. Love When did it happen? Lily Where were you and what were you doing when it happened? How did you feel about it? Write your email. When you have finished, exchange emails with a partner and check each other's work. MORE THAN A HOLIDAY UNIT 5

like

ve a

cing

## EXAM FOCUS

#### READING PART 4

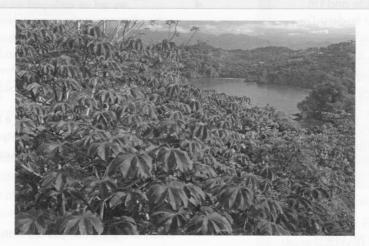
#### EXAM FACTS

- You read a text which has six gaps in it.
- There are three possible answers for each gap.
- · You choose the correct word for each gap.

#### **EXAM TIPS**

- Read the whole text first and think about the words that might go in the gaps.
- Look at the three possible answers and think about the differences between them.
- Check that the answer you choose is correct for the gap in meaning and grammatically.

For each question, choose the correct answer.



#### The hotel room that's actually an aeroplane

If you're going to Costa Rica, and think that normal hotel rooms are (1) \_\_\_\_\_, you might like to try staying in an aeroplane at the holiday resort of Costa Verde.

When the plane was too old to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ passengers anymore, it was broken into five (3) \_\_\_\_\_.

These were put on lorries and taken from San Jose airport to the Costa Rican rainforest. Workers put the plane back together and built two bedrooms, two bathrooms, a dining room and a kitchen inside.

They put the plane on a platform, fifteen metres above the forest floor and because the plane is so (4) \_\_\_\_\_\_ people who stay in it have beautiful (5) \_\_\_\_\_ over the Costa Rican rainforest.

The plane is a fantastic place to stay, but it (6) \_\_\_\_\_\$500 a night.

missing boring empty carry B catch keep slices areas pieces high wide large looks B views pictures spends costs pays

#### SPEAKING PART 2

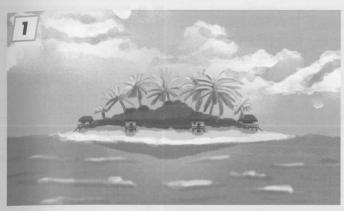
#### EXAM FACTS

o in

- The examiner will give you some pictures to look at and talk about with your partner.
- The examiner will ask you if you like the things in the pictures.
- Finally, the examiner will ask you one or two questions about a topic which is similar to the one shown in the pictures.

#### EXAM TIPS

- When you talk about the pictures, talk together with your partner.
- When the examiner asks you what you think about the pictures, give reasons for your answers, using because.
- Try to give longer answers, not just one or two words.











- Here are some pictures that show different places to go on holiday.

  Do you like these different places to go on holiday? Say why or why not. Talk together.
- Do you think a holiday on an island is expensive? Why?/Why not?
  Do you think a holiday in the mountains is fun? Why?/Why not?
  Do you think a holiday in a city is boring? Why?/Why not?
  Do you think a holiday in the countryside is interesting? Why?/Why not?
  Do you think a holiday in a desert is a good idea? Why?/Why not?
- 3 Which of these holidays do you like best?
- When you go on holiday, do you prefer camping or staying in a hotel? Why? Which country would you like to go to on holiday? Why?
- SPEAKING BANK / pages 241-242.

#### HOW WAS IT?

Gave it a go

Getting there

ocining mere

Aced it!

73

### **REAL WORLD**

## GOING ON A SIGHTSEEING TOUR IN ...

## BERLIN

Look at the photos (A-D) of Berlin.
What tourist activities do they show?
Read the text about sightseeing tours
in Berlin and match the photos with
the paragraphs.



Berlin is a busy place, full of colour and activity – and never boring! To help you discover this wonderful city, you can find information about some of the best sightseeing tours <u>here</u>.



#### **BUS TOURS**

First time in Berlin? Then take one of the hop on / hop off bus tours through the city. These double-decker buses will take you past the city's must-see sights, including the Brandenburg Gate, Alexanderplatz, the Reichstag Parliament building, Potsdamer Platz and much, much more. You can buy tickets for one day or more, so you can get on and off the tour buses as you like – giving you time to really explore Berlin. With the Berlin Welcome Card you can save 25% on city sightseeing tours by bus!



#### **BIKE TOURS**

You can use Berlin's well-marked cycle routes to cycle around the city and explore it on your own. However, you might prefer an organised bike tour with a guide. These tours are a great way to meet new friends and see another side to the city. Popular bike tour companies like Berlin on Bike offer a discount with the Berlin Welcome Card.



#### WALKING TOURS

Does the city really have 'ghost stations'? What is a 'Datsche' – and where do you find it? On a walking tour of Berlin, you can hear about the more unusual side of life here and discover hidden places that are off the main tourist track. The guides know a lot about their city and can tell you what life is really like in Berlin.



#### TRABI SAFARI

The Trabant 601 is the best known car from former East Germany and you now have the chance to drive one through this amazing city. Experience a trip back in time, either on your own or as part of a group of cars on an organised tour.





- Read the text again. Are these statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
  - You cannot get off the bus until the end of the bus tour.
  - 2 You need a new ticket for the bus tour each day.
  - 3 Bike tours are a good way to meet other tourists.
  - 4 Guides on walking tours can give you information about how people live in the city.
  - 5 On a Trabi tour, someone else drives the car for you.
- Find the phrases (1-6) in the text and match them with the correct definitions (a-f).
  - 1 hop on / hop off bus
  - 2 double-decker bus
  - 3 the city's must-see sights
  - 4 well-marked cycle routes
  - 5 a discount
  - 6 off the main tourist track
  - a a lower price
  - b you can sit upstairs or downstairs on this bus
  - c paths for bikes that are clear and easy to see
  - d away from the places that visitors usually see
  - e you can join and leave this bus as many times as you like
  - f the famous parts of the city that everyone should see
- 050 Listen to three conversations about sightseeing tours. What does each person want to do? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.
  - a get information about hiring a bike
  - b book tickets for a walking tour
  - c buy a Berlin Welcome Card
  - d get information about a bus tour
- **5** © 050 Complete the phrases with the correct words. Listen again and check.

can we hire do you sell how long how much some information

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE**

- 1 I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ about the City Circle sightseeing tour.
  2 \_\_\_\_\_ does the tour take?
  3 are the tickets?
- Berlin Welcome Cards here?

  some bikes here?

6 Match the sentences (1-6) with the correct definitions (a-f).

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR**

- 1 It's valid all day.
- 2 It takes in all the main sights.
- 3 There's free admission.
- 4 You get up to 30% discount.
- 5 There's also free public transport.
- 6 There's a returnable deposit.
- a You can go in without paying.
- b You can take the bus or train without paying.
- You can use it from the morning till the evening.
- d You have to pay an amount of money, but you will get it back if you return the bike safely.
- e It visits all the places tourists want to see.
- f You can get it for a lower price.
- Watch the video. What do you learn about these places? Make notes.
  - the Berlin Wall
- ghost stations
- the Brandenburg Gate
- Potsdamer Platz
- Checkpoint Charlie
- 8 Compare your notes. Watch the video again to check your ideas.



#### LIFE COMPETENCIES

#### **DECISION-MAKING AND MAKING NOTES**

Work in groups and imagine that you are visiting a city for three days. Plan your visit. Agree which places you want to visit and which tours you will go on and why. Tell your classmates about your plans.

## PROGRESS CHECK 2

#### UNITS 3-5

#### Match the photos A-F with the sentences, 1-6.













He's hurt his leg.
He's got a headache.
He's got toothache.
He's got a stomach ache.
He broke his arm.

He's got backache.

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

	ack nees		fingers stomach	heart toes
7	You	r	is inside	your hea
_	252	1 11	r.	

not the front of your body.

- You hand has five \_\_\_\_\_\_.
  Your \_\_\_\_\_\_ is between your head and your body.
  Your \_\_\_\_\_\_ are at the end of your feet.
  Your \_\_\_\_\_ are in the middle of your legs.
  The food you eat goes into your \_\_\_\_\_.
  Your \_\_\_\_\_ makes blood move around your body.
  Your \_\_\_\_\_ goes from your shoulders to your legs, and is
- 3 Complete each sentence using can, can't, could or couldn't and a word in the box.

p	lay ride sleep speak	swim
1	I'm so tired. I last ni	ght.
2	Jack loves travelling. He	four languages.
3	Kate hurt her arm and	tennis last week.
4	Stacey never comes to the po	ol with us because she
5		a bike when he was three
	, O	

#### 4 Complete each dialogue with the words in the box above it.

-11		n 1 1 1 1
ill	m	atter pharmacy should
7		What's the 1 ?
	B:	I feel 2 . I'm really tired and hot.
	A:	If you have a high temperature, you  go to the 4 and buy some medicine.
ge	et up	much shouldn't streamed
2	A:	What did you 1 to at the weekend?
	B:	Not <sup>2</sup> . 1 <sup>3</sup> a documentary about animals in the
		rainforest and played some video games.
	A:	You 4 spend so much time watching screens! It's not good for you!
cc	omed	y horror how about shall
3	A:	going to the cinema at the weekend?
	B:	I'm not sure. There's a <sup>2</sup> film on and I don't like watching scary things! I enjoy funny films.
	A:	OK. Well, there's a 3 on too.  4 we go to see that instead?
cr	rowde	ed relaxing should trip
4	A:	How was your 1 to France?
		It was OK, but there were a lot of people on the beach. It was really 2
	A:	Oh, I'm sorry to hear that. You  go somewhere quieter next time.
	В:	Yes, I think I will. That will be much more
a	che	problem rest Why don't you
5	A:	My legs really 7 It hurts when I walk.
	B:	0
	A:	I don't need to. I know what the  is. I did too much exercise yesterday.

B: Well, you'll just have to 4

today.

Complete the sentences with the words in the box. 8 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or past you won't need all of the words. continuous to complete the sentences. I was watching a film when you (call). documentaries comedy crime drama That's why I (not answer). news quiz shows science fiction While I \_\_\_ (play) tennis at the weekend (hurt) my foot. this morning? The president Did you see the \_\_\_ (go) to a concert last night. It is going to visit our town! amazing! (not hear) what you said because Sorry, I the questions. (listen) to the radio. There's a great new programme on TV. What (you do) when I (phone) It's about people who can travel forwards in time. you last night? Did you watch that last night? The police d hot (be) a long journey, so I (read) officer in it is so clever! a book to make the time go quicker. I don't watch much drama on TV. I prefer buy programmes which make me laugh. 9 Read these two emails and write a word in each gap. I love , especially the ones about animals. You have been given the first letter of each missing word. 6 Choose the correct option to complete the sentences. When people go out walking they often carry a backpack/luggage. The place where you put up a tent is a campsite/ I'm so sorry I w not feeling well destination. enough to go to the cinema with you yesterday. There are regular ferry crossings/travels from England I hope you <sup>2</sup>f someone else to go with to Ireland. rou! Before you go on holiday, you have to pack your you instead. <sup>3</sup>D you enjoy the film? accommodation/suitcase. People often ask how long a journey/travel will take. 6 If your plane is late, we say there is a miss/delay. If you have a holiday on a boat, it's called a flight/ n on That's okay. I 4c Maya. She didn't A tourist information centre/tour is a place where you can find out about the city that you are visiting. <sup>5</sup>h anything to do yesterday evening, to the cinema together. so we <sup>6</sup>w 7 Students often make mistakes with verbs in the past The film was great. What a pity you <sup>7</sup>c simple. Correct the mistakes in the sentences. not come. Last night I go to a disco on the beach. We enjoied it when the country's team won. Did you went anywhere for your summer vacation? eople We play volleyball at the lake last summer. The weather were warm and cloudy. The T-shirt only costed me £5. nore hen I oday. PROGRESS CHECK 2: UNITS 3-5

15!

# TIME FOR FOOD

#### READING

- 1 Look at the photos (A-C). What is happening in them?

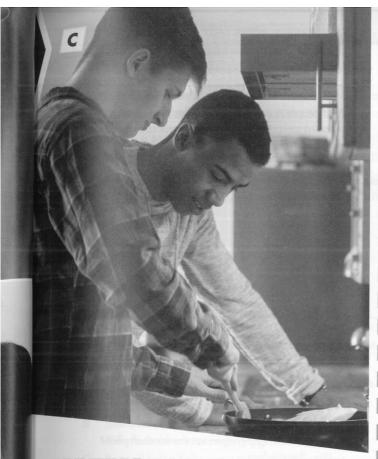
  Do you do these activities (A-C)? Why?/Why not?
- 2 Read the text below. Which activity is popular with most young people?

## COOKING? No, thanks!

Most people really enjoy food but it seems not many of us want to cook it. In the UK, people spend more time watching cookery programmes and food vlogs or posting food photos on social media than they do cooking their own food. Millions of British people watch cookery programmes with celebrity chefs every week, but over 20% of people in Britain say that they never make a meal from start to finish. They often say that they don't have any time to cook. In contrast, nearly 70% of young people say that they take photos of their food to post online.

We all know friends or family members who love to share photos of everything they eat for breakfast, lunch and dinner – from cereal with some yoghurt and a mango to a mushroom omelette or a chicken or beef curry with broccoli and hot chillies. For some people, every meal is a photo opportunity and their friends have to wait patiently until they take the perfect food photo. It can be really annoying, and it's not just other diners who get fed up with this. Some top chefs in Paris and New York don't want customers to take any photos in their restaurants. They say they want people to come to their restaurants and enjoy the food without taking photos. But is it too late to change this habit? And is there any way to get more people into the kitchen and cooking?

- 3 Read the text again. Are these statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
  - Most British people enjoy cooking.
  - 2 Celebrity chefs are very popular in the UK. T/F
  - 3 A fifth of people don't make complete meals.
    T/F
  - 4 Most young people don't want to share their food photos. T/F
  - 5 All chefs are happy for customers to take photos of their food. T/F
- 4 Look at the two questions at the end of the text. Discuss them with your partner.



#### VOCABULARY

#### **FOOD AND MEALS**

1	Complete the definitions with the words in blue	e
	in the texts.	

1	and	are kinds of meat that
	we get from cows and a	type of bird.

- 2 \_\_\_\_ is a green vegetable that we cook and eat.
- a hot taste we use them to make
- 4 We make \_\_\_\_\_ from milk. It's white but you can buy different types with fruit added.
- 5 Lots of people eat \_\_\_\_\_ with milk for breakfast.
- 6 A \_\_\_\_\_ has a round top. It's often brown or white.
- 7 A \_\_\_\_\_ is a large, sweet fruit which grows in hot countries.
- 8 An \_\_\_\_\_ is a food which we can make from eggs.

#### 2 Work in pairs and ask and answer.

- 1 Do you or your friends take photos of food? Why?/Why not?
- 2 What are the most popular food programmes in your country? Do you watch them?

#### PUSH YOURSELF BI

#### **VOCABULARY: PREPARING FOOD**







051 Listen to three people describe how they make their favourite snack. Which photo (A-C) is each speaker talking about?

Speaker 1 Speaker 2 Speaker 3

2 051 Listen again and complete each description with the cooking verbs in the box.

chop fry peel

First I 1 the skin off the potatoes and then I use a sharp knife to 2 them into small rectangular pieces. After that I put some oil in a frying pan. When the oil is very hot, I put the potatoes in the pan and 3 them until they are brown. I eat them with lots of salt. I love them!

burn grill

The best way to cook the meat is to

it. I usually cook the steak for about 3–5 minutes on each side. You can cook it for longer if you want to but be careful not to it! When it's ready, I put the steak between two pieces of bread with some salad and then it's ready to eat. It's my favourite sandwich.

add steam stir

First, 16 \_\_\_\_\_\_ the rice for 15 minutes above a saucepan of boiling water until it's soft. Then I put some coconut milk in another saucepan and 7 \_\_\_\_\_\_ sugar or honey to make it sweet. I put the rice and the sweet coconut milk together and cook them gently for three minutes. I make sure that I 8 \_\_\_\_\_ the rice and coconut milk every few seconds. When the rice is ready, I eat it with fresh mango. Delicious!

#### GRAMMAR



#### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE

Watch the video



#### COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

1 Look at the examples and complete the rules.

... from cereal with some yoghurt and a mango ... Some top chefs in Paris and New York ...

There are two kinds of noun in English - countable (C) and uncountable (U).

- Countable (C) nouns are things we can count. They can be singular or plural. 1 egg / two eggs
- 2 Uncountable nouns (U) are things we cannot count. They only have a singular form. e.g. milk, rice.

#### → GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 208

2 Decide if these types of food are countable or uncountable. Write U or C.

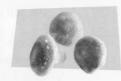




yoghurt

bread





apple

mushroom

#### 3 P 🔕 052 Read the rules and then listen and repeat the examples.

The -s ending of plural nouns is pronounced in different ways.

- -s is pronounced /IZ/ when a noun ends with the consonant sound: s, z, ch, dg, sh, x
- -s is pronounced /z/ when a noun ends in a voiced consonant sound: b, d, g, l, m, n, r, v, w, th, ng
- -s is pronounced /s/ when a verb ends in a vowel sound or an unvoiced consonant sound: a, e, i, o, u and c, k, f, p, t

He eats two eggs and two slices of bread for breakfast every morning.

/s/	/z/	/IZ/	
eats	eggs	slices	

#### P 052 Listen again and put the words in the correct column.

apples bananas cakes cups fridges sandwiches mangos pieces snacks

#### A/AN, SOME AND ANY

5 Look at some more examples and choose the best option to complete the rules.

20% of people in Britain say that they never make a meal... They often say they don't have any time to cook. Some top chefs ... don't want customers to take any photos. And is there **any** way to get people back in the kitchen ...?

- We use a or an with singular countable/uncountable nouns.
- We use some/any with uncountable and countable plural nouns in positive sentences.
- We use some/any with uncountable and countable plural nouns in negative sentences.
- 4 We use some/any with uncountable and countable plural nouns to ask questions.

Note: We also use some in questions to ask for and offer things, e.g. Do you want some coffee?

#### → GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 208

- 6 Choose the best answer.
  - I need to go to the shops because we haven't got some/any bread.
  - 2 Is/Are there any players on the football pitch? Yes, there is/are.
  - I can give you some/a help this afternoon.
  - Is/Are there any homework for today? No, there aren't/ isn't, but there is/are some exercises for tomorrow.
  - I'm thirsty. Can I have any/some tea?
- 7 Complete the text about what the dancer Jake Winston eats in a day with some, any or a/an.

When I first get up in the morning, I drink water but I don't eat 2 food because I go running for an hour and a half. When I come home, I have 3 cereal. Then I go cup of tea and 4\_\_ to the gym and do 5\_\_\_ exercise. At lunchtime and for dinner I usually eat pasta with chicken and lots of vegetables. For dessert, I have fruit and sometimes 7\_ bar of chocolate. I eat as much as I want at meal times, but I don't have 8 snacks. 8 Look at the photo on page 193 and use the words in the box to talk about what you can and can't see in the photo.

#### READING PART 1 TRAINING

Does your fridge look like the one in the photo? Do you leave notes for your family/housemates? What do you leave notes about?

Hi Katie

otos

Jns

ins

Jns

ren't/

I didn't have any milk for breakfast this morning, so I took some of yours. Sorry! I didn't use all of it. There is still a little in the carton.

I'll get you some more on the way home from work this evening.

- 2 Read the note that Katie found on the fridge from her housemate Bea. Which statement is correct? Use the questions in italics to help you decide.
  - A Katie took some milk from the fridge.

    Who didn't have any milk for breakfast this morning?
  - **B** Bea used all of Katie's milk.

    What's in the carton in the fridge now?
  - Bea will bring Katie some more milk later today.
    What is Bea going to do on the way home from work?
- 3 Now read some other notes and messages carefully and underline the important words. Choose the correct answer.

#### SOFA FOR SALE

Price £500 (cost £600 new) – never used I can accept a lower price if you collect it!

Phone Kim: 078573451



- A Kim has only used the sofa a few times.
- B The price is the same as a new sofa.
- C It might be possible to pay less than £500 for this sofa.

A is wrong because the note says 'never used'.

B is wrong because Kim paid £600 for the sofa but only wants £500 for it now.

C is correct because she will accept a price lower than £500 if you collect it.



Ben

Your friend Sara called. She can't play squash on Friday but she could play on Saturday or Sunday. Sunday's better for her. Could you let her know when you're free? Mum

A Sara can play squash with Ben on Friday if he can't play on Sunday.

**B** Sara would prefer to play squash with Ben on Sunday, rather than on Saturday.

C Sara wants to play squash with Ben on both Saturday and Sunday if he's free.

I need help with my garden for two hours, twice a week. Own transport needed. Monday and Thursday are perfect but we can discuss.

#### Jane (0744871921)

- A The gardener can decide how many hours they want to work for Jane.
- **B** The gardener can call Jane to talk about transport for getting to her garden.
- C The gardener can discuss which days of the week are possible for them to work.

UNIT 6

TIME FOR FOOD

#### GRAMMAR

#### **EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY**



#### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE Watch the video





- What sort of things do you know how to cook? Do you ever cook for other people?
- 2 © 053 Rob is staying with his friend Vanessa in Buenos Aires. He is cooking dinner for her and her friends. Listen and choose the correct answers.
  - 1 Rob is making
    - a vegetable chilli.
- **b** vegetable soup.
- 2 He thinks Vanessa and her friends don't like
  - a food with a lot of salt in it.
- **b** spicy food.
- 3 He needs
  - a two packets of rice.
- b half a packet of rice.
- 4 To make the dessert, Rob needs
  - a two lemons.
- **b** eight lemons.
- 5 He also asks Vanessa to buy
  - a cream.
- b sugar.

#### 3 Look at the examples and complete the rules.

How many lemons are there? Not many.
How much rice do we have in the cupboard? Not much.
Can you get me a few oranges? I need a little cream.
I need a lot of lemons.

I don't like food that has **a lot of** salt in it.

1	We use <b>How</b>	and <b>not</b>	to ask questions and
	make negative staten	nents about quantity	with <b>countable</b> nouns.
2	We use <b>How</b>	and not	to ask
	questions and make uncountable nou	negative statements ns.	s about quantity with
3	We use a	to talk about smal	l quantities with
	countable nouns.		
4	We use a	to talk about smal	I quantities with

uncountable nouns.
We use a to talk about large quantities with countable and uncountable nouns.

#### GRAMMAR REFERENCE | page 209

#### 4 Choose the best answer.

- This tea is too sweet! You only need to put a little/ a few sugar in it.
- 2 Only a few/a lot of people in my class know how to cook.
- 3 How much/many yoghurt is in the fridge? Not much/many.
- 4 How much/How many sandwiches would you like?
- 5 There were a few/a little students who had problems, so the teacher gave them a few/a little help with their homework.
- 6 I don't know how much/many salt to put in the soup.

#### 5 Complete the dialogues with the words in the boxes.

ar	n (x2) any	many (x2)	much (x2)	some
A:	How 1 And do you	sandwiche	es do you war fruit and cl	nt for lunchs
B:	Just two sand fruit and cho	dwiches pleas		
A:	How 4	chocolate	do you want	2
B:	Not 5	- just two	or three squar	es.
A:	And how 6	piece	es of fruit?	
	Can I have ?			orange



few (x2)	a little	a lot of	many	some
Would y	ou like 9_	cc	ake?	
Just 10	.	'm trying to	o be more	e healthy, so
13	biscuit	s with it, o	r 14	sweets,
But I kno	w that sug	gar isn't go	ood for yo	DU.
	Would y Just 10 not eatin Do you Yes I do.	Would you like 9_ Just 10 I not eating so 11 Do you usually ea Yes I do. When I h 13 biscuit	Would you like 9 co Just 10 I'm trying to not eating so 11 swe Do you usually eat 12 Yes I do. When I have a drin 13 biscuits with it, o	few (x2) a little a lot of many  Would you like 9 cake?  Just 10 l'm trying to be more not eating so 11 sweet things  Do you usually eat 12 sweet  Yes I do. When I have a drink, I alway  13 biscuits with it, or 14  But I know that sugar isn't good for you

- 6 Complete the sentences so they are true for you. Tell your partner about what you eat. In what ways are you the same? In what ways are you different?
  - I eat a lot of ...
  - I don't eat very much ... or very many ...
  - I know that I eat too much ...

#### LISTENING PART 3 TRAINING

- When was the last time you went to a friend's house for a meal or you invited friends to your house? What did you eat? What did you drink?
- 054 For each question, choose the correct answer. You will hear Katie telling her friend Ben about a dinner party she went to. Read the tip and then listen to the first part of the recording.

First, read question 1 and the options carefully and underline the important words. A isn't correct because Ben says he once met Maria at Katie's mum's house. B isn't correct because Katie says she doesn't know if Maria is a good cook, so she wasn't the cook. C is correct because Katie says Maria's husband Dan did the cooking.

- 1 The person who cooked the meal was
  - A Maria's mum.
  - B Maria.

ns,

es.

'm nt.

- (C) Maria's husband Dan.
- 3 © 055 Now listen to the whole conversation and choose the correct answers for 2-4.
  - 2 What does Katie say about the main course?
  - A It was too spicy for her.
    - B She left part of it.
    - C The mango was the best bit.
  - 3 What did Katie eat for dessert?
    - A strawberries and cake
    - B strawberries with yoghurt
    - C orange cake with yoghurt
  - 4 Where did Ben get a recipe for a chocolate cake?
    - A from a TV programme
    - **B** from a website



UNIT

TIME FOR FOOD

#### SPEAKING

#### **MAKING SUGGESTIONS**

- 1 Look at the three restaurants and discuss the questions with a partner.
  - 1 What type of food can you eat in each restaurant?
  - Which restaurant would/wouldn't you like to go to for lunch? Why?/Why not?







- 2 Henry and Izzy are arranging to meet for lunch. Number the texts in order.
  - Hi Henry, I'd love to. I have some things to do this morning, but I'm free at 12.30.

    Where shall we meet?
  - OK. Great. I'll see you in front of the art museum at 12.30.
  - Hi Izzy, **Would you like to** meet for lunch today? I'm free after 12.00. What about you?
    - **Shall we meet** in front of the art museum? There are lots of restaurants near there.

- 3 © 056 Listen to Izzy and Henry talking about where to eat. Answer the questions.
  - What kind of food doesn't Henry like?
  - 2 Where do they decide to eat?
- 4 056 Who says these phrases, Izzy (I) or Henry (H)? Listen again to check your answers.

7		Sorry I'm late!
2		Are you hungry?
3	- 4	Yes, I am. I didn't have any breakfast!
4	- 5	'm afraid I don't eat cheese.
5	- 4	know you like curry.
6		Do you feel like eating fish?

5 Complete the expressions Izzy and Henry use to make and respond to suggestions. Use the words in the box.

7	fir	nd somewhere to eat straightaway then
2	Where	we go?
3	I don't	
4		it's very good.
5		I don't eat cheese.
6	How	going for an Indian meal?
7		like eating fish?
8		bout having some sushi?
9		at
10		outside?

- 6 Answer the questions.
  - 1 Which expressions in Exercise 5 are for making suggestions/asking questions?
  - 2 Which expressions are for responding to suggestions?
- Work in pairs. You are going to decide where to have lunch. Turn to page 193 and follow the instructions. Try to use the phrases in Exercise 5.
- 8 When you have finished, change roles and have the conversation again.

#### **DID YOU KNOW?**

If you go to a restaurant in the UK, the first course on the menu is called the **starter** but in the US, it is called the **appetiser**.

In the UK, the second course – the most important one – is called the **main course** but in the US people often use a French word and call it the **entrée**.

re

1)?

esno?

ive

ıs.

WRITING

#### A RECIPE

- 1 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.
  - 1 How often do you cook?
  - 2 Do you use recipe books or recipe websites?
  - 3 What's your favourite recipe?
    What ingredients do you need to make it?
- 2 © 057 Listen to Sunita explaining how to make a meal. What is she making?
- 3 © 057 Complete the instructions with the verbs in the box. Then listen again and check.

add (x3) chop (x2) cook fry mix peel put serve wash

### Instructions

- 1 First \_\_\_\_\_ the garlic and ginger and them into small pieces.
- Then the onions and other vegetables.
- the garlic, ginger and chopped onion lightly in some oil. When they are soft, the curry powder.
- 4 After that the other chopped vegetables and everything together.
- for 15–20 minutes until the vegetables are soft.
- 6 While the curry is cooking, the rice and it into a saucepan.
- water and a pinch of salt. Cook for 20 minutes.
- 8 Finally, the curry with the rice.



4 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box.

chop fry mix peel serve

- the bananas and cut them into small pieces.
- 2 Put the butter into the pan, add the garlic and it for one minute.
- 3 Put the cakes onto a plate and \_\_\_\_\_ them with yoghurt or cream.
- 4 the butter with the sugar.
- 5 the carrots into small pieces and put them into a saucepan.
- 5 Write a recipe for your partner.
  - Think of a dish that you like and know how to make.
    Make a list of the ingredients you need to make it.
  - Write the list of instructions for how to make this dish. Use the verbs from Exercise 3. Write at least one sentence with when, until and while.
  - 3 Exchange recipes with your partner. Do you understand how to make your partner's dish?

## EXAM FOCUS

#### READING PART

For each question, choose the correct answer.



#### EXAM FACTS

- · You read six short notices or messages.
- For each notice or message, you read a question or statement and choose the answer A, B or C.
- The notices and messages can be texts, emails, signs, notices on a noticeboard, or a website.



#### Sami's café

Ask inside for details

If you'd like to work at the café

- speak to a member of staff.
- come back next week.
- give your details to the chef.

Luisa - there's a new restaurant in South Road, I think it's called Poole's. I'm going tomorrow with Michael if you want to join us.

Why did Annie send the message?

- A to ask Luisa where the new restaurant is
- to invite Luisa to go to the restaurant with her
- to ask Luisa's advice about which restaurant to go to

#### Bookshop

Half-price sale on textbooks starts next week.

Extra discount for students.

- You can't buy textbooks until next week.
- Only students get discounts on books here.
- Prices of some books will be lower next week.

#### **EXAM TIPS**

- · Read each notice or message carefully and underline the important words.
- Read the answers A, B and C carefully and find the one which says the same as the notice or message.
- · Remember that you might see a word from the notice or message in A, B or C, but this doesn't always mean it is the correct answer.



All those entering the factory must cover their hair. There are hats near the factory entrance for visitors to use. Staff must use their own.

- The hats are to make it easier to find members of staff.
- People who come to visit the factory can borrow a hat.
- The hats for visitors are different from the staff hats.



#### Jon.

I know we planned to meet at 7 pm, but I'm working late. Let's forget about the film and just get something to eat. Roberto

Roberto wants to

- change a plan that he made with Jon.
- explain why he won't be able to meet Jon today.
- say sorry about something he forgot to do for Jon.

Let staff know if we can do anything to improve your stay. Hotel manager

You should talk to the staff if

- you want to stay longer.
- you like the changes to the hotel.
- you have any problems.

#### LISTENING PART 3

058 For each question, choose the correct answer.

You will hear Lewis talking to his friend Laura about a cooking course.

- Why didn't Laura go to the cooking class yesterday?
  - A Her bus didn't come.
  - B She left college late.
  - c She forgot.
- 2 What does Laura say about her cooking?
  - She wants to be as good at cooking as a restaurant chef.
  - B There are some things she doesn't enjoy cooking.
  - C There isn't enough variety in what she cooks.
- 3 In yesterday's class Lewis made
  - A curry.
  - B a dessert.
  - C soup.

taff.

hat.

- 4 Lewis thinks that the teacher should
  - A be kinder to the students.
  - B give the students clearer instructions.
  - c show the students what they need to do.
- 5 What time will Lewis pick Laura up for next week's class?
  - A at 6.30 pm
  - B at 6.45 pm
  - **c** at 7 pm

#### EXAM FACTS

- · You listen to two people talking.
- You answer five questions about what you hear.
   The information for two or three questions will come from one of the speakers, and the rest from the other speaker.
- The answers will be option A, B or C.

#### **EXAM TIPS**

- Read the questions or statements carefully and underline the important words.
- Look at the names in each question so you know which person will answer each question.
- Remember that the speakers may not use exactly the same words as the questions or statements you read.
- Remember that some questions or statements will ask about a speaker's opinion.



#### **REAL WORLD**

## BUYING A COFFEE AND A SNACK IN

## VIENNA

- Look at the photos (A-D) of cafés in Vienna.
  What do you think is special about the cafés in
  Vienna? Do people often go to cafés in your country?
- 2 Read the text about coffee houses in Vienna. Are these statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
  - 1 The tradition of coffee houses is very old.
  - You can spend a long time drinking coffee and reading the newspaper in a coffee house.
  - 3 You have to pay if you want a glass of water.
  - 4 The waiters want you to leave quite quickly.

- 3 Read the reviews of some coffee houses in Vienna. Which café ...
  - 1 serves the customers quickly?
  - 2 looks nice from the outside?
  - 3 is expensive?
  - 4 serves large pieces of cake to the customers?



## YOU MUST VISIT ...

a coffee house in Vienna

Vienna is full of traditional coffee houses (or cafés) where you can enjoy a good cup of coffee, as well as delicious cakes, pastries and small snacks. Visiting one or two of these famous coffee houses is a must for every visitor to Vienna.

Coffee houses first appeared in Vienna in the 17th century and they have remained popular because of their relaxed atmosphere. Friends can stay and chat for as long as they want, and it is completely normal for a customer to stay there alone for hours and read the newspaper. The waiter will always serve a glass of cold tap water with your coffee and, if you stay for a long time, they will bring you more water from time to time. The idea is that you are a guest who should feel welcome and you shouldn't feel that you have to leave quickly.

#### So, which Viennese coffee house should you visit?

#### Café Vienna ●●●●○

Customer review

We never felt rushed here. The quality of the coffee was excellent and the portions of chocolate cake with whipped cream were generous. There's table service. The waitress was busy, but friendly and still smiling. Better than a big chain.

#### Café 100 ●●●●○

**Customer review** 

Excellent coffee and fast service! They also have all sorts of snacks including gluten free, if you're hungry. Very, very friendly staff. Good location in the Old City. Not cheap, but then if you want great food you don't mind paying a bit extra! Well worth a visit.

#### 

**Customer review** 

Every tourist comes here to take photos and eat. The building is lovely, outside and inside, and there's a nice atmosphere, but the food and cakes here are nothing special. The level of service is not up to standard.



- Find the phrases in the reviews and choose the correct definitions.
  - we never felt rushed
    - We didn't feel that we had to eat quickly.
    - b The waiters asked us to leave quickly.
  - 2 a generous portion
    - a a big piece
    - b a small piece
  - 3 table service
    - a There aren't enough tables.
    - b The waiter comes to the table to serve you.
  - 4 a big chain
    - a café with a well-known name, that belongs to a big group
    - **b** a very big café
  - 5 well worth a visit
    - a you should go here
    - b it's nice, but expensive
  - 6 not up to standard
    - a not as good as I hoped
    - b better than I hoped
- 6 059 Listen to three conversations. Where does each one take place? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.
  - a a sandwich bar
- c a traditional café
- **b** a pizza restaurant
- d a fast food restaurant
- 6 059 Complete the phrases from the recording with the correct words. Listen again and check.

allergic to	do you do	does	it ho	ive
what muffins	what's a	with	two	forks

#### PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE

- 1 Kardinalschnitte?
- 2 nuts in it?
- 3 I'm \_\_\_\_ nuts.
- 4 Can we have one Kardinalschnitte, \_\_\_\_\_please?
- 5 decaf coffee?
- 6 do you have?

Sometimes people use difficult words and phrases when you ask about or order food. Choose the correct definitions.

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR**

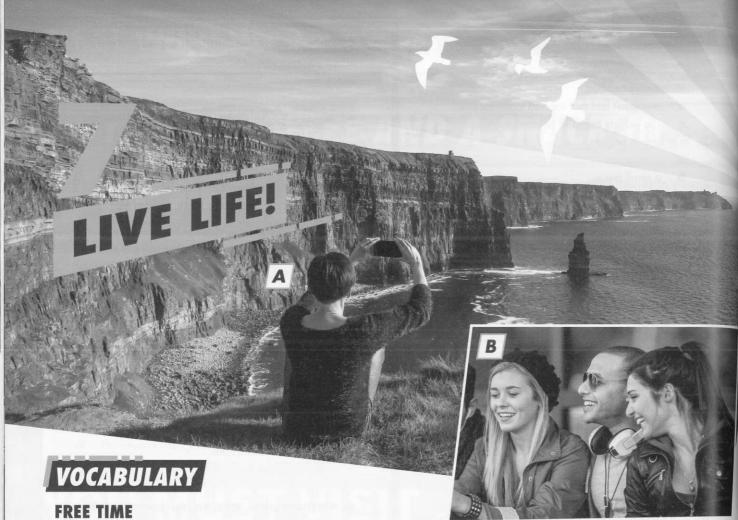
- 1 We do have gluten-free options.
  - a All our cakes have gluten in.
  - **b** We have some cakes with no gluten.
- 2 Eat in or take away?
  - a Do you want just a drink, or food too?
  - **b** Do you want to eat here, or take the food outside?
- 3 Any fries with that?
  - Would you like chips?
  - **b** We don't have any chips.
- 4 We're out of chicken sandwiches.
  - a We don't have any more chicken sandwiches.
  - b We don't serve chicken sandwiches.
- 5 Have you seen our combos?
  - There's a special offer if you buy some things together.
  - b Can you help me look for them?
- 6 Coming up.
  - a Please come here.
  - b I will get this for you now.
- Watch the video. What do you learn about these things? Make notes.
  - the city
- Wiener Schnitzel
- coffee shops and cafés
- three famous cafés
- types of desserts
- Compare your notes. Watch the video again to check your ideas.



### LIFE COMPETENCIES

#### **EVALUATING OPTIONS AND COMMUNICATION**

10 Work in pairs and choose a city that you would like to visit. Find out about a traditional meal or snack in the city. Then look at some reviews and find information about the best place to try it. Tell your classmates.



- INCL IIIIL
- What do you like doing most in your free time? Do you have a hobby? Do you like doing the same things as your friends?
- 2 Read about some of the world's most popular hobbies.

  Match the words in orange with the photos (A-H).
- Almost everyone listens to music! Some people also like going to gigs to hear their favourite bands or singers play live. Other people like singing themselves or even doing Massaoke!
- All over the world people enjoy doing exercise.
  Some people play team sports and others enjoy running, cycling or going to the gym.
- Lots of people enjoy cooking, and **baking** is an especially popular hobby at the moment. People love making cakes and posting photos and videos of their creations online.
- Some people work and study hard, so when they have free time, they enjoy doing nothing! They like just hanging out with their friends and talking.
- Everywhere you go people are taking photos with their phones and **photography** is now really popular with all ages.
- Playing board games is a great way to relax with friends. There are lots of different kinds of games to choose from nowadays, but traditional ones like chess are still popular.



- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in orange in Exercise 2.
  - 1 Wow, those photos that you posted of your holiday are amazing! You're really good at \_\_\_\_\_!
  - 2 Did you know that our favourite band is playing on Saturday? We should try to get tickets to the \_\_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 I'm really tired. I feel like just today.
  - 4 Would you like to help me make a cake for Fran? You're really good at \_\_\_\_\_!
  - **5** We could invite Tim and Liz over and just relax. Or we could play some \_\_\_\_\_\_.
  - 6 I don't feel very fit. I think I need to do some \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 7 Shall we go to the \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow morning, or would you prefer to go for a bike ride?
  - 8 Dan loves singing. He usually \_\_\_\_\_ at the weekend.
- 4 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.
  - Which of these hobbies do you do? Tell your partner about the last time you did them.
  - 2 Which hobbies would/wouldn't you like to try? Why?



- talking about?
- 2 060 Listen again and complete the information.

rds in

rday?

really

ould

d you

out the

#### Interview 1 Name: Declan Age: Where from? Hobby: Interview 2 Name: Kimberley Age: Where from? Hobby:

- 3 060 Which person does/did these things? Write D for Declan or K for Kimberley. Listen again and check.
  - started the hobby at secondary school
  - 2 uses expensive equipment to do the hobby
  - feels happy and full of energy while they are doing the hobby
  - says that you can spend your whole life learning to do their hobby
  - forgets his/her problems when he/she is doing the hobby
  - does their hobby at weekends

- Would you like to try Massaoke? Is it popular in your country?
- 5 Reorder the words below to make questions from the interviews.
  - when / start / taking photos / did / you?
  - special / equipment / do / use / lots of / you?
  - good / you / at / are / photography / how
  - like / why / you / it / do?
  - how / make / does / feel / you / singing Massaoke?
  - often / do / do / you / how / it?
- 6 Make notes about your favourite hobby then interview your partner about theirs. Use the questions in Exercise 5.

#### GRAMMAR



#### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE

Watch the video



#### PRESENT PERFECT: HAVE YOU EVER ... ?

Read the examples and complete the rules.

Have you ever been to a Massaoke club? No, I haven't tried Massaoke. Have you ever had lessons? No I haven't. I see things I have never noticed before.

7	We use the present	perfect tense with	never and	ever to talk
---	--------------------	--------------------	-----------	--------------

general experience

unfinished time up to now.

Ever means 'in our life up to now'.

We use **never** to talk about things we have not done in our life.

- 2 We form the present perfect with the verb \_\_\_\_\_ + the past participle of the main verb.
- 3 To form the past participle of regular verbs we add \_\_\_\_\_\_to the end of the verb.

Positive and negative

I/You/We/They 've/have / haven't/have never learned to draw.

He/She/It 's/has / hasn't/has never played board games.

Questions and short answers

Have I/you/we/they ever baked a cake?

Yes, I/you/we/they have. / No, I/you/we/they haven't.

Has he/she/it ever lived in a big city?

Yes, he/she/it has. / No, he/she/it hasn't.

#### ⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 210

been eaten got spoken

2 Match the verbs with the past participles in the box.

SU	ung	swum	taken	won		
1	take		4	eat	7	swim
2	win		5	sing	8	get
3	be		6	speak		

3 Complete the sentences with the present perfect form of the verb and the words in brackets.

1	I have never visited a	n English-speaking country.
	(never, visited)	
2	you	the sunrise? (ever,
	watch)	
3	My parents	to a gig. (nev
	go)	
4	She	studying English.
	(always, enjoy)	
5	he	in the river?
	(ever, swim)	
6	We	in this town.
	(always, live)	

4 P © 061 Listen to the three questions. What TWO different sounds can you hear that link the subjects you and they/I with ever?

Have you∩ever eaten sushi? Have they∩ever swum in a lake?

Have I ever asked you to help me before? No, you haven't.

Yes, I have. Yes, they have.

it. (buy)

5 P 🚳 061 Listen again and repeat.

#### PRESENT PERFECT WITH JUST

6 Look at two more sentences and choose the correct option to complete the rules.

I've just been on a weekend course ... ... as a new club has just opened ...

- 1 We use the present perfect with **just** to talk about something that happened a long time ago/a short time ago.
- 2 We put just before/after have or has and before/after the main verb.

#### GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 211

7 Complete the sentences. Use the verb in brackets and just.

- 1 Would you like a biscuit?

  No thank you. I'm not hungry. I' ve just finished lunch (finish)
- 2 Where's the teacher?
  She's in the hall. I her.
  (see)
- 3 Your living room looks great!
  Thanks. My parents \_\_\_\_\_\_ it.
  (paint)
- 4 Is that a new cooker?
  Yes it is. We

**8** Work in pairs. Tell each other about something new using *just*.

- a thing you bought
- a person you met
- a film/TV programme you saw



#### READING PART 3 TRAINING

cts

Ive. ven't.

ect

it.

1 Look at the photo. What do you think Jerome Claudel's hobby is?

During the day, Jerome Claudel works in an office, but in the evenings he is a member of a drama group and has performed in three plays already this vear! He talked to our reporter Jane Field.

#### Why did you join a drama group?

My first acting experience on stage was when I joined this drama group. I always loved going to the theatre, but I had no idea if I could act. One day I decided to try. I was spending too much time at home and I was interested in meeting some new people and doing something different.

What sort of plays does the drama group do? We've never acted in anything too serious. When people come to the theatre, they want to forget their problems, so most of our plays are comedies.

#### Tell me about a recent play you've done.

This year, we put on a historical drama for the first time and it was a big success: the audience loved the story! But the clothes - the historical costumes - cost a lot of money for our costume department to make, so I don't know if we will do another one.

#### Are you good at acting?

I'm quite good at acting, but I have to work hard at it. About a week before a performance, we practise every day. I go straight to a rehearsal after work and I don't get back home until ten o'clock at night. I get very tired! But all the actors want the play to be good so we work really hard.

#### 2 For these questions, choose the correct answer. First look at Question 1 and underline the key words.

- Why did Jerome join a drama group?
  - A He tried acting once when he was younger and loved it.
  - (B) He wanted to make new friends and try something
  - He had a lot of acting experience and hoped he was good enough.

A is wrong because he says the first time he tried acting was when he joined the drama group. C is wrong because he had no experience of acting, he just loved going to the theatre a lot. B is correct because he says 'I was interested in meeting some new people and doing something different.

- Why does Jerome's drama group do a lot of comedies?
  - A Comedy acting is easier than serious acting.
  - **B** People come to the theatre to have a good time.
  - C The actors are bored with doing so many serious plays.
- What does Jerome say about the historical drama?
  - A The audience loved the costumes.
  - The actors had to make their own costumes.
  - The costumes were very expensive.



#### **VOCABULARY**

#### THE THEATRE

- 1 Put the words in order to make correct definitions of words related to the theatre.
  - are the people / The audience / a performance. / who watch
  - in front of people. / acting, playing music or dancing / A performance is
  - he or she wears / is the set of clothes / during the performance. / An actor's costume
  - practise the play. / A rehearsal / is when the actors /
  - perform. / The stage / where the actors / is the place
- Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

a	udience costumes performance rehearsal stage
1	We didn't have a big Only ten people came to see our play.
2	He forgets everything when he's on and performing in front of people.
3	Thebegins at 7.30 pm. Please arrive on time.
4	All the actors must come to the tomorrow to practise this difficult part of the play.
5	I have six different to wear on stage. I need to change my clothes quickly and often.

#### 3 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- Have you ever been to the theatre? Would you like
- What is the last play you saw? Which play would you
- 3 Have you ever acted on stage? Did you enjoy it? If not would you like to act on stage?

#### DID YOU KNOW?

English, the spelling is theater.



#### LISTENING

Have you ever been to a classical concert to hear an orchestra play? Would you like to go? What music did you hear/would you like to hear?

## THE RECYCLED ORCHESTRA

The **recycled** orchestra (Orquesta de Reciclados de Cateura) is very special. The musicians are all children from the city of Asunción in Paraguay and the musical instruments that the children play are made of recycled **rubbish**. These recycled instruments sound as good as real instruments and the children play beautiful music with them.



- 2 Read about the recycled orchestra. Answer the questions.
  - 1 Who are the musicians in the recycled orchestra? Where are they from?
  - 2 What is special about their instruments?
- 3 Match the words in bold with the definitions.
  - 1 things people don't want and throw away
  - 2 used again
- 4 © 062 Listen to how the recycled orchestra started. Why did Favio Chavez start trying to make musical instruments?
- 5 @ 062 Listen again and choose the best answer.
  - 1 Favio Chavez first came to Asunción to
    - a teach music.
    - **b** work on a recycling project.
    - c learn about making things out of rubbish.
  - 2 Recycled instruments are better than real instruments for the children because
    - a they last for a long time.
    - **b** people don't want to steal them.
    - c they don't break.

- 3 The orchestra started to become famous when
  - a the children learned to play their instruments well.
  - **b** they started to give concerts in Asunción.
  - c a film about them appeared on the internet.
- 4 When the orchestra visited Rio de Janeiro, the children were excited because
  - a they saw the ocean for the first time.
  - **b** they were in a different country.
  - they met famous people.

6 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

drum flute keyboard piano trumpet violin

- 1 Can you play any of these musical instruments? Which would you like to play?
- 2 Which do you think would be the most difficult/easy to learn?
- 3 Which is your favourite musical instrument? Why?



#### VOCABULARY

#### **MUSIC PERFORMERS**

- How often do you listen to music? What kind of music do you like?
- Read these interviews with some people talking about music in their lives and answer the questions.
  - 1 Who performs music? Who listens to music?
  - 2 Who plays an instrument? Which one?

We're in a band – I'm the guitarist but I also play the drums. Diego is the lead singer and we're both songwriters. The musical style of the band is a mix of pop and soul.



I'm not a musician but I'd love to be a drummer.
I can't really sing either, but I love music! At the moment I'm listening to a lot of female solo artists, but my favourites are Rihanna and Adele.

<u> ||</u>

en



#### 3 Read the interviews again and answer the questions.

- 1 What sort of music does Valeria and Diego's band play?
- 2 Who writes Valeria and Diego's music?
- 3 What kind of music is Alex enjoying at the moment?
- 4 What would Alex like to learn to play?

#### 4 Complete the definitions with a word in yellow from the texts.

- 1 A is a musician who plays the guitar.
- **2** aren't part of a band, but sing on stage alone.
- **3** write songs both the words and the music.
- 4 A plays the drums for a band.
- **5** A \_\_\_\_\_\_ is the person who sings the most in a band.
- 6 A \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who plays a musical instrument or sings.

#### 5 Complete the text about a successful British band with the words from Exercise 4.

Clean Bandit is a very successful electronic music band from Cambridge in the UK. The band has won lots of prizes and has also had number-one songs. The three members of the band are Grace Chatto and brothers Jack and Luke Patterson. Grace plays the cello and also sings, but she isn't the . Luke is the 2 - he usually plays the drums. Jack plays lots of different instruments, including the piano, the keyboard and the violin, but usually he is the . Grace and Jack also help to write lots of the songs, as they are talented as well. All three of the band members are great <sup>5</sup> ! Clean Bandit often works together with 6 Zara Larsson, Ellie Goulding and Jess Glynne. This makes the band's music really exciting!

#### 6 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- 1 Who are your favourite bands and solo artists?
- 2 Do you go to gigs and concerts? What was the last one you went to? Whose gig or concert would you like to go to?

## MITERIAL MUSIC FESTIVAL

#### 26-29 JULY CHARLSBURY PARK, KENT

Buy tickets to your favourite international music festival!

- Five stages amazing music and dance performances all day
- World-famous musicians and dancers
- International market selling delicious food and drink
- Excellent arts area where you can try fun art and painting activities
- Dance and music classes all styles from classical to jazz
- ◆ Tickets: 4-day ticket £185, 3-day ticket £150, 1-day ticket £70
- Children aged 13 years and under free
- Ticket price includes: entry to the festival and all performances and workshops
- Camping in pleasant countryside: £10 per tent per night, includes free parking and free WiFi



#### WRITING

#### A LEAFLET

- 1 Have you ever been to a music, dance or arts festival? Which one? Where? What did you see and do?
- 2 Look at the leaflet for a festival in the UK. Find this information.
  - When and where is the festival?
  - What kind of festival is it?
  - 3 How many days does it last?
  - How much is a ticket for the whole festival?
  - Can you go for one day? How much does this cost?
  - How much does camping cost for the whole festival?
  - What different things can you see and do?
- 3 Find the adjectives the writer of the leaflet uses to describe these things.
  - the festival
  - the performances and performers
  - the place where you can camp
  - the arts area
  - 5 the arts activities you can do
  - the market
  - the food and drink on sale

- 4 You are going to design a leaflet for a festival.
  - Think about what kind of festival it is. Use the ideas below.
    - arts festival
- film festival
- comic book festival
   computer games festival
- 2 Make notes about the practical details of the festival.
  - Where is it?
- When is it?
- How much does it cost?
- What is included in the ticket price?
- Special information about toilets, parking, wi-fi, etc.
- 3 Choose the activities at your festival. You can use these examples.
  - singing
- dancing
- games
- workshops
- acting
- wearing costumes
- 4 Choose some adjectives to describe each of the activities and events at the festival.
- Design your leaflet. Make sure it includes all the information that people need.

#### SPEAKING PART 1 TRAINING

063 Listen to Carmen and Yannis answer questions about themselves in the speaking exam. Complete the personal information about them.

	YANNIS	CARMEN
Work or studies		
Age		
Nationality		
City		

- Who do you think gives better answers, Yannis or Carmen? Why?
- 3 © 064 Now listen to Carmen and Yannis answer questions about their hobbies and weekend activities.

#### What do we learn about:

- 1 Yannis's hobbies and weekends?
- 2 Carmen's hobbies and weekends?
- 4 © 064 Listen again and complete the questions the examiner asks.

7	What's your	hopph's
2	How	do yo

stival val.

, etc.

these

- 2 How \_\_\_\_\_ do you have for doing hobbies?
- 3 Please tell me \_\_\_\_\_ a new hobby you would like to try.
- 4 Where do you \_\_\_\_\_ at weekends?
- 5 What \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ thing about last weekend?
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ something about your plans for next weekend.
- Work in pairs and ask and answer about each other's hobbies and what you do at weekends. Use different question words: what, who, how, when, how much, where, how often. Try to ask one question using a past verb, or one question about the future.



#### **VOCABULARY: LINKING WORDS**

- Read about how Michael and Lotti started doing their hobbies. Which person started their hobby:
  - 1 so that they can be alone?
  - 2 because they wanted to help their friends?

My friends were in a band at school and I only started playing the drums **because of** them. The band's drummer left very suddenly the day before a gig. **Because** it was impossible to find anybody else, I agreed to try to play. I loved it and soon started saving money to buy my own drums.

Michael

I go running **so that** I can have some time to myself every day. My husband is a serious runner **so** he gets up at 5.30 every morning and goes for a long run before breakfast.

Lotti

2 Look at the expressions in bold that the speakers use to explain and give reasons. Complete the rules with the words in the box.

because so so that

- 1 We use because of + noun and \_\_\_\_\_ + clause to talk about the reason for something.
- We use \_\_\_\_\_ + clause to talk about the purpose of an action what the plan was/is.
- 3 We use \_\_\_\_\_ to talk about the effect of an action what happened or will happen as a result.
- 3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

because because of so so that

- 1 He started learning Spanish he could talk to his girlfriend's family in Mexico.
- 2 We couldn't go running today \_\_\_\_\_ the rain.
- 3 I was feeling tired and unfit \_\_\_\_\_\_ I started going to the gym.
- 4 he spoke such good Spanish, he soon started to enjoy life in Spain.

## EXAM FOCUS

#### READING PART 3

#### **EXAM CHECK**

1 Complete this text about Reading Part 3 by choosing the correct word or phrase.

In Part 3, you have to read <sup>1</sup>three short texts/one long text and answer <sup>2</sup>five/six questions. There are <sup>3</sup>three/four possible answers for each question. Some of the questions are actually sentences, and you have to <sup>4</sup>write/choose the option which completes the sentence. Sometimes the last question is about the <sup>5</sup>name of the writer/title of the text.

#### 2 For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 1 How did Jenny's friend Natalia feel when they were on the beach?
  - A surprised that Jenny knew so much about stars
  - **B** amazed that there were so many stars
  - c pleased that they could see a few stars between the clouds
- What did Jenny like about going to the planetarium?
  - A getting some books
  - **B** hearing the stories
  - c seeing the films

- 3 When she looks at the night sky, Jenny first tries to find
  - A the North Star.
  - B the Plough.
  - C the moon.
- 4 In the future, Jenny wants to
  - A help other people to see more stars.
  - B live in an area with not many lights.
  - c take a course about stars.
- 5 What is the best title for this text?
  - A What everyone should know about stars
  - **B** How my hobby changed my life
  - C Why I prefer the darkest nights

Last year I went on holiday with my friend Natalia. The weather was cloudy – except for one night when we sat on the beach looking at the stars. 'It's a pity we don't know which stars we're looking at, Jenny,' said Natalia. 'I know some of them,' I answered. 'That's amazing!' said Natalia when I finally finished telling her all the names I knew.

My interest in stars began when I was eight. My aunt took me to a planetarium – a building where you can see films of the stars at night. A guide showed us the groups of stars, called constellations, and told us stories about how they got their names. The stories were wonderful – like the ones in the books I had at home.

Since then, I've always looked at the sky at night. Everyone knows you can see the stars better when it's not cloudy, but a lot of people don't realise that a bright moon also stops you seeing very much. I always look for a constellation called the Plough, because once I see that, I can find the North Star and the other constellations.

I wanted to learn more about the stars, so I took a course at college. There are so many lights in the city that we had to go into the countryside to see any stars. I'm planning to make videos about the places you can go to which don't have this problem. I'll post them online for everyone to watch.

#### SPEAKING PART 1

Work in pairs. One of you is the examiner, and asks these questions. The other person answers the questions.

What's your name? Where do you live?

Work in pairs. One of you is the examiner, and asks these questions about going out with friends.

The other person answers the questions. Then swap roles.

When do you usually see your friends?

Do you usually see your friends at weekends?

How long have you known your best friend?

Have you known your best friend since you were at school?

What do you usually do when you go out with friends?

Do you go to the cinema with friends?

What do you do when it's a friend's birthday?

Do you have a party for your friend's birthday?

Now, please tell me something about the friend you spend most time with.

Does this friend live near you?

EXAM FACTS

- At the beginning of Part 1, the examiner will ask you a few details about you and where you live.
- After this, the examiner will tell you the topic you are going to talk about, and ask each of you two questions about this topic.
- Finally, the examiner will ask you to give a longer answer, by saying, 'Please tell me something about ...' This will be on the same topic as the earlier questions.

#### **EXAM TIPS**

- Remember the questions will always be about you and your life.
- Don't worry if you can't think of an answer the examiner will help you by asking another question.
- When the examiner says, 'Please tell me something about ...', try to give two or three pieces of information.



#### **REAL WORLD**

#### A

## SPENDING YOUR FREE TIME IN LONDON

What hobbies can you enjoy in the city? Look at the words and phrases in the box and discuss in pairs.

buying clothes learning about history sports trying new food visiting museums watching films or plays

- 2 Read the text about three things to do in London. Match the photos (A-C) with the activities. Which activity would you like to do? Why?
- 3 Read the texts again. Are these statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
  - 1 The Street Art Tour always goes to the same places.
  - 2 Camden Market has always sold clothes.
  - 3 You can eat lots of different foods on the Food Tour.



## THINGS TO DO IN LOND ON

London is a great place to enjoy all kinds of hobbies, and learn something new. There's something for everyone, from water-sports and skateboarding to art, drama and cooking.

#### Street Art

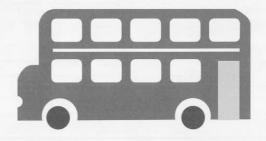
If you like art, come on a street art tour with us and see some of London's amazing street art. We know where all the best street art is and on one of our tours you will see work by over 40 street artists. Street art in London is changing all the time as older pieces disappear and new ones appear. This means that our tours are always fresh. We take you to different parts of the city each time. We run tours on Tuesdays, Saturdays and Sundays. If you're interested in joining us, please go to the booking page.

#### **Camden Market**

Camden Market is a great place for anyone who's interested in clothes and fashion. The first market at Camden started in 1974 as a small arts and crafts market. It then started selling clothes and quickly became popular with people who were looking for 'different' clothes. Everybody who was 'cool' was down at Camden Market on a Sunday afternoon to buy their fashionable clothes. Many young fashion designers began with a stall at Camden Market.

#### **East End Food**

Food lovers will love our tour! The East End of London is not like any other part of the city. People from all over the world live there, so it's full of delicious food from different countries. Our four-hour East End Food Tour visits lots of different places like markets, shops, cafés and restaurants and at each one you are offered a tasting. You will also meet some of the people who live and work in this part of the city and you will get to see places that few tourists visit. You will also see ancient Roman ruins, 18th century houses and hidden parks.



- Find the phrases in the text and choose the correct definitions.
  - 1 street art
    - paintings on walls and buildings
    - b works of art inside people's homes
  - 2 arts and crafts market
    - a a market that sells things people have made
    - b a market where artists can buy things they need for their work
  - 3 stall
    - a someone who sells things in a market
    - b a place where you buy things in a market
  - 4 a tasting
    - a a small amount of food to try
    - **b** a meal
  - 5 ancient ruins
    - a ugly new buildings
    - **b** parts of very old buildings
  - 6 hidden parks
    - a parks that lots of people visit
    - **b** parks that most people don't know about
- **5** © 065 Listen to three conversations. Who is speaking? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.
  - a a customer and a stallholder at Camden Market
  - **b** a guide and a tourist on a tour
  - two tourists on a Street Art Tour
  - d two tourists on an East End Food Tour
- 6 065 Complete the phrases with the correct words. Listen again and check. Which phrase can you use to agree with someone?

are you	first time	l'm	here
never seen	true	very	busy

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE**

- 1 from London?
- 2 for two weeks.
- 3 It's
- 4 It's my in London.
- 5 I've \_\_\_\_ a tour like this in my city.
- 6 That's

Choose the correct definitions for these informal words and phrases.

#### PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR

- 1 It looks like we're on the move again.
  - a Some people are leaving the tour.
  - b The tour is going to the next place now.
- 2 If you nip down here again ...
  - a If you come here again ...
  - b If you go to a different market ...
- 3 It's worth the few pounds to get the tour.
  - a It's a good idea to pay and go on a tour.
  - b The tour is too expensive.
- 4 You get off the tourist track.
  - a You see a lot of tourists.
  - b You go to places where not many tourists go.
- 8 Watch the video. Answer the questions about things to do in London.
  - 1 What is the London Eye?
  - 2 How long does a trip take on the London Eye?
  - **3** What kind of ticket should you buy if you want to get off a boat and then get on again?
  - What is the name of the clock on the Houses of Parliament?
  - 5 Why do tourists visit Abbey Road?
  - 6 How old is Borough Market? What kinds of food can you buy there?
- Compare your answers. Watch the video again to check your ideas.



#### LIFE COMPETENCIES

#### **DECISION-MAKING AND EMOTIONAL SKILLS**

10 Work in groups and choose a city. Find out about tours, sports or courses you can do there and make a list of the five you like best. Discuss and put them in order from 1-5, from the thing that you would most like to do (1) to the thing that you would least like to do (5). Tell your classmates.



#### WHERE I LIVE

- 1 Look at the photos and discuss the questions with a partner.
  - Which photo is most like where you live?
  - Which places would you like to live in? Which would you not like to live in? Why?
- Complete the descriptions with the words in the box and match with the photos (A-E).

houseboat cottage studio apartment/flat townhouse villa



Q Search

- 1 This comfortable, modern has a large garden and pool.
- 2 If you like living on the river, this is the home for you!
- . It's in the 3 This is a large middle of the country with fields around it.
- is on a quiet terraced 4 This street near the city centre.
- is ideal for a student or young professional: there is everything you need in one room.







- 3 @ 066 Listen to two people talking about where they live. Which country and city do the man and woman live in?
- 066 Listen again and choose the correct answer.
  - Ling lives
    - a alone.
- **b** with her family.
- c with her sister.
- The part of the city she lives in is
  - expensive.
- **b** old and near the river.
  - near the river and very busy.
- Her house is
  - 43 years old.
- **b** 35 years old.
- c 100 years old.
- Huan has lived in his home for
  - one week.
- **b** one month.
- c one year.

- He lives on the
  - 23rd floor.
- 33rd floor.
- c 32nd floor.

- His home is
  - modern and new, but not near the city centre.
  - new and in the city centre.
  - expensive and in the city centre.

What do you think Ling's and Huan's homes are like? Match the photos with the people.	
Ling Huan	
6 Read the descriptions and check your	PART IN THE PART I
answers to Exercise 5.	alta de la companya della companya della companya de la companya della companya d
My apartment isn't very big but it's very comfortable. There's a kitchen, a living room, a bathroom and one bedroom. I like the kitchen because it's very modern and it has a balcony where you can sit outside and enjoy the fantastic view of the city. My favourite room is the living room. There's not much furniture – only my sofa, a big television and a computer. I think that's all I need to be happy! I keep my car in a garage, which	VOCABULARY HOUSES
is in the <b>basement</b> under the apartment <b>building</b> .	Complete the sentences with the words in purple from the texts.
2 Huan	Don't spend too much money! We need to pay the for our apartment at the end of the month.
The state of the s	2 Our cat climbed on the of the house but then
Our house is small, but it has three floors. On the <b>ground floor</b> there is the kitchen and our noodle	she couldn't get down.  3 We haven't got a, so we park the car in
shop. On the first floor, there is a bathroom and a living room and on the second floor are our two	the street.
bedrooms. My bedroom is my favourite room	4 I have a good from my bedroom window – I can see the whole street.
because it has a lot of light. From the bedrooms you can go onto the top floor – the <b>roof</b> garden. We are	5 My office is in a really nice, modern
friends with all our <b>neighbours</b> . We have lived in this house all our lives, but it isn't ours: we rent it. We pay	6 We don't have a garden, but our apartment has a big where I can grow flowers.
our <b>rent</b> to the owner every month.	7 He only has a bed and one chair in his room; there isn't any other
Ling	8 In most people's houses, the kitchen and living room are on the and the bedrooms are
Read the descriptions again. Find this information.	on the first floor.  9 I can't go to sleep because the in the next
1 Why does Huan like his kitchen?	apartment are making a lot of noise.
<ul><li>What is great about the balcony in Huan's home?</li><li>Where does Huan park his car?</li></ul>	10 We have a under the house where we watch films and play games.
4 How many floors does Ling's house have?	2 Put the words in order to make questions. Then
<ul><li>Where is the garden in Ling's house?</li><li>What do Ling and her sister have to do every month?</li></ul>	interview your partner about his/her home.
	1 is / home? / old / How / your
	2 floors / have? / does it / How many
	<ul><li>favourite room? / your / What's</li><li>have / a garden / Do / or a balcony? / you</li></ul>
	DID YOU KNOW?
	In the USA, the floor of a building on street level is called the <b>first floor</b> and the floor above it is called the <b>second floor</b> .  In buildings in the UK and Ireland, these are called the <b>ground floor</b> and the <b>first floor</b> .
LARY I	
W. W.	

#### LISTENING

- Read about the house in the photo.

  Answer the questions.
  - Where is the house? Who lives there?
  - 2 How long has she lived there?
  - 3 How much does the house cost?

#### CELEBRITY NEWS

Simone Woodley has just put her Los Angeles house up for sale for \$9.5 million.

The actress and singer has lived in her home in Beverly Hills for eight years and has spent three million dollars on the house. In that time she has built a recording studio, games room and movie theatre.

Since she met her husband last year, she has spent less time in the house and has decided to sell it. She is now looking for a new home in New York.



- 2 067 Listen to a news reporter who is visiting the house. Tick the rooms she goes into.
  - ☐ bedroom ☐ dining room

☐ indoor swimming pool ☐ kitchen

gym

3 @ 067 Listen again and choose the best answer.

- 1 At the beginning of the visit, the reporter is standing
  - a in the garden.
- **b** in the hall.
- 2 She goes up the stairs
  - a to the first floor.
- b to the second floor.
- 3 There are
  - a 10 bedrooms and 5 bathrooms.
  - **b** 5 bedrooms and 10 bathrooms.
- 4 In the kitchen, everything is
  - a white and grey.
- b gold and white.
- 5 The reporter says she loves
  - a the view from the window.
  - b the big fridge.

#### VOCABULARY

#### KITCHEN ITEMS

- Match the words (1-6) with the definitions (a-f).
  - 1 sink

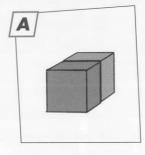
- 4 cupboard
- 2 cooker
- 5 tap

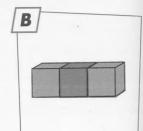
- 3 fridge
- 6 oven
- a piece of furniture that is used to keep food cold
- **b** the part above a sink that water comes out of
- a piece of kitchen equipment with a door, which is used for cooking food
- d a piece of equipment used to cook food
- e a piece of furniture with a door that you put things in
- f a bowl that is fixed somewhere in a kitchen or bathroom where you can wash dishes or your hands

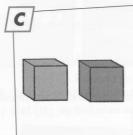
#### **PREPOSITIONS**

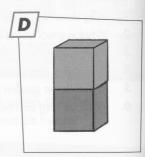
Label the pictures with the words in the box. Where is the red box?

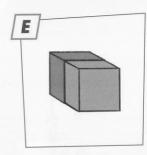
behind between in front of next to opposite under

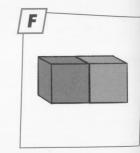












- 3 Do you spend much time in the kitchen of your home?
- Work in pairs and describe your kitchen using the words in Exercises 1 and 2. Your partner must draw a plan.

D 068 Listen to these phrases and repeat.

Under the sink
Opposite the fridge
Behind the oven

Next to the tap
Between the cooker and the fridge
In front of the oven



#### PRESENT PERFECT WITH FOR AND SINCE



in

ids

re

GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE
Watch the video



Look at these sentences about the celebrity house and answer the questions.

The actress and singer **has lived** in her home in Hollywood **for eight years**.

**Since she met** her husband last year, she **has spent** less time in the house.

- When did the actress start living in this house? Is she still living there now?
- When did she start spending less time at the house? Does she spend less time there now?

#### 2 Choose the best option to complete the rules.

We use the present perfect tense with **since** and **for** to talk about an action which started in the past but continues up to and includes the present. We use:

- 1 for/since to talk about a period of time, e.g. eight years, one week, two minutes.
- 2 for/since to talk about when a situation started, e.g. last Christmas, yesterday, five minutes ago.

How long have you lived here?

I've lived here since I moved to London. / I've lived here for ten years.

How long has he known his girlfriend?

He's known her since 2017.

How long have they known each other?

They've known each other for 10 or 12 years.

#### **⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE** / page 212

- 3 Choose the correct option for or since to complete the sentences.
  - 1 We've been married for/since five years.
  - 2 She's liked the house since/for the first time she saw it.
  - 3 Our television is new. We've only had it since/ for six weeks.
  - 4 My father has worked at the shop for/since 2010.
  - 5 I haven't seen my parents since/for January.
  - **6** They haven't been to the cinema for/since two months.
- Work in pairs. Use the words to make questions.

  Take turns to ask and answer using for and since.
  - live in your home
  - know your best friend
  - have your bike/car/that pair of shoes, etc.
  - know how to read/ski/drive/cook, etc.
  - like (a hobby/film/book/type of music, etc.)

How long have you lived in your house?

I've lived there for five years.



UNIT 8

#### SPEAKING

#### DESCRIBING WHERE YOU LIVE

- 069 Listen to Luzia talking about where she lives.
  - 1 Which country does she come from?
  - 2 Does she live in a house or an apartment?



- © 069 Put the words in order to make six questions the teacher asks Luzia. Listen again and check.
  - 1 in the city? / do you live/ And where
  - 2 live with? / Who / do you /
  - 3 lived there? / have you / How long
  - 4 apartment? / like your / Do you
  - 5 favourite room? / What's / your
  - 6 you don't like / apartment? / Is there anything / about your
  - 7 room? / describe your / Can you
- 3 Luzia uses adjectives to make her description more interesting. Sort the adjectives in the box into pairs of opposites.

beautiful big cheap expensive modern noisy old quiet small ugly

4 Prepare to tell your partner about where you live and what your house/apartment and your room are like. Use the phrases below and the adjectives from Exercise 3 to help you.

#### **USEFUL LANGUAGE**

It's a large/small city/town/village etc.
It's in the north/south/east/west of my country.
It's on the Atlantic Ocean/the coast etc.
I live in the city centre/the country etc.
I live near the park/the river/the cathedral etc.
The building is old/new. My apartment/bedroom is on the first/second/third floor etc.
It's old/modern/big/small etc.
There is/are ... I like/don't like ... because ...
My favourite room is ... because ...

Work in pairs and take turns to ask and answer the questions in Exercise 2 using the phrases above.

Where do you live in the city?

I live in the city centre, near the church.

#### PUSH YOURSELF BI

SPEAKING: DESCRIBING A PICTURE

1 © 070 Listen to a man describing the photo.

Complete the description with the preposition phrases in the box.

at the back of in the middle of in front of on the left on the wall

This is a photo of a living room. The walls are white and there's a grey rug on the floor. 

the room there are three big windows, but there aren't any curtains.

the window there's a round table with a white chair on each side of it. The part of the chair that we sit on – I don't know the name in English – is red. 

the room there's a big glass table and on the table there are some pink flowers in ... I don't know what it's called in English but it's a kind of pot for flowers. 

there's a grey sofa and above the sofa, 

there's a big picture. On the right of the table there are two black chairs and there's a dog standing in front of them.

- 2 In the text the man describes some objects he doesn't know the name of. Underline the phrases he uses.
- 3 Match the objects in the box with their descriptions.

bookshelf lamp rug seat vase

- The part of a chair that we sit on I don't know the name in English.
- 2 I don't know what it's called but it's a kind of pot.
- 3 I don't know the word for this it's something we put on the floor to keep our feet warm.
- 4 I've forgotten the English word: we use it for making light.
- 5 I don't know how to say this: we keep books on it.

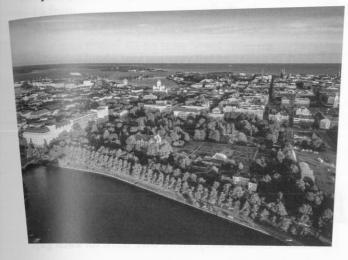
## GRAMMAR

#### PRESENT PERFECT WITH YET AND ALREADY

## GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE Watch the video



Have you ever moved house? Where and when did you move from and to?



- 2 071 Anthony is moving from London to Helsinki. Listen to a telephone conversation with his friend, Laura.
  - 1 Why is he moving to Finland?

and

here

vhite

sit

nere lled

ire

ons.

- 2 How did he find his new apartment?
- 071 Listen again and complete the phrases with two words. Then complete the rules with yet and already.

1	Have you	anywhere to liv	re	-
2	l've	my new ap	artment.	
3	You haven't actually	itit	Ś	
4	ľve	the first mo	nth's rent.	
5	Have you met your	new boss	ś	
6	1/200	L		

- 1 We use in positive sentences.
  - It goes between have and the past participle.
  - It means that something happened before now or before we expected.
- 2 We use \_\_\_\_\_ to ask questions and in negative sentences.
  - It goes at the end of the sentence or question.
  - We use it to talk about things we plan to do in the future, but which are not done.
- GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 213

Look at Anthony's list of things to do before he leaves for Helsinki. Complete his conversation with Laura. Use the verbs in brackets in the present perfect with yet and already.

finish packing \( \stacksquare \) say goodbye to the neighbours \( \stacksquare \) text my friends with my new address and phone number book a taxi to take me to the airport

Laura: So Anthony are you ready to go?

[finish packing]?

Anthony: Yes, I have. My suitcases are by the door.

And I've?

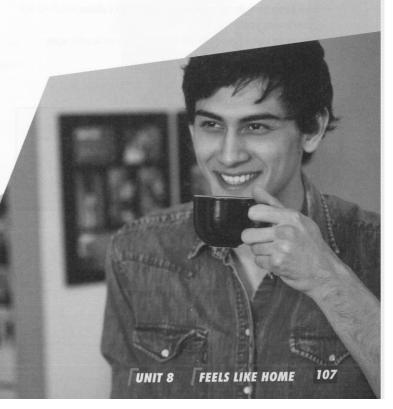
[say goodbye) to the

And I've 2 (say goodbye) to the neighbours who live in the apartment next to me.

Laura: And <sup>3</sup> ? (text friends) We can't come to visit you if we don't know your address!

Anthony: No, not yet and I 4 . (book taxi)
My flight is really early. I'll do that now.

- Work in pairs. Take turns to ask and answer. Has your partner done any of these things today yet?
  - have a cup of tea/coffee
  - have lunch
  - read something in English
  - text a friend
  - listen to some music



## GRAMMAR

#### PRESENT PERFECT OR PAST SIMPLE

- What are important things to do when you move to a new town? How do you make friends and meet people?
- Read about Paula, who has moved to a new town.

  Has she met any new people yet?



I've been here **for** one month and haven't done much to my apartment **yet**, but I've met the neighbours – I invited them round for coffee yesterday. They're really nice. I also joined a gym on my first day here and I've been almost every day **since** then. **Last night**, I went out for a meal with some girls from my exercise class and it was great fun. I've just ordered some new furniture and I bought some paint for the living room **two weeks ago** but I haven't had time to start painting yet.

3 Look at the examples and complete the rules with the words in the box.

I've **been** here **for one month** and **haven't done** much to my apartment **yet**.

I bought some paint for the living room two weeks ago.

ago finished for unfinished

- 1 We use the **present perfect tense** to talk about <sup>1</sup> events that began in the past but are still happening or are still true now, e.g. *I've been here* <sup>2</sup> one month.
- 2 We use the **past simple tense** to talk about <sup>3</sup> events that happened at a precise time in the past, e.g. *I arrived here one month* <sup>4</sup>.

100	Complete the sentences with the past simple or
	present perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

2	He	in that house s	ince he was a baby. (live)
3	Don't touc	h that wall; I	painting it yet! (not fini
4	1	some new curtain	ns at the weekend. (buy)
5	That cup	in the kit	chen sink for a month. (be)
6		her new dress ed last night. (pu	in the wardrobe before sh
7	yesterday		hen I was cleaning the hou

to Argentina last year. (move)

#### Work in pairs and tell your partner about something:

that milk

- interesting you did last week
- nice you ate on holiday
- you've never seen

How long

My friends

- you haven't finished yet
- you haven't done today yet but plan to do

STATE OF THE PERSON NAMED IN	STATE OF THE PARTY NAMED IN	Section 1	THE REAL PROPERTY.	AND DESCRIPTION	THE RESERVE TO SERVE
REA	DII	NG	PA	RT	5

TRAINING

in the fridge? (be)

Read Ben's email to Lucy. Write ONE word for each gap.

First read the email and decide what kind of word fits in each gap. It could be a verb, a preposition, a word that joins two ideas, a negative, etc.

Look at the example sentence 0 and look for clues to the missing word in the context. You can see this sentence has no verb at the moment and there is a second person pronoun, you. What phrases do you know which start with with How ...? The missing word is the verb are.

Now look at gaps 1–4 and think about the words that might fit there. Look at the words around the gaps for clues.

rom: Ben Evans	Reply Forward
Hi Lucy How (0) you? I'r sooner. I've been here in I really like my job here a apartment too. It's (1) I have a great view of the The only problem (2) enough furniture. I haven' yet. At night, I sleep on m (3) living room. at all. I'm planning to (4) on Saturday! Why don't you visit me so Ben	Berlin for one month. Ind I like my new the fifth floor so ecity from my window. I don't have I't had time to buy a bed by hard sofa in It's not comfortable shopping

## WRITING PART 6 TRAINING

e)

finish)

be)

she

louse

(be)

ing:

Fran has received an email from her friend Rose. Read the message. What do you think a 'housewarming party' is?



- 2 Read the email again and answer the questions.
  - 1 How does Fran know Rose?
  - 2 What has Rose just done?
  - 3 Where and when is the party?
  - 4 What does Rose tell Fran about the apartment? (three things)
  - 5 Who are the other guests who are coming to the party?

- 3 Find the following functions in Rose's message.
  - 1 Greeting for the beginning of an email Hi + name
  - 2 Friendly phrase for first line of email
  - 3 Phrase to say why you are writing
  - 4 Phrase to end an email
- 4 For which of the functions 1-4 in Exercise 3 could you use these expressions?
  - Hello + name
  - See you soon!
  - How are things?
  - So, I wanted to know if ...
  - I hope you're well
  - I wanted to ask you ...
  - Dear + name
  - All the best
- 5 Fran is going to write an email to Harry, a friend of hers and Rose's, and ask if they can go to the party together. Write the questions she needs to ask to find out the following information.
  - how Harry is getting to the party (transport)
  - if they can go together
  - where they can meet (suggest a place)
- 6 Decide how to begin and end the email and what to put in the subject line. Look at Rose's email in Exercise 1 to help you.
- 7 Write Fran's email to Harry. Write 25 words or more.



## EXAM FOCUS

## READING PART 5

For each question, write the correct answer.

Write ONE word for each gap.

Example: 0 are

To: Luca From: Samuel		Reply Forward
To: Luca From: Samuel  How (0) you? I've final flat, and I move into (1) There's just one problem – I have (2) heavy furniture to recoming to help, but I don't think enough. (3) you mind When we finish I'll buy pizza fo		on Saturday. lots ove. Max is wo people are elping too?

• • • · ·	۹ 🐧
To: Samuel From: Luca	Reply Forward 💟
Of course I'll be happy (4) know I love pizza! Can you send to of (5) new flat so I know I always go to (6) gym e morning, but I'm free after that.	me the address where to go?

#### **EXAM FACTS**

- You read one or two short texts which have words missing.
- There is an example which is already done, and six more gaps for you to complete.
- · You think of the correct word for each gap.

#### **EXAM TIPS**

- Read the whole text (or texts) before you start.
- Look at the words before and after the gap to help you decide what the missing word is.
- Remember that Part 5 is a test of grammar, so the missing words are usually pronouns (he, it, them, etc.), prepositions (on, under, by, etc.), auxiliary verbs (be, do, have) and determiners (the, any, each, etc.).



## WRITING PART 6

#### EXAM CHECK

- 1 Read the questions (1-5) and match them with the correct answers (A-E).
  - 1 How many words should I write?
  - 2 Who is my message for?
  - 3 What do I write about?
  - 4 How can I join my ideas together?
  - 5 What should I be careful about?
  - A There will be an email or some instructions which give information about the person you should write to.
  - B Use words like and, because or so.
  - C Try to use correct grammar and spelling.
  - D 25 or more.
  - **E** There are three questions which you need to answer.
- 2 You want your English friend Jamie to stay at your house next weekend.

#### Write an email to Jamie:

- ask Jamie to come
- tell Jamie what you can do together at your house
- say what Jamie should bring

Write 25 words or more.

> WRITING BANK / pages 233-234.



## **REAL WORLD**

## A

# LIVING AND LEARNING IN ... MALTA B

- Read the information about language courses in Malta and look at the photos (A–C). Why do you think Malta is a good place to study English?
- Read the text about studying English in Malta. Are these statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
  - School groups can only come in the Easter and summer holidays.
  - 2 Many schools offer special courses for families that all family members will enjoy.
  - 3 Adult classes are only for people who are already good at English.
  - 4 Host families are a good idea for teenagers.
  - 5 Most hotels are not very far from the language schools.
  - 6 Self-catering apartments are always quite expensive.



## WHY STUDY ENGLISH IN MALTA?

Malta is the perfect place to study English. It has beautiful weather, warm seas, friendly people, and 6,000 years of history. It is also an English-speaking country.

## CC

#### COURSES

#### School groups

Most language schools welcome school groups all year round. They offer a good range of lessons and an activity programme for all ages. Most schools also offer a summer package so that students can enjoy a language holiday over Easter or summer.

#### **Family courses**

Come to Malta with your family and have a great holiday to remember. Many schools offer special courses for families, with lessons, accommodation and activities that all families will enjoy.

#### **Adult courses**

Schools also offer adult courses at all levels, from beginners to advanced. Classes are usually small, often with no more than ten students in each class. The adult courses are for people who want to learn how to speak English for their work or to use on holiday.



### **ACCOMMODATION**

#### **Host families**

A host family offers you a warm welcome in their home, where you can hear and speak plenty of English. This is the best choice for teenagers aged 13–17. It gives you the chance to experience everyday life in Malta and learn how people live on this beautiful island.

#### **Hotel accommodation**

A hotel is the perfect choice for people who want to feel that they are on holiday! Most hotels offer a swimming pool, restaurants and evening entertainment.

Many hotels are in St Julian's Bay, where you can be close to your school and the beach!

#### **Self-catering apartments**

Self-catering apartments are perfect for families, or people who want to cook for themselves. Most schools offer self-catering apartments at different prices, usually close to the schools.

- Find the phrases in the text and choose the correct definitions.
  - 1 an activity programme
    - a set of different activities you can do
    - **b** a TV programme about different activities
  - 2 package
    - a holiday where you pay for everything together
    - **b** a holiday with no language lessons
  - 3 airport transfers
    - a places to stay near the airport
    - b journeys to and from the airport
  - 4 host family
    - a your family
    - b a family you stay with while you are studying
  - 5 evening entertainment
    - a meals in the evening
    - b things to do in the evening, e.g. films and shows
  - 6 self-catering apartment
    - a flat where you stay and cook your own food
    - b a flat where someone comes and cooks for you
- © 072 Listen to three conversations. Who is speaking? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.
  - a two new students
  - **b** a student and a host family member
  - c a student and the school receptionist
  - d a new student and a teacher
- 6 072 Complete the phrases with the correct words. Listen again and check.

don't have I've got I've met like to book not very keen there are

#### PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE

1 I'd \_\_\_\_\_ some accommodation.
2 \_\_\_\_\_ four people in my family.
3 \_\_\_\_\_ my host family.
4 \_\_\_\_\_ my student card.
5 | \_\_\_\_\_ any allergies. I eat everything.
6 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ on spicy food.

6 Choose the correct definitions for these informal words and phrases.

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR**

- 1 Yes, I've got you here.
- 2 If you want to go ahead, just let me know.
- 3 Have you settled in OK?
- 4 Have you dealt with all the formalities?
- 5 You can get that up and running.
- 6 Any particular preferences?
- a Have you completed the documents?
- b Are there any things you like or don't like?
- c I've found your name on the computer.
- d Do you feel comfortable with your host family?
- e You can start using it.
- f Tell me if you want to book it.
- Watch the video. What do you learn about these things in Malta? Make notes.
  - towns and cities
- language schools
- history and culture
- free-time activities
- 8 Compare your notes. Watch the video again to check your ideas.
- Work in pairs. Plan a language course for someone who wants to come and live and study in your country. Think about these questions.
  - Where is it?
  - Who is it for? (school groups, families, etc.)
  - What accommodation is there?
  - How long are the lessons?
  - What free-time activities are there?



## LIFE COMPETENCIES

### CREATIVITY, INNOVATION AND DECISION-MAKING

Make a leaflet to advertise a language course.
Then read all the leaflets in your class.
Which language course would you like to do the most? Why?

## PROGRESS CHECK 3

#### UNITS 6-8

Complete the sentences about the photo using words in the box. You don't need all of the words.



b	ehind	between	in	in front of	next to	unde
7	There	e is a bed, a n.	chair	and a table	***************************************	the
2	The t	able is	tł	ne bed and	the windo	ow.
3	There	e is a guitar		the chai	r.	
4		ne table, the icture.	re are	some flowe	rs	
5	There	e are some t	rainers	;t	he table.	
6	There	e is a teddy	bear o	n the bed,		the girl.

- 2 Choose the correct option to complete the sentences.
  - 1 A solo artist/songwriter is someone who performs alone.
  - 2 When they're playing on stage, the *drummer/guitarist* usually sits down, but the other people in the group stand up.
  - **3** When the *musicians/artists* started to play, the fans started to sing and clap.
  - **4** A group of people who play pop music together is called a *concert/band*.

3 Add food words to complete this text. You have the first letter of each word to help you.

I think the	at it's important to look after yourself, so
I try to g	o to the gym two or three times a week
and eat l	healthy food, especially vegetables like
1b	. I'm a vegetarian, so I don't eat
2b	, ³c or fish. I eat eggs,
cheese a	nd milk, though, so I often like to make
an <sup>4</sup> o	for lunch – my favourite is
5m	. Afterwards I usually have fruit such
as 6m	or maybe a <sup>7</sup> y

4 Complete the sentences using the words and expressions in the box.

а	a few a lit	tle man	y m	uch	some
1	Could I have	co	ake, ple	ease?	
2	I'm not feeling for my lunch!	well. I only	/ had		soup
3	I'll buy some fr	ruit when I	go out	- the	ere's not
4	Don't forget to It's a very hot		w	ater v	with you.
5	How	spoons of	sugar	do y	ou have in
6	Put g			ıl, ple	ease. I only
7	If you're thirsty orange juice in			cart	on of

5	Complete the sentences about the people's hobbies
	using the words in the box.

playing board games baking doing exercise doing nothing going to gigs going to the gym photography

have

nd

quo

ive in

only

- 1 I love \_\_\_\_\_ every day after college. The running machine is my favourite thing.
- 2 I really love \_\_\_\_\_\_. In fact, I make a cake every time someone in my family has a birthday. I really enjoy \_\_\_\_\_\_ too, so I take photos of all my cakes and post them on social media.
- 3 I love art, and my hobby is really fun. I like making sculptures and giving them to people as presents.

  I also love listening to music, so when I'm not doing art, I like with friends.
- 4 My friends and I enjoy getting together and such as Monopoly.
- 5 When I was younger I didn't like sport. I preferred \_\_\_\_\_\_. Now, though, I really enjoy \_\_\_\_\_\_ especially, running in the park.

## 6 Put the word in brackets in the correct place in each sentence.

- 1 A: Have you travelled somewhere by plane? (ever)
  - **B:** Actually, I've come back from New York. It was fantastic! (just)
- 2 A: Have you finished that book? (yet)
  - **B:** Of course! In fact, I've started a new one. (already)
- 3 A: What game is that you're playing? I have seen it before. (never)
  - **B:** Oh, we've had this years. My dad bought it in China. (for)

## Students often make mistakes with countable and uncountable nouns, and some, any, a, many, etc. Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 1 I bought a jeans and a beautiful trainers.
- 2 It was a good weather.
- 3 My favourite meal is the pasta.
- 4 At the park no-one sells some food.
- 5 Don't forget to buy a juice.
- 6 We took much photos.

#### 8 Complete each sentence with the correct form of the past simple or present perfect of the verbs in brackets.

1	I (buy) a	new sofa yesterday. The old one
	wasn't very comfor	table.
2	she	(have) that clock for a

long time?

3 I (leave) my keys at home this morning, and now I can't get into my flat.

4 I \_\_\_\_ (not/see) that desk before. Is it new?

5 Sorry it's so cold in the living room. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (not/put) the heating on yet.

6 I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) my new neighbours a few days ago. They're really friendly.

#### 9 Read the text, and choose the correct answer (A, B or C) for each gap.

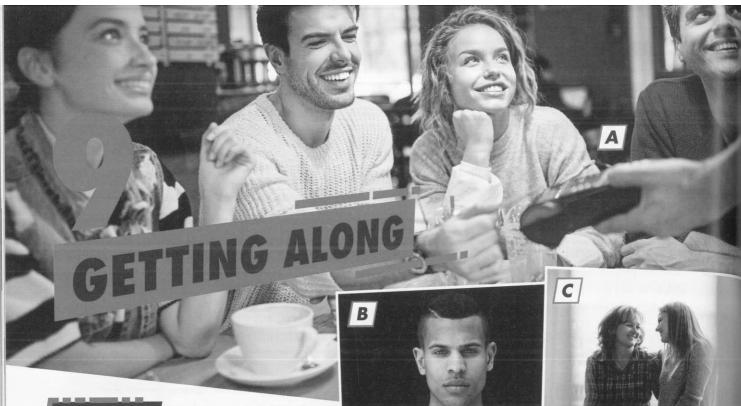
I love going to my friend Ben's house. He lives in a beautiful modern <sup>1</sup> in the centre of town.

It's quite big, and there is a lovely <sup>2</sup> that you can sit on when the weather is nice. It's an unusual place to live in, because the kitchen is <sup>3</sup>.

Ben's a really good cook, so he often <sup>4</sup> friends to his place for a <sup>5</sup> at the weekends. We all sit in the kitchen and chat while Ben <sup>6</sup> the food.

Everything is always delicious, but I try not to eat too much at the beginning of the meal, as I love the sweet <sup>7</sup> that Ben makes.

1	A	apartment	В	cottage	C	houseboat
2	A	view	В	balcony	C	basement
3	A	above	В	out	C	upstairs
4	A	meets	B	calls	C	invites
5	A	meal	В	dinner	C	snack
6	Α	puts	В	prepares	C	cuts
7	Δ	desserts	B	starters	C	main courses



## READING

- Think about one of your friends. Tell your partner about them.
  - Where did you meet?
  - Why do you like them?
  - How long have you known them?
  - What do you do together?
- 2 Match the photos (A-E) with the texts (1-5).

## WHAT KIND OF ARE YOU?

- THE CLEVER FRIEND You're intelligent and you like reading and learning new things. You're often **busy** because you're interested in so many things. Sometimes you're quiet but this isn't because you're **shy**. It's because you're thinking about something!
- THE **GENEROUS** FRIEND If you go to a café with friends, then you're happy to pay for the drinks because you like sharing and giving. You're **friendly** and are usually nice to people.
- THE FUNNY FRIEND You know lots of jokes and stories and you enjoy making your friends laugh.
- THE COOL FRIEND You dress well, look good and know it. You are very **confident**. Because of this, people often want to know you and be your friend.
- THE **RELIABLE** FRIEND You don't forget things and you always help your friends when they need you.

D	The state of	
3		



3	Match the words in bl	ue in the text with the definitions
	w >>41	Landar State and a

- When you are \_\_\_\_\_, you have lots of things to do.
  A \_\_\_\_\_ person believes that they can do things well, like
- get good marks or get a good job.

  3 It's normal to be quiet and feel a bit \_\_\_\_\_ when you meel or talk to lots of new people.
- people like meeting new people and find it easy to
- 5 If you are \_\_\_\_\_, you enjoy giving people money and presents or sharing your things with them.
- **6** When someone is \_\_\_\_\_, they always do what they say they will do, like arriving on time and working hard.
- 4 © 073 Listen to four people talking about their best friends.
  For each speaker note down where and when they met.
  - 1 Chris and John
  - 2 Emma and Sonia
  - 3 Enrique and Juan
  - 4 Helena and Jasmine
- 5 @ 073 Listen again. What do they like about their friends?
- 6 What kind of friend do you think you are? Why?



- Look at the photos of best friends Grace and Matteo. Where do you think they met? What do you think they are like?
- Now read the texts about Grace and Matteo and find out. Where do they work?

## **HOW WE MET**

#### **Matteo on Grace:**

I met Grace when I came to her restaurant in London. The first thing I noticed about her was her smile. I needed to get a job and she agreed to give me some work for the summer. That was ten years ago and I'm still here. Grace is a very friendly, generous person. She never gets angry with me, even when I do stupid things! It's also very exciting to work with her. She knows so much about food, and I have learned to cook many great dishes from her. Sometimes when I arrive at work I'm in a bad mood or I'm worried about something, but then I sit down with Grace to talk and half an hour later, I'm feeling fine. I love working here – with my friend.

#### Grace on Matteo:

15.

ell, like

ou mee

easy to

and

ey say

iends.

nds?

At first, I didn't really want to give Matteo a job because I thought he was too young. But the restaurant is very busy in the summer, so I decided to offer him a job in the kitchen for a few months. That was ten years ago and he's still here! I love working with him. Restaurant kitchens are very noisy, busy places and it's easy to get stressed but Matteo is always calm. He's a quiet person, but people never argue with him. They listen to what he says and they do what he asks them to do. We get on very well because we're interested in the same things.

#### Read the texts again and answer the questions.

- 1 What did Matteo first notice about Grace when he met her?
- 2 How long have they worked together?
- 3 Why didn't Grace want to give Matteo a job?
- Why does Grace like working in the kitchen with Matteo?

## VOCABULARY

#### **FEELINGS AND EMOTIONS**

- Match the beginnings of the definitions of the words in red from the texts with the endings (a-f).
  - You are **angry** when you have a strong feeling
  - 2 You are worried when you are unhappy
  - 3 Your mood which can be bad or good is
  - 4 To get on well or badly with someone is to have
  - 5 When I get stressed in my job I feel that I
  - 6 When people argue they disagree about
  - a good or bad relationship with them.
  - **b** against someone who's behaved badly.
  - something, shout and get angry.
  - d have too much to do and everything is going wrong.
  - e the way you feel at a particular time.
  - f about bad things that might happen.

2	Complete the	sentences	with	the	words	and
	phrases from	Exercise 4.				

1	1	with my parents. We can talk about
	anyth	ing and we never argue.

- 2 I felt very \_\_\_\_\_ when my friend stopped answering her phone and I didn't know where she was.
- 3 My mum is in a \_\_\_\_\_\_ because my dad forgot her birthday.
- **4** They \_\_\_\_\_ about money all the time. He thinks she spends too much!
- 5 I like to arrive at work on time and feel really \_\_\_\_\_\_ if there are delays and I think I'm going to be late.
- **6** The teacher was \_\_\_\_\_ with us because we didn't do our homework.

## Work in pairs and ask and answer the questions.

- 1 Who do you get on well with? Why?
- 2 When do you feel stressed?
- When was the last time you got really angry with someone? Why? What did they do?

#### **DID YOU KNOW?**



British English speakers talk about being **angry**, but American English speakers often say that they are **mad**.



#### **VERBS / ADJECTIVES + TO + INFINITIVE**



## GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE Watch the video



Look at the examples and choose the best answer to complete the rule.

I needed to get a job.
I decided to offer him a job in the kitchen.
It's very exciting to work with her.
It's easy to get stressed.

After some adjectives and after some verbs, we use to + infinitive/past participle.

We use to + infinitive after some adjectives:

I'm (not) happy/ready/pleased to do this.

It's better/easy/difficult/exciting (not) to do this.

We use to + infinitive after some verbs:

You can learn/want/decide/agree to do something

#### ⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 214

- Put the words in order to make sentences with a verb or adjective + to + infinitive.
  - find out about / in a different country. / to / It was interesting / life
  - 2 to / next year. / that there's a trip / We were excited / to America / hear
  - 3 say / to their friends. / They were sad / goodbye / to
  - 4 She promised / to / in the evening. / help him
  - 5 learn / but it was / I tried / how to ski / to / too difficult.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of a verb or adjective in the box + to + infinitive.

d	ecide	easy	exciting	happy	learn	want
1	lt's		learn a ne	w skill if y	ou have	a good
2	teach	ner.	n have			e they are
3		e years c n't		ned hecau	ise I didn	't feel tired.
4			wait for hi			

exams!

6 It was very \_\_\_\_ be at the match last night.
Both teams scored lots of goals!

hear that my sister passed all of her

P © 074 Listen to four sentences. Notice which syllables are stressed. How is the word to pronounced when it is unstressed?

It's easy to get stressed.
I needed to get a job.
I didn't really want to give Matteo a job.
He's happy to pay for the drinks.

- 5 P © 074 Listen again and repeat. Try to link the unstressed to with the previous word in the sentence and copy the pronunciation (/tə/ not /tuː/).
- 6 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you. Tell your partner.
  - Nobody has ever asked me to ...
  - 2 I have decided to ...

I was

- 3 I think it would be interesting to ...
- 4 It's difficult for most people to ...

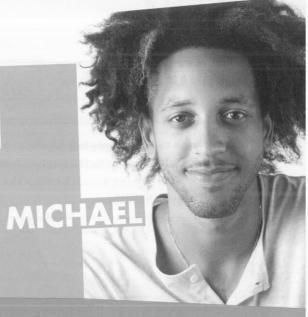


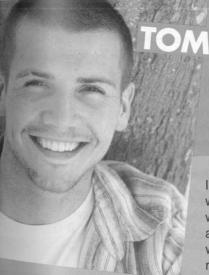
## READING PART 2 TRAINING

What kind of problems can people have when they move away from their home and family for the first time?

## LIFE CHANGE

Our family moved from the country to a big city when I was about 12. It was a difficult time for me. My new school was very big. I didn't know anyone and missed my friends. Our apartment in the city was small and I couldn't sleep because of the loud traffic and other sounds in the street. I hated being there, and felt sad, but then I started skateboarding. I was good at it and it was a way to make friends. After that, life got better.





My parents sent me away to live and study at a school when I was 14. They were worried about me because I didn't study and they thought the new school would make me work more. At first, I was angry with everyone — my parents, the teachers, the whole school! But the teachers were nice. I got interested in nature because the school was in a beautiful place in the country and I began to enjoy science lessons. I also started playing tennis. In the end, I was very happy there.

I lived in the same city until I was 20 and then I went away to university. I chose a university a long way from my parents. It was near the mountains and the sea and I couldn't wait to leave home. But when I got there, I missed my family. It was easy to make new friends, but studying was difficult. I also missed my life in the city – the shops, cinemas and cafés. After a year, I moved to a different university nearer home.



Look at question 1 and underline the key words. Who talks about when he was a teenager? Tom is the only person who talks about when he was a teenager. He says his parents sent him away to school. This means his parents weren't with him.

		Michael	Tom	Eric
7	Which person went to live in a new place without his family when he was a teenager?	A	B	C
2	Which person chose to move to a new place?	A	В	C
3	Which person thought his new home was too noisy?	A	В	C
4	Which person didn't enjoy living away from the city?	A	В	C
5	Which person made friends through sport?	A	В	C

- Work in pairs and tell your partner about a time when you moved to a new place or started a new school or a new job. Answer the questions.
  - When and why did you move?
  - 2 How did you make friends?
  - 3 What did you enjoy doing in the new place?
  - 4 Who and what did you miss?

## GRAMMAR

#### **VERBS + -ING**



## GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE Watch the video



075 Listen to four people talking about how they cheer themselves up (make themselves feel happier) when they are sad or stressed. Number the speakers in the order you hear them.









#### 2 075 Listen again and complete the sentences.

- When I'm sad, I try to find something that will make me laugh. I love \_\_\_\_\_ funny films.

  Before \_\_\_\_\_ down to watch, I make some hot chocolate.
- 2 I always enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ around, and thinking about the game helps me to forget my problems.
- When I want to cheer myself up, I phone a friend.
  I soon stop \_\_\_\_\_ about sad things.
  I always feel better after to them.
- 4 I hate in a dirty, untidy place, so washing up and making everything clean and tidy makes me happy.
- What cheers you up when you are feeling sad or worried? What do you do? Where do you go? Who do you talk to?
- 4 Look at the examples of verb + -ing from Exercise 2 and choose the correct options to complete the rules.

When I'm sad, I **love watching** funny films. **Before sitting** down to watch, I make some hot chocolate.

	We	use	verb	+	-ing
--	----	-----	------	---	------

- 1 Before/After verbs of preference plus some others, e.g. start, finish, stop, suggest.
- 2 After adjectives/prepositions.

#### GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 214

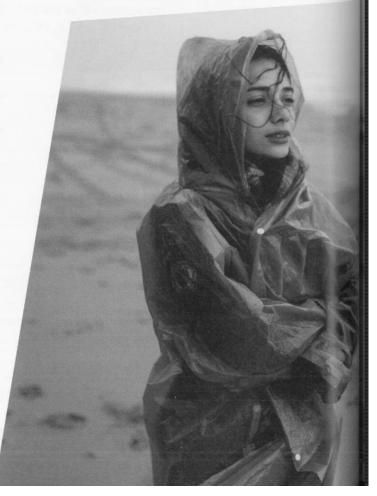
5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

b	pe go play read	revise	visit	
1	I really enjoy as often as possible.	other co	untries.	I go abroad
2	Thank you for	so gene	erous.	
3		111-00-170		I'd like to
4	My parents are talking	about		to America.
5	He is good at			
6	I hate for exa to learn.			ays too much

6 Complete the sentences using the verbs in the box and either to or -ing.

C	arry	go	help	learn	take	watch	
1	A:	Do yo	ou enjoy	,	to the	cinema?	
	B:	Yes, I	love	f	ilms on t	he big scree	en!
2	A:	I real	ly want		the pic	ino.	
						tI	essons
3	A:	Did y	ou ask J	lames		you move h	ouse?
						me boxes fo	

- Work in pairs and ask and answer.
  - Have you ever forgotten to do something important?
  - Have you ever decided to learn a new skill?
  - Where do you hate/enjoy going on holiday?



## LISTENING PART 4 TRAINING

#### 076 Listen to four conversations. How does the main speaker feel? Match the conversations with the feelings.

Conversation 1: Lisa feels ... sad

Conversation 2: Alison's dad feels ... excited

Conversation 3: Jill feels ... worried

Conversation 4: Lara feels ... angry

## 2 076 Listen again and choose the correct

First look at Question 1 and the options and underline the key words. Then listen.

A is wrong because Alfie didn't forget to bring the tablet – he lost it. B is wrong because Lisa says she doesn't care about the present. C is correct because Lisa says she's disappointed because he forgot her party.

- You will hear two friends talking. Why is Lisa angry with Alfie?
  - A He forgot to bring Lisa's tablet back.
  - B He didn't buy Lisa a birthday present.
  - C He didn't go to Lisa's birthday party.
- 2 You will hear a mum and a dad talking about their daughter, Alison. Where's Alison now?
  - A at the cinema
  - B at a pizza restaurant
  - C at a party with friends
- 3 You will hear Jill and Lenny talking about Jill's holiday. What has Jill never done before?
  - A travelled outside her country
  - B gone on holiday without her parents
  - c been in an aeroplane
- 4 You will hear Lara saying goodbye to her friend Tom. What's Tom going to do?
  - A move to a new town
  - B start a new job
  - **C** move to a new house

## PUSH YOURSELF BI

#### GRAMMAR: MORE EXPRESSIONS WITH -ING AND TO

1 Complete the sentences from four conversations with the phrases in the box.

move coming to the beach going to the park study computing visiting Paris getting wet and cold go up the Eiffel Tower getting a good job

- 1 I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ or taking a short walk by the river, but I don't like long walks and you know I can't stand \_\_\_\_
- 2 A: Do you feel like \_\_\_\_\_ this afternoon, it's a beautiful day!
  - B: No thanks it's too hot for me. I can't be bothered to
- 3 A: I'm planning to \_\_\_\_\_ at college.
  - **B:** Well, I'm **keen on** with good money and I think going to university will help me to do this.
- 4 I'm really excited about \_\_\_\_\_\_. I'm hoping to \_\_\_\_\_ and see all the famous places.
- 2 Look at the expressions in bold in Exercise 1. Which are followed by to + infinitive and which are followed by the -ing form?
- 3 Match the phrases with the definitions.
  - 1 If you don't mind doing something
  - 2 If you can't stand doing something
  - 3 If you feel like doing something
  - 4 If you can't be bothered to do something
  - 5 If you're planning to do something
  - 6 If you're keen on doing something
  - 7 If you're excited about doing something
  - 8 If you're hoping to do something
  - a you are looking forward to doing it.
  - b it is your intention to do it.
  - c you are not in the mood for doing it.
  - d you think it is OK to do it.
  - you would like to do it and you think there is a good chance you can do it.
  - f you really hate doing it.
  - a you are in the mood for doing it.
  - h you think it is a good idea to do it.
- 4 Complete the phrases so they are true for you. Tell your partner.
  - 1 I'm really not keen on ...
  - 2 I'm excited about ...
  - 3 In the future, I hope to ...
  - 4 Sometimes, I really can't be bothered to ...

## SPEAKING

#### **GIVING ADVICE**

- Who do you talk to when you have a problem? Do your friends often ask you for advice with their problems?
- 077 Listen to three people telling their friends about a problem they have. Who has a problem:
  - 1 with their friends?
  - 2 with their job?
  - 3 with their studies?







- 077 Listen again. Answer the questions.
  - 1 What is Sara's friend doing that is making her unhappy?
  - 2 Why is Mike tired?
  - 3 Who doesn't Tom get on with? Why?
- © 078 Now listen to Sara, Mike and Tom's friends giving them advice about their problems and answer the questions.

#### Which speaker A, B or C ...

- 1 says that they should stop studying so much.
- 2 says that they should be polite to the rude person.
- 3 says that they should say sorry to their friend and stop worrying about it.

078 Listen again and complete each piece of advice with expressions in the box. You will need to use one of the expressions twice.

it's not a good idea to tell her why don't you you shouldn't you should stop worrying what about try to

that you're sorry that you upset her but there's nothing more you can do.

Then \_\_\_\_ about it.

stop studying so much and take some time to relax before you go to bed.

work on a computer just before you sleep; \_\_\_\_\_ do something different.

talk to a friend about it?

leave your job if you enjoy it!

ask some other people if they feel the same?

asking your boss very politely to change the way she speaks to you?

- Do you agree with the advice? Why?/Why not? What other advice would you give?
- Work in pairs. What advice could you give to these people? Use the expressions in Exercise 5 and the ideas below.
  - join a gym
  - talk to them about it
  - explain why
  - ask them why
  - try other types of activity
  - join some clubs
  - find a hobby to do with other people

I want to be fit and healthy but I hate doing sport.

I share an office with a really untidy person and it's making me very stressed!

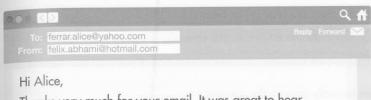
My friend is always talking about me behind my back.

I'm shy and I don't have many friends.

My parents want me to study computers at university, but I want to study languages.

#### GIVING ADVICE

- Have you ever done a language course or other course and lived away from home? Would you like to? What problems did you/could you have?
- Felix is doing a language course. Read his email to Alice, his English friend. Why has he written to her?



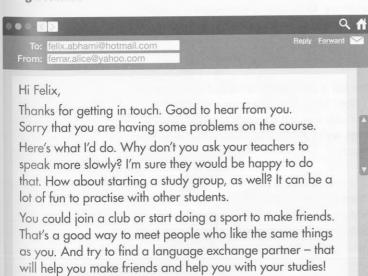
Thanks very much for your email. It was great to hear from you.

I'd like to ask you for some advice. I'm enjoying my English course, but it's very difficult. The lessons are interesting but the teachers talk so fast! I understand things when I can read them but I don't understand when people speak to me.

There's a group of students from my country here, but they stay together and don't speak English, so I don't want to spend too much time with them. How do I make friends with other people? I'm a bit shy and I'm not confident about my English.

What do you think I should do? Hope to hear from you soon. Felix

- Read the email again. What problems does Felix have:
  - 1 with his studies?
  - 2 with making friends and meeting people?
- Read Alice's reply to Felix. What's the best advice that she gives him?

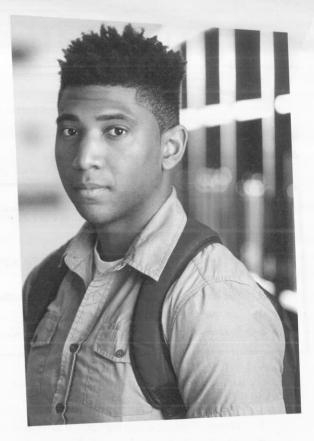


I hope this helps and that you can continue enjoying your

course and getting better at English.

Write soon and good luck!

Alice



#### Find expressions that Felix and Alice use to:

say thank you for an email	1
say they are happy about receiving an email	2
ask for advice (Felix); agree to give advice (Alice)	3
end an email	4

Write a plan for an email giving advice to your friend Pete, who is moving to a new town.

He wants advice about making friends.

Use Alice's email in Exercise 4 as a model. Think of three pieces of advice.

- Write your email. Use the expressions in Exercise 5 to help you. Then, check your partner's work. Does your partner ...
  - begin and end the email with the correct expressions?
  - use correct spelling?
  - give advice for each problem?
  - use correct punctuation?
  - use different advice expressions?
  - use correct grammar?

## EXAM FOCUS

## READING PART 2

#### EXAM CHECK

- 1 Read these sentences about Reading Part 2 and decide if they are true (T) or false (F). Correct the false statements.
  - 7 You read three texts which are all about the same topic.
  - 2 You answer five questions about the texts.
  - 3 You have to decide which text has the information that correctly answers the question.
  - 4 The questions come after the texts.
  - 5 To answer the questions, you choose A, B or C.
- 2 For each question, choose the correct answer.

		Gabriel	Antonio	Peter
7	Who is surprised about the hours that his boss works?	al may A	В	C
2	Who likes it when his boss asks for advice?	A	В	C
3	Who thinks that his boss is good at helping new workers?	A	В	C
4	Who thinks his boss works too hard?	A	В	C
5	Who says his boss is popular with customers?	A	В	C
6	Who has a boss who doesn't mind if workers are late?	A	В	C
7	Who helps his boss with something that she finds difficult?	A	В	С

#### My boss

#### Gabriel

My company sells computers. When I was new here, I wasn't sure about my boss. I thought she was giving me all the boring jobs! But she soon started giving me more interesting and more difficult work. If someone can't get to work on time she never gets angry. Of course, if you've got a meeting with a customer, you have to let her know. We always decide things as a team, and she asks us what we think the company should do, which is great.

#### Antonio

I like my boss at the bank. When people first start here, the job is difficult for them, but she's always happy to explain things and give useful advice. Actually, I don't know how she finds the time. There's so much work, and she doesn't start very early, or finish late. It's amazing how she does it. Our customers like her too and they always ask for meetings with her. They're not happy if someone else goes instead. It's a problem sometimes, as she's so busy.

#### Peter

My company sells furniture. My boss almost never takes time off, and is often in the office until late at night. She should take a break sometimes. Maybe she thinks we won't be able to do the job without her! She's a very nice person, and all the team like her. Sometimes that's a problem, because she's not great at telling people when they're doing something wrong. Usually I offer to do that for her! I don't mind.

## LISTENING PART 4

#### EXAM CHECK

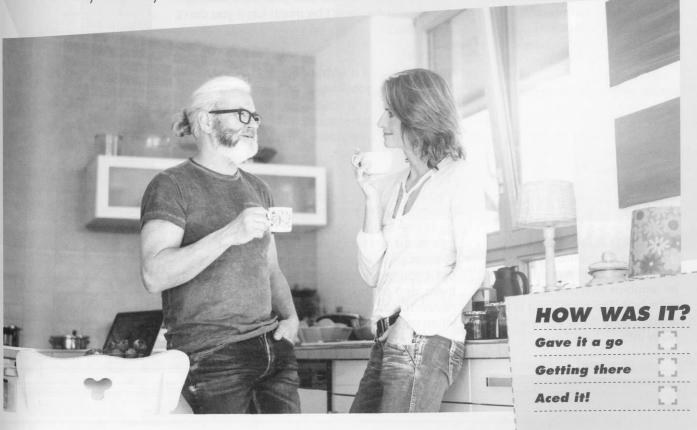
Use numbers between 1 and 5 to complete these sentences about Listening Part 4.

You can use some numbers twice.

In Part 4, you hear 1	short recordings. In	some of the recordings, 2	people
	others you hear only 3	. For each recording, there	e is <sup>4</sup>
question with 5	possible answers. You list	ten to the recordings twice.	

#### 2 079 For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 1 You will hear two friends talking about a restaurant they've been to. What did they like about it?
  - A The food was good.
  - B The prices were cheap.
  - C The staff were nice.
- 2 You will hear a woman telling a friend about her new colleague. What's her new colleague like?
  - A He's lazy.
  - B He's funny.
  - C He's friendly.
- 3 You will hear a woman leaving a message for her husband. What does she want him to do?
  - A prepare dinner
  - B get some shopping
  - C collect her from work
- 4 You will hear two friends talking about an exhibition. How does the man know about it?
  - A The artist is a friend of his.
  - B He saw posters in the street.
  - C His brother works at the museum.
- 5 You will hear a man giving a message to passengers at a train station. Why is he giving them the message?
  - A Their trains are going to arrive late.
  - B Some of them can get money back.
  - C They need to buy tickets online.



## REAL WORLD

# MEETING PEOPLE IN ... MELBOURNE

Look at the photos (A-D) of places in Melbourne. What do you know about Australia and Melbourne? How do you think you can find friends in a new city? Read the text about Melbourne and compare your ideas.



## Life in Melbourne

Home

About

Profile

Browse groups

Q Search

It can be difficult to make friends in a big city. You can be surrounded by thousands of people, but still feel lonely and on your own. Try these ideas to meet new people and if you're lucky, you'll make some good friends.



Make sure you accept party invitations, but only from people you have met. Remember, there are thousands of other people out there who want to meet people like you! But remember to stay safe and always go to new places with a group of people.

#### Courses

Enrol on a course you're interested in – like an evening class at the college near you. You'll learn something new and it's a good way to meet people you have a lot in common with.

Take up a hobby

There are thousands of hobbies to choose, from yoga and art to an aerobics exercise class or volleyball. The main thing is to choose something you are really into.

#### Volunteer work

This can be a great way to meet people. Choose work that interests you. Volunteering at the local zoo won't be much fun if you don't like animals!

#### Travel

You might think it's strange, but leaving the city can be a good way to make friends. Tours and backpacker's hostels can be great places to meet people because people who are travelling are often more interested in meeting new people.

#### The internet

There are lots of groups on the internet where you can find friends, for example people who go to the cinema together, or people who are interested in a sport. Remember it takes time

to meet people and find out if you get on well with them, and of course, remember to stay safe when you're meeting people online.





- Read the text again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
  - The writer says you should always accept invitations to
  - If you choose a course you are interested in, you might meet people who like the same things as you.
  - It is more difficult to find friends outside the city.
  - You can often find friends quickly online.
- 3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

get on well enro get to make take up have a lot

- When you friends, you meet people and become friends.
- on a course, you start to do it. When you
- in common with someone, you like the If you same things.
- a new hobby, you start doing it. If you
- know someone, you meet them and If you start to know them.
- with someone, you like them and are friends with them.
- **a** 080 Listen to three conversations. What are the people doing? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.
  - getting information about joining a club
  - asking about volunteering
  - organising a party together
  - enrolling on a course
- 5 080 Complete the phrases with the correct words. Listen again and check.

as a volunteer book have to be give me interested in OK if to enrol

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE**

- Is it possible to work here S I come to the centre this afternoon? the photography course. Can you some information about it, please?
- I'd like on the course, please. 4
- a member of the club? 5 Do you
- How can I a court?

Choose the correct definitions for these informal words and phrases.

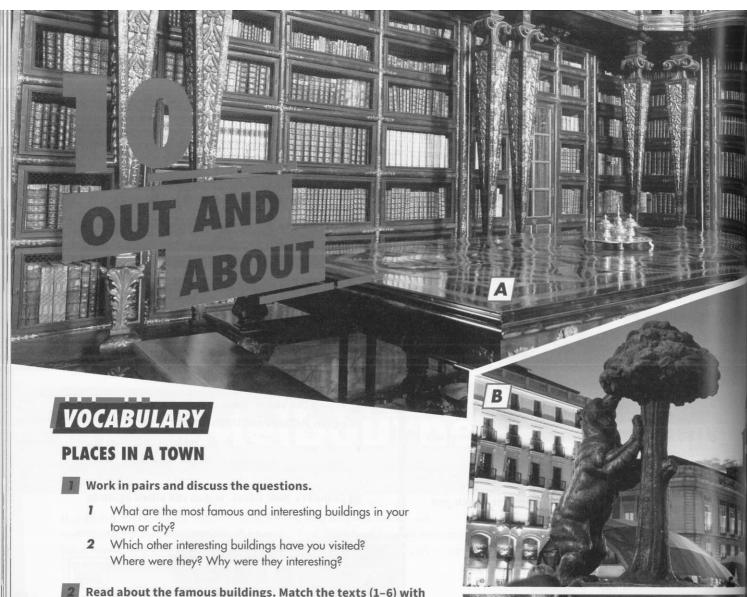
#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR**

- You'd need to drop in here.
- Then we can take it from there.
- I'll just have to take some details from you.
- That's all in order.
- You'd be better off joining.
- It doesn't make sense for you to pay to become a member.
- We will decide what to do next.
- I need to write down your name, address, etc.
- It isn't a good idea for you to join the club.
- It would be cheaper for you to become a member of the club.
- That's fine.
- You must come into the office.
- Match the video. What do you learn about these things in Melbourne? Make notes.
  - the city
- sport
- beaches and surfing
- Phillip Island
- Compare your notes. Watch the video again to check your ideas.



EMOTIONAL SKILLS AND DESCRIBING YOUR **OWN CULTURE** 

9 Work in groups. Imagine that someone your age has just arrived in your town or city. Think about what their interests might be, then make an information pack for them. Suggest three ways that they can meet people and make friends. Share your ideas with another group.



#### Read about the famous buildings. Match the texts (1-6) with the photos (A-F).

- The Bolshoi theatre is a famous theatre in Moscow in Russia. You can see ballet and opera performances there.
- 2 The Joanina Library is part of the library of the University of Coimbra in Portugal. It's 300 years old and has more than 250,000 books.
- Puerta del Sol is a busy square in the centre of Madrid in Spain. There's a famous statue there of a bear under a tree and this is a popular meeting point.
- The Tivoli Fountains are in the gardens of the Villa d'Este in Rome in Italy. 875 metres of canals bring water to its 51 fountains.
- 5 Wembley Stadium is very big, modern football stadium in London, England. You can see football matches there and also concerts. Lots of famous bands have performed there.
- Chapultepec Castle is in the middle of Chapultepec Park in Mexico City. The building is more than 300 years old and is the home of the Mexican National History Museum.

#### 3 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- Think of examples of the following in your country.
  - a famous castle
- a beautiful fountain



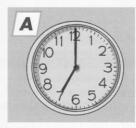


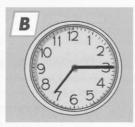
## LISTENING PART 1 TRAINING

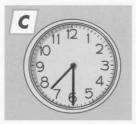
081 You are going to hear four conversations about places in town. First look at question 1 and the pictures and underline the key words. Then listen.

At first Emma thinks the play starts at 7.00. Then she checks the tickets and sees it begins at 7.30. They discuss meeting at 7.15, but then they decide it's better to meet at 7.00 (to give them more time), so the correct answer is C.

1 What time does the play begin tonight?







- 2 082 Now listen to the other three conversations and choose the correct answers.
  - 2 How far away is the best sports centre?







3 What are Carl and Jack going to see at the stadium?







4 Where will the friends meet?







## READING

- What famous parks are there in your country?
  Where are they? Have you visited them?
  What can you see and do in them?
- Read about the High Line and the Lowline.
  - 1 Which part of New York are they in?
  - 2 What are they and what is unusual about them?

## THE HIGH LINE

The High Line was a **railway line** that ran above the streets of the **district** of Manhattan in New York. The line closed in 1980 and nobody used the land for a long time. Grass and other plants started growing there and in 2004, the City of New York decided to turn this space into a park. They planted flowers and trees and put in **benches** for people to sit on. Today, the High Line is a 2.33-kilometre-long green **path** across the city. Because it's high up in the air, there's a great view. It's a place where you can see the sky and enjoy the **fresh air** right in the **middle** of Manhattan.



#### 3 Read the texts again and answer the questions.

- 1 What was the High Line before it became a park?
- 2 What happened in 1980?
- 3 How long is the High Line park?
- 4 What can you see when you walk along the High Line?
- 5 What is the Lowline like right now?
- 6 How will scientists grow plants and flowers underground?

#### 4 Complete the sentences with the pink words from the text.

1	Α	is a place for trains to run on.
2	There are	in the garden where people can sit dow
3	Α	is an area of a city.
4	There is mo	
	the sea tho	n in the city because the air is cleaner.
5	A	is a place for people to walk along.
6	The	is in the centre of something.

A \_\_\_\_\_ is an empty area that can be used.

Plants and trees need water and \_\_\_\_\_ to grow.

### THE LOWLINE

The Lowline is a project for another park in Manhattan that may happen in the future. At the moment, it's a big, empty space under the city, which might become the world's first underground park! The space used to be the Williamsburg bus station, which closed in 1948. Scientists have found a special way to use technology to bring sunlight underground so plants and flowers can grow there. The project will be very expensive but the City of New York hopes it will be popular with New Yorkers.

#### Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- 1 Have you ever been to New York? Would you like to go?
- 2 What kind of park would you like there to be in your town?
- Where would be a good place for a new park in your town?

#### **DID YOU KNOW?**

In the USA, the part of the street where there are no cars and people can walk is called the **sidewalk** and an underground train system is called a **subway**.

In the UK, people walk on a **pavement** and if they want to catch an underground train they take the **underground** or in London, it's called the **Tube**.

## GRAMMAR WILL/MAY/MIGHT



#### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE

Watch the video



Look at the examples from the text and choose the correct options to complete the rules.

The Lowline is a project that may happen in the future. It might become the world's first underground park! The project will be very expensive.

- We use will/won't, may/may not and might/mightn't to talk about the future/the past/the present.
- We use will when we are not sure/sure about something.
- 3 We use may and might when we are not sure/sure about
- 4 We use the infinitive/present tense of the verb after will, may and might.

#### Positive and negative

will/'ll

will not/won't

subject +

OU

may

may not

might

might not/mightn't

#### Questions and short answers

Will/May/Might + subject ... ?

subject + will/may/might.

subject + won't/may not/might not.

#### GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 216

#### Choose the correct options to complete the sentences.

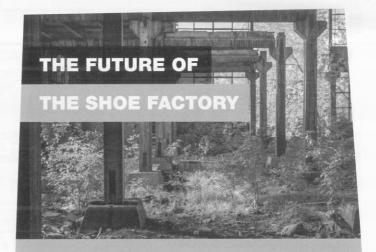
- The park might/will open in January, but I think it will be delayed.
- 2 If you post the letter today, I'm certain it will/might arrive by Thursday.
- 3 It may/will be the tallest statue in world, but I'm not sure.
- Don't invite him to the gig: I know he won't/mightn't come. He hates that kind of music.

#### Complete the sentences with the correct form of will, may or might and the verb in brackets.

- to the park with us this afternoon. He hasn't decided yet. (come)
- There's not enough light here. Those plants . It's just not possible. (not grow)
- 3 We don't know what to do with this space. it into a park. (turn)
- We're not sure how much money we have. There enough. (not be)

#### Read the newspaper article and answer the questions.

- What was this place in the past?
- What is it now?
- What do you think might happen to it?



The old shoe factory in the city centre closed 20 years ago. Nobody has used the building since then and the area has become a green space. Now that Mr Smith, the owner, has died, the city owns the factory and needs to decide what to do with it.

#### Read about two people. How do you think they might use the land?



Mr Jones is a businessman. He wants to buy the land. Mr Jones might ...



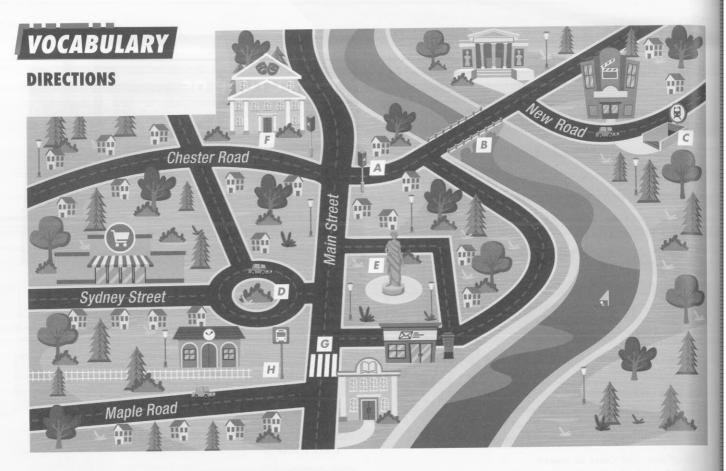
Mrs Greene works for the city. She wants to keep the land. Mrs Greene may ...

#### 083 Listen to the people talking and find out if you were right. For each person:

- Write one sentence about what they say will and won't happen.
- Write one or two sentences about what they say may/might happen.

#### Work in pairs and compare your sentences.

- Did you write the same things? Which do you think is the best idea?
- Imagine you have bought the land. What ideas do you have for what you will/may/might do with it?



- Read the sentences then look at the town map and match the letters (A-H) with the words in bold.
  - 1 The statue is in the middle of the square.
  - 2 There are traffic lights on Chester Road.
  - 3 There's a crossing on Main Street.
  - 4 There's a roundabout at the end of Sydney Street in front of the square.
  - 5 You have to go over the bridge to get to the museum.
  - 6 There's a bus stop on Maple Road near the station.
  - 7 There's an underground station outside the cinema.
  - 8 The theatre is on the **corner** between Chester Road and Main Street.
- 084 Matias has just arrived in town and has asked for directions. He's at the library. Listen and number the sentences below in the order you hear them.
  - Go over the bridge and go straight on.
  - Come out of the library and turn right.
  - Go straight on down the main street.
  - ☐ Take the first turning on the right into New Road.
  - You'll see it on your left.
  - ☐ Turn right at the traffic lights into Chester Road.
- 3 084 Listen again and follow the directions on the map. Where is he at the end?
- 085 Matias is now at the railway station. Listen, look at the map and follow the directions. Where is he?
  - 2

- 5 086 Match the beginnings of these phrases for asking for directions with the correct endings (a-d). Listen and check your answers.
  - 1 Excuse me. Do you know where
  - 2 Can you tell me how to
  - 3 Excuse me. Could you give me
  - 4 Could you tell
- a me where the museum is?
- **b** directions to the town square?
- c the station is?
- **d** get to the library?
- 086 Listen to the sentences in Exercise 5 again.
  Notice the intonation. Add arrows to show if the phrases have:
- **P** 086 Listen and repeat.
- **8** Work in pairs. Take turns to ask for and give directions to these places using the correct intonation.

Start from the underground station on the map.

- the cinema
- the library
- the main square
- the park

## SPEAKING PART 1

TRAINING

#### Think about these questions.

- What's your home town or village?
- Where is it?
- What's interesting or special about it?

## Match the examiner's questions (1-6) about a candidate's home town with their answers (a-f).

- 1 Where is your town?
- 2 What do you think is the most interesting building in your town?
- 3 Where is the best place to go shopping in your town?
- 4 What do you like doing in your town in your free time?
- 5 How often do you go to the park in your town?
- 6 How do people travel around in your town?
- a There's a big mall by the station, but I actually prefer the shops in the town centre.
- **b** Maybe about once a week. I go there with my friends to go skateboarding.
- Most students take the bus or travel by bike, but there are also a lot of cars in my town.
- d It's in the north of the country, by the sea.
- There's a very good sports centre, and I like going there to do a gym class or go swimming.
- The theatre is the most interesting building. It's probably about 500 years old.

#### Work in pairs and take turns to ask and answer about your home town using the questions above.

um is?

ain.

1/ 50

tions

- 4 © 087 The examiner will also ask you some questions like the ones below. Listen to a candidate answering the questions and decide which order she is answering the questions.
  - Please tell me something about where you would like to live in the future.
  - 2 Please tell me something about the street where you live.
  - 3 Please tell me something about the last time you went out in your town with your friends.
- 5 Make notes for your answers to the questions in Exercise 4. Then ask and answer.

## PUSH YOURSELF BI

#### **VOCABULARY: CITY WORDS**

Read the texts about two famous cities. Which city would you prefer to live in? Why?



Hong Kong is famous for its skyscrapers – especially the tall office buildings in the historic Central district. Seven million people live there, so it's good that there's an excellent public transport system with lots of trams, buses, ferries and a great subway. It's a very busy city but there are some traffic-free areas like Victoria Peak – a tree-covered mountain that's fun to climb.

There are 3.9 million people living in Los Angeles and most of them have a car! It isn't a good city for **pedestrians** because there are places where there are no **pavements** for them to walk on. So you need to have a car if you live here. Unfortunately, because there are so many cars, there are a lot of **traffic jams** and the air can get very **polluted**.

2	Complete the sentences with the words in purple
_	from the text

1	If	in the city becomes cheaper, people will
	use the	buses more and there won't be so many cars.

- 2 The water in the river is very \_\_\_\_ and all the fish are dead.
- 3 Next year, people won't be able to drive in the city centre on foot: it will be \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 I don't think I would like to live high up in a \_\_\_\_\_\_
  I don't like lifts!
- I was late for work because I spent an hour sitting in my car in a \_\_\_\_\_.
  A \_\_\_\_ stepped in front of my bike and I hit him.
- Luckily, he wasn't hurt.

  7 Tell the children to stay on the \_\_\_\_\_ and not to
- walk in the road.

  8 We must look after \_\_\_\_\_ buildings because they help us remember the past.





## GRAMMAR

#### WILL/SHALL FOR OFFERS AND PROMISES



#### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE

Watch the video



Label the photos with the words in the box.

bank police station post office restaurant

088 Listen to three conversations. Where are the speakers?

conversation 2 conversation 3

- 088 Answer the questions. Listen again to check.
  - 1 How much money does the woman want to change?
  - 2 Does the woman in the restaurant want a dessert? What does she order?
  - 3 Where does the man want to send the letter?
- 4 Look at the examples and choose the best options to complete the rules about will and shall.

**Shall I** bring the dessert menu? **I'll** put the letter straight in the post bag.

- 1 We use will/shall to make a promise or to announce that we have decided to do something.
- 2 We use will/shall to make suggestions and offers.

#### Will

subject + 'Il help them with their bags./
'Il get you a drink.

won't ever tell anyone./ won't do that again.

#### Shall

**Shall I/We** carry that for you?/start now? Note: We only use **shall** in the first person.

**⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE** / page 216





- 5 Choose the correct options to complete the sentences.
  - 1 Shall I/Will I wait for you after the lesson?
  - 2 Your suitcase looks heavy. I shall/'ll carry it.
  - 3 It's late. Shall/Will we go to bed?
  - 4 Sit down and I 11/shall make you a cup of tea.
- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of will/ shall and the verbs given.
  - 1 It's nearly two o clock; \_\_\_\_lunch now? (have)
  - 2 He \_\_\_\_ us the exam results as soon as he knows them. (tell)
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_ you some money for your train ticket? (give)
  - 4 | you this evening before eight. (phone)
- Work in pairs. Take turns to make offers and promises in these situations.
  - The two bags your friend is carrying look very heavy. (offers with I)
  - It's a hot day and your friend has arrived at your house. (offers with 1)
  - Your friend has given you an important message to give to her teacher. (promise)
  - You are at a party with your friend; it's late and you're tired. (suggestions with we)



#### A THANK YOU EMAIL

- Look at the photo. Have you ever visited Paris?
  What did you see and do? What would you like to
  see and do if you visit Paris in the future?
- Read the email and answer the questions.
  - Why has Aylin written to Julie?
  - 2 Find three things Aylin did in Paris.
  - 3 What was her favourite moment and why?
  - 4 What does Aylin hope Julie will do?
  - 5 What is Aylin looking forward to?
  - 6 Who does Aylin want Julie to say 'hi' to?



I just wanted to thank you for taking me to visit Paris last week. I had a great time!

I loved visiting the Louvre, as it's the biggest museum I've ever visited. I also really enjoyed the boat trip on the river Seine. But my favourite moment was when we went up the Eiffel Tower. I'll never forget seeing that fantastic view of Paris! I hope you can come to visit me in Istanbul soon. I'm looking forward to showing you my favourite places.

Say hello to your friends Marie and Lilou from me. It was great to meet them.

Lots of love,

will/

ows

iin

IVY.

ou're

3 Find seven phrases Aylin uses to talk about her experiences in Paris in a positive way.

I had a great time!

New York

Now use the phrases in Exercise 3 to complete the sentences below.

Say hello to your parents.	It was
l l	visiting the old town.
It was lovely.	
I think that was my	of the trip so far
It was the best water park	
	eing the mountains for the first
time.	sing incomments as as
Thank you for our trip to t	
	them.  I twas lovely.  I think that was my It was the best water park  I'll see time.

the Empire State Building in

You are going to write an email to a friend to thank them for a visit to their town. Plan what to write.
Use the model in Exercise 2 to help you.

**Paragraph 1:** Explain why you are writing. Mention something you did and why you liked it.

**Paragraph 2:** Say what your favourite moment of the trip was.

**Paragraph 3:** Write about something you did on the trip that you will never forget. Write about something you visited that was the best/biggest you've ever visited.

**Paragraph 4:** End the message. Talk about when you hope to see your friend again.

Write your email. When you have finished, exchange with a partner and check each other's writing.

## EXAM FOCUS

## LISTENING PART 1

#### EXAM CHECK

- 1 Read these sentences about Listening Part 1, and decide if they are true (T) or false (F). Correct the false statements.
  - 1 You hear five long recordings in Listening Part 1.
  - 2 To answer a question, you choose one answer from four options.
  - 3 You hear each recording twice.
  - 4 Numbers are sometimes tested in this part of the test.
  - 5 In some of the recordings there is only one person speaking.

#### 2 @ 089 For each question, choose the correct answer.

1 Where did Chris go yesterday?







2 What is the woman looking for?







3 What is broken in the woman's house?







4 Why will the man stay at home this evening?







5 How did the woman find out about the job?







## SPEAKING PART 1

#### EXAM CHECK

1	Complete this information abo	ut Speaking Part 1,	using some of the	words in the box.

four know live tell three two understand

At the beginning of Speaking Part 1, the examiner will ask you your name, age, and where you 1. Then the examiner will say which topic you are going to talk about, for example, shopping, or music. The examiner will ask each candidate 2 questions about this topic. After this, the examiner will ask candidate A an extended question, starting with the words 'Please 3 me something about ...' After this, they will do the same again with a new topic. This time, candidate B will answer the extended question. If you don't 4 a question, the examiner will help by asking the question in another way. For the extended question, you should try to give 5 pieces of information.

Work in pairs. One of you is the examiner, and asks these questions. The other person answers the questions.

What's your name? Where do you live?

- 3 Work in pairs. One of you is the examiner, and asks these questions about the place where you live. The other person answers the questions.
  - 1 Who do you live with? (Do you live with your family?)
  - 2 What type of building do you live in? (Do you live in an apartment building?)
- 4 Change roles. The person who answered the questions before is now the examiner.
  - 1 How long have you lived in your home? (Have you lived in your home for two years?)
  - 2 What can you see from your windows? (Can you see houses from your windows?)
- 5 Change roles again. The person who answered the questions before is now the examiner.

Now, please tell me something about the street where you live.

- 1 Are there shops on your street?
- 2 Is there a lot of traffic on your street?
- 3 Do you know other people who live on your street?
- SPEAKING BANK / page 240.

HOW WAS	IT?
Gave it a go	F 7
	m m
Getting there	la al
Aced it!	-

## **REAL WORLD**

# IN ... ROME



- What's your favourite city? Which other cities would you like to visit? Why?
- Work in pairs. Look at the photos (A-C) of Rome.
  Do you know these places? Discuss the questions,
  then read the text about Rome and check your
  answers.
  - 1 What do you think happened in the Colosseum?
  - 2 What do you think visitors throw in the fountain?
  - 3 What kind of things did Leonardo da Vinci design?
- 3 Find the phrases in the text and choose the correct definitions.
  - 1 open-air theatre

attenes.

- a a free theatre
- **b** a theatre with no roof
- 2 a must for any visitor
  - a something that all visitors should see
  - **b** a place where not many visitors go
- 3 top tourist attractions
  - a places that not many tourists visit
  - **b** places that are most popular with tourists
- 4 well worth a visit
  - a you should go here
  - b you shouldn't go here
- 4 Read the reviews of the Colosseum. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
  - 1 You should buy your tickets before your visit.
  - 2 It's better to go in the mornings.
  - 3 The weather is often cold.
  - 4 You can't visit the site when it's dark.
  - 5 It's better not to visit at popular times of the year.



• Home • Travel • Food • Lastest news

#### WHEN IN ROME

There are hundreds of places to visit in Rome. Here are a few that you should definitely see.

The Colosseum is on everyone's list of sites to see in Rome. In this open-air theatre in ancient Rome, gladiators and other people fought wild animals or other fighters, while crowds watched and cheered. It is a must for any visitor to Rome.

The Trevi Fountain is one of Rome's top tourist attractions. It is covered with wonderful statues of ancient stories and strange creatures and is a lovely place to enjoy a coffee. Tourists throw money into the water, because they believe that if they do this they will come back to Rome one day.

The Leonardo da Vinci Museum is a fantastic, small museum and well worth a visit. Learn all about the life of the famous artist and look at some of his ideas, including his plans for flying machines. Although Leonardo da Vinci lived and worked over 500 years ago, the ideas of this amazing artist and scientist have changed all our lives.

### Visit the Colosseum, Rome

Buy your tickets online before you go. Arrive early to beat the queues. Get a video guide – it explains everything!

**◎◎◎◎**○ Visit Rome to learn about ancient Roman civilisation.

If you go in summer, remember to wear comfortable clothes because it can get very hot. Take plenty of water with you.

**◎ ◎ ◎ ◎ It's a good idea to take a tour.** 

We had a guide who told us all about the history of the site. Visit during the day and also at night – it's beautiful!

**◎ ◎ ◎ ◎ © © Everyone should see this amazing monument!** 

Visit out of season if possible. We visited in December and it was very quiet – and no lines at the ticket office.

**◎ ◎ ◎ ○** So interesting!

We spent two hours here and still didn't see everything. This is definitely a must when you visit Rome!

Read the reviews again. Complete the phrases with the correct words.

video guide early queues your tickets visit

- online. Buy
- Get a
- Arrive
- Beat the
- out of season.
- 👩 🚳 090 Listen to three conversations. What are the people doing? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.
  - going into a museum
  - watching a video guide
  - taking a tour of the Colosseum
  - visiting the Trevi Fountain
- 090 Complete the phrases with the correct words. Listen again and check.

is it OK are you everyone says is there what time

#### PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE

travelling? it's beautiful. a discount for students? to take photos? does the museum close? Choose the correct definitions for these informal words and phrases.

#### PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR

- They reckon between 50,000 and 80,000.
  - They think there were ...
  - They know for certain that there were ...
- There's no flash photography.
  - You can't take photos that use a bright light from your camera.
  - Please use the bright light on your camera to take photos.
- You're holding other people up.
  - a You are waiting for other people to move.
  - Other people are waiting for you to move.
- We ask you to leave promptly.
  - You must leave quickly when the museum closes.
  - When the museum closes, someone will ask you to leave.
- You can't miss it.
  - a You must go there. b You can see it easily.
- Watch the video. What do you learn about these things in Rome? Make notes.
  - the Colosseum
- the Trevi Fountain
- the Circus Maximus
- the Piazza Navona
- 10 Compare your notes. Watch the video again to check your ideas.



#### STUDY SKILLS AND LEARNING TO LEARN

11 Work in pairs and choose an important site you would like to visit in another city. Read some reviews by people who visited the site. Write a booklet with some information about it and some advice for tourists who want to visit it. Share your ideas with the class.



### READING

#### **MONEY AND ME**

- 1 Work in pairs and discuss the questions. Match the questions (1-4) with the photos (A-D).
  - 1 What do you like **spending** money on?
  - 2 Are you saving money at the moment to buy or do something special?
  - 3 Do you ever lend money to friends? Why?/Why not?
  - 4 Have you ever wasted money on anything?

#### 1 The saver

I love saving money and I think I'm very good at it! When I'm shopping, I always look Rani for reduced items things that the shop is selling for a lower price. If it's possible to get a discount on something, for example, 10% off, I always try to do this. The only thing I spend a lot of money on is tech - my pc, smartphone, tablet, etc. I always have a good computer and a new phone: I work from home and I need good equipment. I don't like lending money to people and I never borrow



Money isn't important to me, but I also don't earn much in my job, so I have to be careful how I spend it! I go everywhere by bike or public transport as this costs less than having a car. I buy most of my clothes in sales and I still get lots of nice things, but for better prices! I love upcycling because I hate wasting things, so I often go to fleamarkets at weekends to see if I can find old things to make into something new. It's fun and it saves money.

2 The upcycler



Carola

3 The spender

I earn a good salary but I spend it all. I'm not very David good at saving money. I enjoy being generous and buying people presents. If I go for a coffee or dinner with a friend, I often pay the bill. I also love buying clothes and shoes, especially trainers. I have 15 pairs! If I want something, I don't check the price, I just buy it. Because I never keep the receipts for things I've bought, I'm never sure how much money I've spent!

#### 2 Read the texts. Which person:

any, not even from the bank!

- doesn't have much money?
- spends money on technology?
- earns quite a lot of money?

#### 3 Read the texts again and find the answers to these questions.

- Find two ways in which Rani saves money.
- What does Carola like doing, which saves money?
- 3 Why does David never know how much money he has spent?





## VOCABULARY

#### SPENDING AND SAVING

- 1 Look at the words in blue in the texts. Match the definitions with a word.
  - 1 This is money you get every month for doing your job.
  - 2 This is when a shop lowers the price of something, e.g. by 10%.
  - 3 This is a piece of paper you get when you pay for something in a shop.
  - 4 This is a special time when a shop sells some things at a lower price.
  - 5 This is a piece of paper you get at the end of a meal in a restaurant.
  - 6 These are things that cost less than they did before.
- 2 Now look at the underlined words in the text. These verbs are all about money. Read the sentences and choose the correct answer.
  - 1 The price of an item is how much it costs/pays.
  - 2 Jack would like to go to New York, so he's lending/ saving all his money for the trip.
  - 3 They *lend/waste* a lot of money buying expensive clothes that they never wear.
  - 4 My brother spent/saved all his money on a really expensive computer.
  - 5 | asked my friend to borrow/lend me two euros so | could buy a coffee.
  - 6 I don't earn/pay as much as my sister she has a really big salary.

- 3 Complete the dialogues using the correct form of some of the words from Exercises 1 and 2.
  - 1 A: Can I <sup>1</sup> fifty euros? There's a jacket
    I want in the <sup>2</sup> . There's a 50%

    3 , so the price is really good. I'll give it back to you tomorrow.
    - **B:** That's what you always say! I <sup>4</sup> you money all the time, but you never pay me back.
  - 2 A: I went to the new Mexican restaurant today.
    - **B:** Really? That's expensive. How much did that 5 ?
    - **A:** I don't know. The waiter brought the <sup>6</sup> and my friend <sup>7</sup> for it all.
  - 3 A: How much money do you 8 , Sandra?
    - B: Not very much. I don't have a big 9.
      I'd like to buy a new car, but it's difficult for me to 10 the money.
- 4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions below.
  - 1 Have you ever saved up for anything?
  - 2 Have you ever bought anything at a discount or in a sale?
  - 3 Do you usually pay the bill in a restaurant?

I bought some great trainers in a sale.
Unfortunately, they're a bit too small for me.

#### **DID YOU KNOW?**

UNIT 11

In the UK, people use **coins** and **notes** to pay for things in cash. In the US, people use **coins** and **bills**.

In the UK, people ask for the **bill** when they want to pay in a restaurant, but in the US they ask for the **check**.

avid

ill.

ce.

ver

ions.

## LISTENING

#### AKING PLANS

1 Do you use a calendar? What kind of things do you use it for?





#### Marta's calendar

#### 11.30 am:

- meet Cara at department store - go shopping for summer clothes
- · Look for birthday present for Mum! (garden centre)

dinner Milo's restaurant

#### Josh's calendar

#### 2.00 pm:

· bus to town - buy food and drink for the party

#### 2.30 pm:

· meet Jez at the supermarket - collect drums from music shop after shopping (take taxi?)

#### 7.00 pm:

- · party starts!
- 2 Look at the two calendars and read about Marta's and Josh's plans for Saturday.
  - Which two shops is each person going to?
  - What do they plan to buy?
  - What are their plans for Saturday evening?
- 3 @ 091 Listen to Marta and Josh talking about their plans.
  - Why is Marta going to the garden centre?
  - What kind of party is Josh going to?
- 4 091 Listen again and choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.
  - Marta wants to go to the department store to
    - a buy a dress.
- **b** try on a dress.
- She hopes that the dress she likes will be
  - the right colour.
- b the right size.
- 3 She doesn't like
  - a the changing rooms at Darby's.
  - **b** the shop assistants at Darby's.
- Josh is going to pay for his shopping
  - by card.
- b in cash.
- He mustn't forget to ask for
  - cash from Alfie's friends to pay for the shopping.
  - **b** a receipt for the shopping.
- He needs to give Alfie's dad
  - a his change from £50.
  - **b** £50 to pay for a taxi.

## VOCABULARY

#### **SHOPPING**

1 🙆 091 Listen again to Marta and Josh and complete the sentences from the audio using

	y card change changing room in cash nop assistants size till try (it) on
1	I'm going to in the shop if they have in my
2	I don't like the there because it's always busy, but the are really nice.
3	I'm going to pay for everything and I mustn't forget to ask for a receipt at the
4	Alfie's dad gave me £50 to pay for taxi.
5	I must remember to give him the
	mplete the texts about shopping with the ords in Exercise 1.

what looks good on you, ask a 4

to help.

your 7

with them and pay 5

everything. I prefer to pay 6

#### 3 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

Do you usually pay for things by card or in cash? Why?

for advice. They are usually happy

These days, most people don't carry a lot of money

the supermarket because it helps me not to buy too

much. However, paying by contactless card is still

the quickest way to pay - you don't have to wait for when you get to the 8

- Do you sometimes buy clothes without trying them on? Why?/Why not?
- Do you like shop assistants talking to you when you are shopping? Why?/Why not?

## GRAMMAR

ng

ave it

ce ind

or a

eet

ney

too

for

ig

#### THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS FOR FIXED PLANS

#### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE Watch the video



1 Look at the examples. Do they talk about the present or the future? Complete the rule.

We're meeting in front of Darby's, the big department store. I'm taking the 2 o'clock bus into town.

We use the present continuous to talk about fixed/less certain plans for the future.

#### GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 219

2 Complete the dialogue about Laura's holiday plans using the verbs in brackets.

Laura:	My friend Jenny and I <sup>1</sup> (go) on a tour of Italy in the middle of July. I can't wait! We <sup>2</sup> (visit) Rome, Florence and Venice in the first week, but we aren't going to spend all our time in cities. In the second week, we <sup>3</sup> (travel) to the coast and we <sup>4</sup> (stay) in a hotel near the beach.
Lily:	When <sup>5</sup> you ? (leave)
Laura:	We 6 (fly) to Rome on 15th July and we 7 (come) back on the 30th. We 8 (not stay) in a hotel in Rome, though. Our friend Giacomo 9 (meet) us at the airport and we 10 (go) to his parents' house for the weekend. They 11 (take) us to the theatre on Saturday evening.
Lily:	That all sounds great.



#### Monday

12.30 - meet Sam for lunch (Reno's café)

7.00 pm - football practice leisure centre

9.00 am - dentist appointment

Guitar lesson 6.30 pm

Day off! No work. Go running in the park with Liz in the morning

#### Saturday

afternoon - shopping with Pete



3 Look at Ben's diary for next week and write five sentences about his plans.

On Monday he's meeting Sam for lunch. They're going to Reno's café.

- 4 Work in pairs and tell your partner about some fixed plans you have for:
  - this evening
- next weekend
- your next holiday
- tomorrow

#### THE PRESENT SIMPLE FOR SCHEDULES AND **TIMETABLES**

5 Look at the examples and complete the rule.

The restaurant opens at 7.00 pm. The bus to town leaves at 2.00 pm. Football practice begins at 7.00 pm.

We use the present simple to talk about something that will happen in the future according to a schedule or timetable/fixed personal plans.

#### → GRAMMAR REFERENCE | page 219

- 6 Look at these sentences about fixed plans and schedules and choose the correct answer.
  - The sports centre closes/is closing at 9 pm on Saturdays.
  - She has/is having dinner in town with friends this evenina.
  - The last train is leaving/leaves the station at midnight.
  - He is visiting/visits his brother next weekend.
  - We're meeting/meet in front of the theatre at six. The play starts/is starting at 6.15, so don't be late!
- Complete the sentences with the present simple or present continuous.

The flight	at	12.30	from	termina	В.	(leave)
------------	----	-------	------	---------	----	---------

- on holiday next week. (go)
- in Berlin in February. (end) The band's tour
- Dan outside the cinema this evening at half past seven. (meet)

## LISTENING PART 5 TRAINING

What kind of clothes do you think you can buy in these shops?

clothes shop department store market supermarket

2 @ 092 For each question, choose the correct answer.

You will hear Paula asking her friend Maria for advice about shopping for clothes. What clothes does Maria say Paula should buy from each place?

Listen to the first part of the audio.

**Example:** supermarket **E** swimsuit

Paula says there weren't any sun hats at the supermarket, but there are lots of swimsuits.

3 © 093 For each question (1-4), choose the correct answer.

#### Places to shop

- 1 clothes shop
- 2 department store
- 3 market
- 4 clothes website

#### Clothes

- 4 dress
- **B** pair of shorts
- C socks
- **D** sun hat
- **E** swimsuit
- F T-shirt
- **G** trainers

## GRAMMAR

**GOING TO** 



GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE

Watch the video



1 Look at the examples. Do the sentences talk about the present or future? Complete the rule.

I'm going to buy some new clothes for my holiday. I'm going to get one for myself.

We use **be going to** + verb to talk about *definite plans/our* intentions.



- **2** Complete the sentences and questions with *going* to and the verbs in brackets.
  - After lunch, he (go shopping).
  - 2 Gemma can't drive. When \_\_\_\_ (learn)?
  - 3 How \_\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (get) to the party tomorrow?
  - 4 I (not/walk). It's too far.
  - 5 you (buy) a new phone soon?
- 3 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write five sentences, then tell your partner.
- 4 P @ 094 Listen to the dialogue. How is going to pronounced?
  - A: What are you going to do this weekend?
    Do you have any plans?
  - **B:** Not really. I'm going to stay at home and watch TV this evening.
  - A: Yes, so am I! And I'm going to go to bed early for once.
- 5 P @ 094 Listen to the dialogue again and repeat.

  Try to reproduce the stress pattern and pronunciation in going to.
- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the present continuous, going to or the present simple.
  - 1 I\_\_\_\_\_ late at the office on Friday. I have a meeting with a customer. (work)
  - 2 She \_\_\_\_\_ to the gym after college today. (go)
  - **3** The concert at 8.00 pm. (start)
  - 4 We TV later. (watch)
  - 5 The train at 8.30 pm. (leave)
  - 6 She \_\_\_\_\_ the 8.30 pm train to London. (take)

## READING PART 1 TRAINING

For these questions, choose the correct answer.

First, look at text 1, the question, the options and the correct answer, A. Which phrase in the text tells you that A is correct? A is correct because Claire says, 'Shall I get a pair for you?' B is wrong because Claire already knows Lisa's shoe size. C is wrong because Claire says that the trainers are on sale, not that there is a sale.

Hi Lisa, There are trainers on sale in Brown's for €20! Shall I get a pair for you? They're black, size 38, just like you wanted. Claire

Why did Claire write this message?

ite

atch

arly

the

le.

- A to offer to buy Lisa some trainers
- B to find out what Lisa's shoe size is
- c to tell Lisa that there's a sale in Brown's

Now choose the correct answers for the other texts. Think about why the other answers are not correct.

## Special offer in book department!

THREE for the price of TWO! (the cheapest is free)

- A You can buy three books and only pay for the cheapest one.
- B If you buy three books, one of them is free.
- Customers who buy two books can get a third book for a lower price.
  - Jake, we've got no food in the fridge!
    Can you meet me at the supermarket after work? Bring the car so we can take the shopping home. Katie
- A Katie is asking Jake when he is going shopping.
- B Katie wants Jake to drive her to the supermarket.
- Katie wants Jake to go shopping with her after work.

## Gina's Shoe Shop 50% off! Hurry – offer ends Monda

Hurry – offer ends Monday Some sizes nearly gone

- A You can buy shoes at a cheaper price than usual.
- B Only some sizes of shoes are half price.
- You can buy shoes for half price from Monday.

## PUSH YOURSELF BI

#### **VOCABULARY: MONEY AND SHOPPING**



Shona Evans is a songwriter. Sometimes she earns a lot of money but at other times she doesn't have a lot of work and her **bank account** is almost empty. Shona always tries to get **good value for money** when she goes shopping and she's good at finding **bargains**. Her new Gibson 334 guitar **is worth** about €2,000, but she bought it online for only €900! Because she never knows how much money she's going to have, Shona prefers not to buy anything **on credit** in case she can't pay it back. This means she can't **afford** to buy a new car. The **second-hand** car she drives is 15 years old now, but she doesn't mind. 'I don't want to **owe** money to the bank,' she says, 'and as long as I have a good guitar, I'm happy.'

## Read the text and match the beginnings of the definitions (1–8) with the endings (a–h).

- 1 You can afford something
- 2 If something is second-hand
- 3 How much something is worth
- 4 A bank account is
- 5 A bargain is something
- 6 When you buy things on credit
- 7 You get good value for money
- 8 You owe money when
- a you have borrowed it and haven't given it back.
- **b** where people keep their money.
- c that you buy for less than its usual price.
- d when you have enough money to pay for it.
- e it is not new; somebody else had it before you.
- f is how much money people will pay for it.
- g when you pay less than usual for high quality.
- h you can have them now and pay for them later.

#### 2 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- 1 How old were you when you opened your first bank account?
- 2 What kind of things do people often buy on credit?
- 3 What have you bought that was a bargain or good value for money?

## WRITING

#### **REVIEW OF A DEPARTMENT STORE**

- 1 What's the most famous department store in your country? Why is it famous? Have you ever visited it?
- 2 Read this review of a department store and answer the questions.
  - 1 What did the reviewer like most about the store?
  - 2 What did the reviewer think about the sales assistants?
  - 3 What didn't the reviewer like?
  - 4 Is the reviewer's overall opinion of the store good or bad?





I love shopping so I was excited about my visit to Bryson's Department Store. It's 200 years old and it's in the city centre.

It's an amazing place full of fantastic things on six floors. One of the best things about it is the food department, where you can buy all sorts of delicious food and taste things for free. There is also an excellent café with a great view of the city. For me, the high point of Bryson's is the clothes department, as the clothes are so on trend. Even the changing rooms are stylish – I stayed in there for ages!

The worst thing about Bryson's is that it's so crowded. It's also easy to get lost inside because it's so big and it's difficult to find any store plans. The friendly shop assistants helped me, but there weren't many of them and I had to wait a long time to pay. Another negative point for me is the high prices. Don't go there if you are looking for discounts, although they do have a great winter sale in January!

Overall, I would recommend Bryson's and I'm definitely going to go back there next time I'm in the city.

## 3 What expressions does the reviewer use to introduce the following:

а	good points	One of the best things about it is
b	bad points	
c	a final opinion	, I would/ wouldn't recommend

## 4 You are going to write a review of a department store you have visited. Include information about:

- the building
- the shop assistants
- the different products
- places to eat
- the changing rooms
- prices

#### 5 Plan your review. Use the table to help you.

Paragraph 1 Where is the store What is the building like	It's in It's near The building is It has floors,
Paragraph 2 Bad points	A bad/The worst thing about is It is/They are
Paragraph 3 Good points	The high point/best thing about is There is/are
Paragraph 4 Conclusion	All in all I would/wouldn't recommend I'm (not) going to go back

6 Write your review. When you have finished, exchange your review with a partner and check his/her work. Can you make at least one suggestion to improve it?

## SPEAKING

ee.

I'm

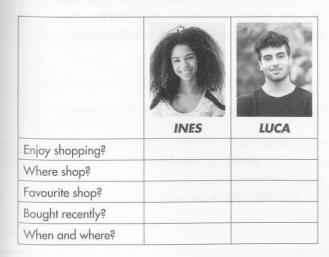
nge

it?

## SHOPPING HABITS



- 1 Put the words in order to make questions about shopping.
  - 1 enjoy / shopping? / you / Do
  - 2 What sort / things / buying? / like / do / of / you
  - 3 do / go / shopping? / Where / you
  - 4 favourite / shop? / What's / your
  - 5 bought / Have / you / recently? / anything
  - 6 and / you / buy them? / when / Where / did
- 2 © 095 You are going to hear two people talking about shopping. Listen and complete the table.



- 3 Who do you think gave the best answers? Think about who:
  - gave full answers.
  - used adjectives.
  - gave examples and reasons.
- 4 © 096 Listen to Luca again and complete his answers to the questions using the words below.

as because	so (x2) That's why
Interviewer:	Do you enjoy shopping?
Luca:	Yes, I do. I like shopping a lot. I especially like clothes shopping. I love going to cities on holiday.
Interviewer:	And what sort of things do you like buying? Where do you go shopping?
Luca:	I really like wearing fashionable things, <sup>2</sup> when I have money, I like buying clothes and shoes a lot. There's a big shopping centre in my town and I go there. It's very crowded, but I really like it <sup>3</sup> it has a lot of shops!
Interviewer:	And what's your favourite shop?
Luca:	There's a clothes shop called <i>Place</i> that I like a lot. That's probably my favourite shop <sup>4</sup> the shop assistants are really helpful and I always see things I want to buy.
Interviewer:	Have you bought anything recently?
Luca:	Yes, I bought some boots – some really nice black boots. Unfortunately, they weren't in the sale, <sup>5</sup> they were quite

expensive, but they look great.

- 5 What do we use the words in Exercise 4 for?
  - A to give reasons
  - **B** to order information
  - c to introduce a new clause
- 6 You are going to talk about shopping with your partner.
  - Make notes for your answers to the questions in Exercise 1.
  - Try to add as much detail as possible. Use the correct tense.
- 7 Work in pairs and take turns to ask and answer your questions. Add some more questions, for example:
  - 1 What do you like spending your money on?
  - 2 Do you do much shopping online?
  - 3 What are your favourite shopping websites?
  - 4 Do you buy expensive clothes? Why?/Why not?
  - 5 Do you buy anything second hand?

# EXAM FOCUS

## READING PART 1

#### EXAM CHECK

In Reading Part 1 you read six texts. Some of them will be longer than others. In the box you can see all of the types of texts you might read. Decide if each one is a shorter text (up to 14 words) or a longer text (up to 25 words).

label on a product notice on a work/school/club noticeboard post-it note email web message shop notice sign on a wall text message

Shorter text Longer text label on a product email

2 For each question, choose the correct answer.

CINEMA

Discounts Sunday - Friday when you pay online. Collect tickets from the information desk.

Kelly, I tried to make a dentist appointment for you, but they told me I have to call before

9 am. I was too late. Sam

A set of keys was left in the café earlier. The receptionist has them in her desk at the main entrance.

Tina, are you still at the restaurant? I left my jacket there. Could you get it and bring it to the party tomorrow? Anna

If you want cheaper cinema tickets

- A ask at the information desk.
- go on a Saturday.
- visit the website.

Why did Sam leave this message?

- A to explain to Kelly why he didn't do something
- to let Kelly know how to do something
- to ask Kelly to do something for him
- The entrance keys are now kept in a different place.
- Let a member of staff know if you find these keys.
- Talk to the receptionist if you've lost your keys.

Anna wants Tina to

- A pick up something Anna forgot.
- go somewhere with her.
- C buy something for her.

5

#### Supermarket

Our bread oven is broken. No fresh bread today. Buy yesterday's bread half-price.

- A This supermarket doesn't sell fresh bread anymore.
- **B** You can get the bread cheaper because it wasn't baked today.
- **C** If there's a problem with your bread you should return it to the supermarket.

6

Meg, Frankie says you're coming cycling with us tomorrow. Bring a jacket – it's going to rain. Do you know the theatre? We're meeting there. Petra

Why did Petra write this message?

- A to invite Meg to go on a cycling trip
- B to give Meg advice about a cycling trip
- c to check the meeting place for a cycling trip

## LISTENING PART 5

## EXAM CHECK

- 1 Read these sentences about Listening Part 5, and choose the correct options.
  - 1 You will hear one person speaking/a conversation between two people.
  - 2 There are five/six questions to answer, and an example which has already been completed.
  - 3 There are two lists. In the first list you will see the names of people, days, things or places. You hear these in the order you read them/You may hear these in any order.
  - 4 In the second list there are seven/eight options. You will not hear these in the order you read them.
  - 5 You have to choose one option from the second list for each option in the first list. You will/will not need to use all of the options in the second list.
- 2 097 For each question, choose the correct answer.

You will hear Alicia talking to a friend about her party. What job will Alicia do each day?

)	Monday	C		
Da	ys		Job	os
1	Tuesday		Α	buy a dress
2	Wednesday		В	buy food
3	Thursday		С	buy plates and glasses
4	Friday		D	clean the house
5	Saturday		E	cook the food
			F	cut her hair
		10	G	download music
			н	invite the neighbours

HOW WAS	IT?
Gave it a go	r 7 L J
Getting there	
	F 7

UNIT 11

## **REAL WORLD** DEALING WITH MONEY OCKHOL Look at the photos (A-D) of ways of paying for things in Stockholm. Match them with 1-4. How do you usually pay for things when you go shopping? cash 2 a contactless card a smartphone a credit card or debit card 2 Read the fact box about currencies. Then read the blog about how to pay for things in Stockholm. How do most Swedish people pay for things? Different countries use different currencies. United Kingdom: £ pound USA: \$ dollar Europe: € Euro China: ¥ Yen Sweden: Kr krona Search Home **Latest posts** Subscribe Although Sweden is an EU country, it does not use the euro. The currency is the Swedish krona (the plural form is kronor). Most stores in Stockholm only accept kronor, but some shops in tourist areas also accept euros. However, remember that if you pay in euros, the exchange rate might not be very good for you. No shops or restaurants accept dollars. You can pay by credit card and debit card almost everywhere in Sweden, from big, expensive shops to taxis and hamburger stalls. You can also use contactless cards or pay with your smartphone for most things. People in Sweden don't usually carry much cash with them, but use cards or their phones for most payments. In fact, some museums and other places in the city don't accept cash at all, so you have to use a card or your phone to pay. There are lots of currency exchange shops in the city, where you can change your own currency into kronor. But the exchange rate is often not very good, and they don't accept coins, only banknotes. There are also cash machines all over the city. They are blue, and are called Bankomats. Remember, the machines don't accept contactless cards, so you need to know your pin number.

- Read the blog again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
  - All shops in Stockholm accept Swedish kronor and euros.
  - You can't use dollars to pay for things.
  - 3 You can only use credit cards to pay for expensive things.
  - 4 You can't pay by cash in some museums.
  - 5 There aren't many cash machines in the city.
  - 6 You can use contactless cards at the cash machines.
- Match the words from the blog with the correct definitions.
  - 1 currency
- 5 payments
- 2 exchange rate
- 6 banknotes
- 3 credit card
- 7 coins
- 4 debit card
- g pin number
- a small, round pieces of metal money
- the kind of money that people use in a particular country
- the set of four numbers that you use with a credit card or debit card
- a card that takes money from your bank account immediately
- e a card that takes money from your account at a later time.
- f situations when you pay for things
- g pieces of paper money
- h how much money you get when you change one currency into another
- 098 Listen to three conversations. What are the people doing? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.

   098 Listen to three conversations. What are the people doing? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.

   098 Listen to three conversations. What are the people doing? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.

   098 Listen to three conversations. What are the people doing? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.

   098 Listen to three conversations. What are the people doing? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.

   098 Listen to three conversations. What are the people doing? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.

   098 Listen to three conversations. The people doing three conversations.

   098 Listen to three c
  - a asking about a cash machine
  - **b** asking about the exchange rate in a currency exchange shop
  - c buying some things in a shop
  - d going into a museum
- © 098 Complete the phrases with the correct words. Listen again and check.

cash machine discount far

#### PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE

- 1 Is there a student
- 2 Can I \_\_\_\_ contactless?
- 3 Is there a \_\_\_\_\_ near here?
- 4 How is it?
- 5 Do you cards?
- 6 I need to use my\_\_\_\_\_

7 Choose the correct definitions for these informal words and phrases.

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR**

- 1 There you go.
  - a There's a problem with the card machine.
  - b The card machine is ready for you.
- 2 That's gone through.
  - a The payment was OK.
  - **b** There was a problem with the payment.
- 3 Any one will do.
  - You can choose any road to go along.
  - **b** Someone will tell you which road to choose.
- 4 Problem solved.
  - a That is a problem for us.
  - **b** There's no problem now.
- 5 The other way round.
  - a Turn your card around, please.
  - b Don't put your card in yet.
- Watch the video. What do you learn about these things in Stockholm? Make notes.
  - the old town
- paying for things
- the currency
- Compare your notes. Watch the video again to check your ideas.



## LIFE COMPETENCIES

CRITICAL THINKING AND UNDERSTANDING YOUR OWN CULTURE

- Work in pairs and think about tourists who visit your town or city. Talk about:
  - the currency
  - banknotes and coins
  - how most people pay for things
  - need for cash

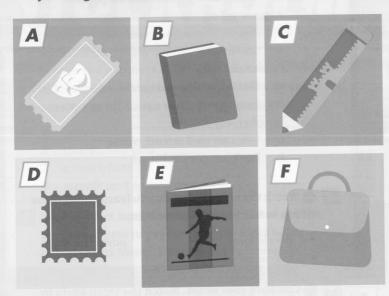
UNIT 11

- · where to find cash machines
- Make an information pack about shopping and spending for visitors. Present it to your classmates.

# PROGRESS CHECK 4

#### **UNITS 9-11**

1 Match the things in the pictures (A-F) with the places where you can get them (1-6).



- 1 post office
- 2 department store
- 3 library
- 4 castle
- 5 theatre
- 6 stadium
- 2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. You don't need all of the words.

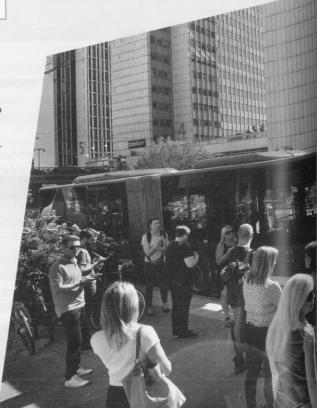
b	orrow	cost	earn	lend	pay	save	spend	waste
1	How	much de	o you		in your	lop <sub>s</sub>		
2	me so	me?					you	
3	Those	shoes	ook exp	ensive!	How mi	uch did t	hey	š
4		ying to holida		money	y at the	moment	because	I want to
5					for tha	t phone	l'd like o	ne like it
6	Keep	your m		things				

## 3 Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

- 1 My friend is really generous
- 2 Jane is very shy
- 3 The little boy was very shy
- 4 My sister is very reliable
- 5 Sara is worried
- 6 My boss is so busy at the moment
- 7 That politician seems very confident
- 8 My mother gets angry
- a so she will remember to do what you ask her.
- **b** because she has her driving test tomorrow.
- when people don't tell her the truth.
- d that she will win the election.
- e so she doesn't talk to people she doesn't know.
- f when he started school.
- a that she often doesn't eat lunch.
- h and she often buys presents for people.

## 4 Choose the correct option to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm happy to/easy to see the film on Sunday if you're not free tonight.
- 2 I've agreed to/learned to study French at university.
- 3 I don't usually watch films at home. I prefer to/ want to go to the cinema.
- 4 Why didn't you tell/ask someone to help you carry that shopping? It's so heavy!



## Complete the conversations in shops using the words in the box. You don't need all of the words.

bill by card change changing room customer in cash receipt sale size till

- 1 A: I'm not sure if these jeans are the right for me. Can I try them on, please?
  - B: Of course. The is over there.
- 2 A: Would you like to pay in cash or \_\_\_\_\_
  - B: Cash, please.
  - A: Thank you. So, that's fifteen pounds, and you gave me twenty. Here's your \_\_\_\_\_\_.
  - B: Thanks.
- 3 A: Excuse me. I'd like to return these sunglasses. They're broken.
  - B: Have you got a for them?
  - A: Yes, I have.
  - **B:** Great. If you go over there to the my colleague will help you.
  - A: Thank you.

## 6 Find the place or thing which is different in each group.

1	crossing	corner	bridge
2	bus stop	underground station	roundabou
3	main square	fresh air	sunlight
4	roundahout	district	traffic lights



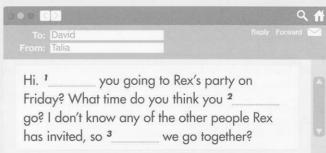
## 7 Students often make mistakes with the form of verbs when one verb follows another. Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

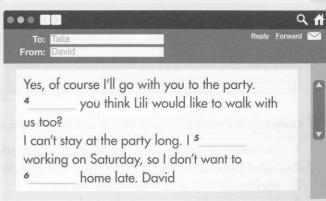
- 1 My mum cooks it for me because I don't like cook.
- 2 I want invited you to my house.
- 3 You need buy some food and water.
- 4 After that it stopped to rain and it was sunny.
- 5 We have study hard for the test.
- 6 I'd like know which restaurant you went to last night.

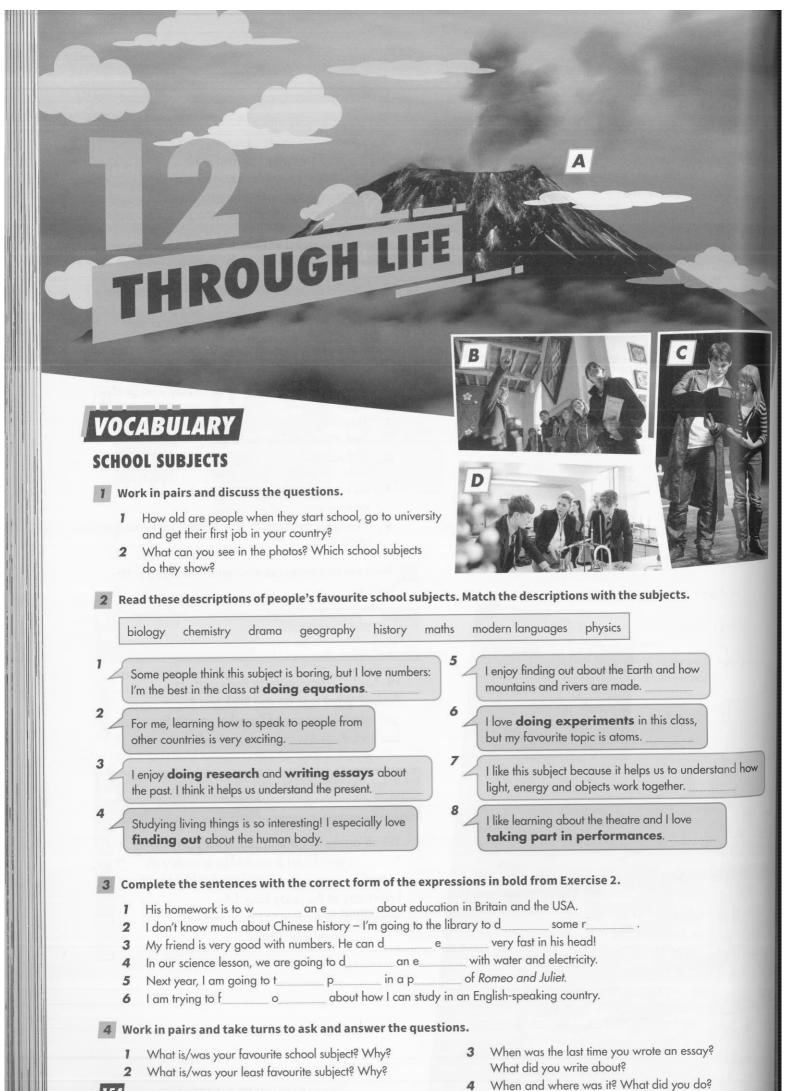
## 8 Choose the correct options to complete the sentences.

- 1 I go/l'm going to the supermarket. Is there anything you need?
- 2 I've booked the flight. It leaves/is leaving at eight o'clock in the morning.
- 3 I can't go swimming with you. I have/I'm having a doctor's appointment.
- 4 Do you think the shops are/will be busy if we go about 2 pm?
- 5 I buy/I'm going to buy some tickets for the football final. Would you like to come?
- **6** Will you go/Are you going to the library? Can you return this book for me, please?
- 7 I'm not sure, but I *might/will* go to the cinema this evening.
- 8 It can/may rain later, so I don't think a barbecue is a good idea.

## 9 Read the two emails and complete each gap with a verb.







## READING

#### MY EDUCATION

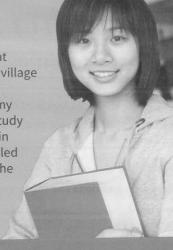
- Read about three people at different stages in their lives and their education. What job does each person want to do in the future? Who already has a job?
- 2 Read the texts again and answer the questions.
  - 1 Why did Fung move to her grandparents' home?
  - 2 What exam is she going to take soon? What does she hope will happen if she passes it?
  - 3 Why is Angeles studying at the Monterrey Instituto Tecnológico?
  - 4 Angeles didn't pass an exam recently. Which subject was it in?
  - 5 Why is Massimo studying in the evenings?
  - 6 When will Massimo start earning more money?
- 3 Match the beginnings of the sentences (1-6) with the endings (a-f) to make definitions.
  - 7 Children go to primary school
  - 2 You go to secondary school
  - 3 A qualification is what you get
  - 4 To graduate is
  - 5 A degree is what a university
  - 6 You get good marks
  - a when you give lots of correct answers.
  - b when you finish a course and pass an exam at the end.
  - to complete your university education successfully.
  - d gives you at the end of your course, if you pass.
  - e when you finish primary school.
  - f from age 4-5 to age 11-12.
- 4 Look at the texts again to find five different verbs we can use with exam.

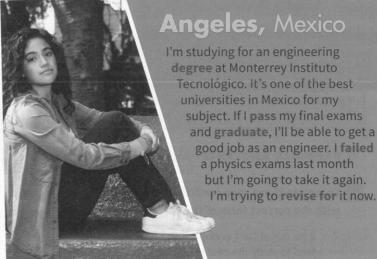


- 5 Complete the sentences with a verb from Exercise 4 in the correct form. Use each verb once.
  - 1 Of course you won't pass your exam if you haven't it.
  - 2 I find this subject very difficult: I'm worried that I will the exam.
  - 3 'What mark do I need to get in order to \_\_\_\_\_ the exam?' 'You need at least 50%.'
  - 4 She's working very hard at the moment. She's for her final exams at university.
  - 5 It's a very difficult exam. He's \_\_\_\_\_\_ it four times and he still hasn't passed.

## Fung, China

I'm 18 years old and in my last year at secondary school. I'm from a small village in the mountains and after I finished primary school I came to live with my grandparents in the city so I could study here. If you want to go to university in China, you need to pass an exam called the gaokao. I'm studying for this at the moment. If I get good marks in the exam, maybe I'll get a place at university.





## Massimo, Italy

I work in a large store in Bologna, but in the evenings, I'm studying to be an accountant. I always enjoyed maths at school but I didn't want to **study for** a university degree so this is a good option for me.

Next year, I'm going to **take** my final exam. If I **pass** it I'll be so happy. It's easier to change jobs if you've got a good **qualification!** 



- 1 Where did/do you go to secondary school?
- 2 What important exams have you taken so far? Did you find them difficult or easy? Why?
- 3 What qualifications would you like to get in the future? What do you need to study to do this?

#### DID YOU KNOW?

In the US, **primary school** is called **elementary school**. After elementary school, students in the US go to **high school** (junior high school (12–15), then senior high school (15–18))

UNIT 12



#### **ZERO CONDITIONAL**



## GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE

Watch the video



Read these sentences from the texts and then choose the best options to complete the rules.

If you want to go to university in China, you need to pass an exam called the gaokao.
It's easier to change jobs if you have a good qualification.

7	We use the zero conditional to talk about facts that are	е
	generally true/the future.	

2 We use the present/future in zero conditionals.

If clause (condition)
If + present simple

Main clause (result)

present simple

#### ⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 220

2 Complete these zero conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

7	If he doesn't	get enough sleep, he	is too
	tired to study	the next day. (not get/be	e)
2	If she	something, she	the
	teacher. (not	understand/ask)	
3	1 6	etter if the weather	warm

and sunny. (feel/be)

They can \_\_\_\_\_ the exam again if they \_\_\_\_\_ it the first time. (take/fail)

#### **FIRST CONDITIONAL**

3 Read these sentences from the texts and choose the best options to complete the rules.

If I pass it, I'll be happy.

If I pass my final exams and graduate, I'll be able to get a good job.

1 We use the first conditional to talk about a possible condition and its result in the future/now.

2 The 'if' clause is in the present/future tense, and the main clause is in the present/future tense.

If clause (condition)
If + present simple

Main clause (result)

(future) will + verb

⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 220

4	Complete these first conditional sentences with the correct
	form of the verbs in brackets.

7	If I have essay. (have		ow, I 'll help you with your
2			the test. (be/not pass)
3	If you	good marks in th	e test, I you any
	homework	. (get/not give)	
4	He	his exams if he	harder. (fail/not work)

## 5 Use the words given to write zero or first conditional sentences and questions.

- 1 What happen if / I not pass exam?
- 2 If / students arrive late for class / teacher / never / let them in
- 3 If / he study / late tonight / he / be / tired in the morning.
- 4 What / you / give me / if help you / with / your essay tomorrow?

## PUSH YOURSELF BI

#### **GRAMMAR: UNLESS AND WHEN**

We can also use the first conditional with when and unless. Compare these examples and complete the sentences.

a /	I'll tell him <b>if</b> I see him.	
6	I'll tell him <b>when</b> I see him.	1

- In a, the speaker is *not sure/sure* he or she will see the person.
- 2 In b, the speaker is *not sure/sure* that he or she will see the person.

a	4	I'll pass the exam <b>if</b> I revise for it.
b	2	He won't pass the exam <b>unless</b> he revises for it.

3 Look at sentence b. Which word means except if?

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct options.

- 1 He won't finish on time *unless/if/when* he works a bit faster.
- 2 If/Unless/When he works a bit faster this morning, he'll finish on time.
- 3 You won't get a job with a big salary unless/if/when you have good qualifications.
- 4 You're tired now, but you'll feel much better when if/unless you wake up tomorrow.
- 5 We'll be late unless/when/if we leave soon.
- 6 If/Unless/When you don't have something to eat now, you'll be hungry later.

## READING PART 4 TRAINING

Look at these 'life events'. Which have you experienced? When/where? Which haven't you experienced yet? Tell your partner. Give as much information as possible.









be born

Our

ork)

em in

- start primary school
- finish secondary school
- graduate from university
- move away from home
- learn to drive

- get your first job
- get married
- have children

I was born on the 24th September 1998 in a small town near Bilbao in Spain.

I started primary school when I was six years old. My first teacher was Señora Vasquez.

- What do you know about the actor Rebel Wilson and her life? Tell your partner.
- 3 Read the text about Rebel Wilson's life. For these questions, choose the correct answer for each gap.

## **Rebel Wilson**

The comedy actor Rebel Wilson was born in 1980. She 1 up in Sydney. Australia with her two sisters and her brother. As a child, Rebel was always at sums, and she hoped to have a successful 3 in mathematics. But after leaving school, she was educated at the University of New South Wales, where she decided to do Theatre and Performance Studies. Rebel's first big acting job was on TV and she became 4 for playing Toula in the Australian comedy series Pizza. She later 5 to the USA where she has starred in the movie Bridesmaids and the musical comedy film Pitch Perfect. She has also written her own TV comedy series Super Fun Night.



Read the first two sentences with the (1) gap and think about what type of word is missing (a verb). A is wrong because get up means to stand up or to get out of bed. B is wrong because go up means to go to a higher place. C is correct because the sentence tells us where Rebel spent her years as a child.

- A got
- **B** went
- (C) grew

- B good
- easy

- A work
- **B** occupation
- career

- A famous
- B funny

- A chose
- **B** moved
- C favourite C arrived



#### THE PASSIVE



## GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE Watch the video



1 Read the examples. Do we know: what makes mountains and rivers, who educated Rebel Wilson, who asked the students to bring their dictionaries? Complete the rules.

I enjoy finding out about how ... mountains and rivers are made.

She **was educated** at the University of New South Wales. The students **were asked** to bring their dictionaries **by** the German teacher.

7	We use the passive when we know/don't know who or what did
	the action or it is important/not important who did the action.

2 To form the passive, we use the correct form of the verb + past participle.

3 To say who does or did the action, we use the word

#### Present: is/are + past participle

At the moment, the computers **are kept** in the science classroom.

#### Past: was/were + past participle

Last year, the computers were kept in the science classroom.

#### GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 221

- 2 Match the beginnings of the sentences (1-5) with the endings (a-e).
  - 1 English is
  - 2 That photo was
  - 3 The students are
  - 4 I'm sorry, all the cake was
  - 5 That book was
  - a not taught how to use computers.
  - **b** written 50 years ago.
  - c spoken all over the world.
  - **d** eaten during the party.
  - e taken by a friend when I was much younger!
- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct present or past passive form of the verbs in brackets.

	121 11/4			1947		1.00	24.7	4 6		
7	(as	k)	to	teach	a	maths	lesson	last	week	۲.

- 2 French \_\_\_\_\_ (not teach) at our school at the moment.
- 3 This photo (taken) in Spain two weeks ago.
- 4 The exercise books \_\_\_\_\_ (collected) after every lesson, so the teacher can mark them.
- **5** He \_\_\_\_\_ (give) some money for his birthday yesterday.





- Work in pairs and discuss the questions.
  - What jobs have you done in your life? What job would you like to do? Why?
  - What is important for you in a job? Put the following in order from 5 (most important) to 1 (least important).
    - a good salary
    - interesting work
    - a boss/company who is good to work for
    - learning new things
    - having enough time off (holidays, weekends etc.)
- 2 © 099 Listen to the people in the photos talking about their jobs. Number the photos in the order you hear about them.
- 3 099 Listen again and choose the correct option to complete each sentence.
  - 1 Andrea says that she enjoys her work because she likes
    - a being outside.
    - **b** working with animals.
  - 2 Joe would like to
    - a have more breaks during the day.
    - b talk to people more.
  - 3 Lee says that people are often
    - a afraid of their dentist.
    - **b** good friends with their dentist.
  - 4 Amir finds it difficult that he has to
    - a speak English a lot.
    - **b** travel a lot.
  - 5 Mai works for
    - a a big international company.
    - **b** herself.
  - 6 Carmen doesn't like
    - a trying to find new stories.
    - b her boss.





## VOCABULARY

#### **JOBS AND WORK**

ring

tant).

etc.)

n to

likes

- Match the beginnings of the sentences (1-6) with the endings (a-f) to make definitions.
  - 1 The staff of a company
  - 2 Long hours means that
  - 3 A break is a period of time when you
  - 4 The boss is the person whose job is to
  - 5 A diploma is a piece of paper that shows
  - 6 A day off is time when
  - a tell other people how to work and what to do.
  - **b** people work later than workers normally do.
  - c that a person has passed an exam.
  - d can stop work and rest.
  - e are the people that work there.
  - f you are on holiday and not at work.
- Complete the phrases from the listening with the correct form of the words in Exercise 1.
  - The problem is that I never have any holidays or \_\_\_\_\_ it's too difficult to find someone to look after the animals.
  - We don't get many during the day.

    One of us has to be at the front desk all the time.
  - In my country it takes eight years to be a dentist.
    I have a couple of degrees and \_\_\_\_\_!
  - 4 I have my own company with a \_\_\_\_\_ of 500 people.
  - I work and my diary is full every week.
  - The only thing I don't like about my job is my
    . I hate people telling me what to do!





3 Would you prefer to work for a company or work for yourself? What are the advantages and disadvantages of each?

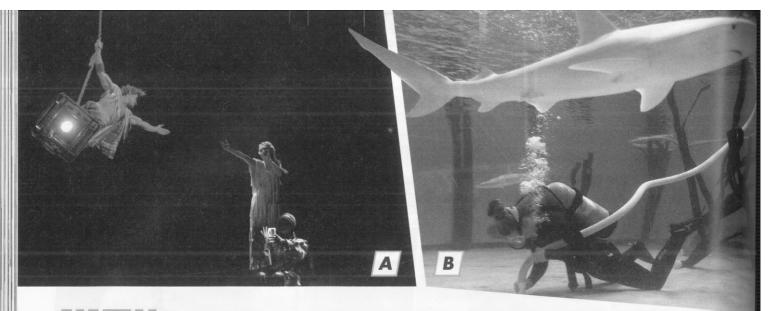
## LISTENING PART 3 TRAINING

- 100 You will hear Annie talking to her friend Mick about her new job. For each question, choose the correct answer.
- 1 Why did Annie leave her old job?
  - A She wanted to work in computer programming.
  - She didn't enjoy the travelling she had to do.
  - C She didn't like it because the work changed.

Before you listen, read the questions and options and underline the key words. Look at question 1 and listen.

Annie says she had to spend so much time away from home, and staying in hotels was lonely and boring, so B is the correct answer.

- 2 Mick is surprised to hear that Annie
  - A hated her old job.
  - B wanted to work at home.
  - c enjoys cooking.
- 3 Where does Annie sell most of her cakes?
  - A online
  - B in the baker's shop
  - C at the market
- 4 What does Annie say is the most difficult thing about her new business?
  - A She has no colleagues.
  - B She has less money.
  - C She has fewer holidays.



## WRITING

#### A JOB APPLICATION

- Have you ever been to a circus or an aquarium? What do you think it would be like to work in these places?
- 2 Match the photos (A and B) with the job adverts (1 and 2). What are the good and the bad points of each job?
- 3 Read the two job advertisements and complete the information.
  - 7 Place of work

Where is the job?

Job 1:

Job 2:

2 Tasks

What do you do in this job?

Job 1:

Job 2:

3 Salary

How much money can you earn?

Joh 1.

Job 2:

4 Hours

When/How often do you have to work?

Job 1:

Job 2:

5 Qualifications

What kind of qualification do you need?

Job 1:

Job 2:

6 Things to send

What do you need to send if you want the job?

I-l- 1.

Job 2:

- 4 Look at the application email for the first job and the expressions in bold. Which expressions does the writer use to ...?
  - a explain why she is writing
  - **b** talk about what you can see in her videos
  - c talk about what she sent with the email
  - d say where she saw the job advertised
  - e describe herself in a good way
  - **f** begin the message
  - g end the message
  - h talk about next contact



- Dear Mr Cain,
- **21 am writing to apply for** the job of trapeze artist **3 as advertised** on the National Circus Website.
- **41 am attaching my CV with** my qualifications and experience and two videos of my performances.
- <sup>5</sup>As you will see from my videos, <sup>6</sup>I am a confident and exciting artist, who can work solo or in a group. I have a diploma in circus arts and have worked for several famous circuses including Blacks Circus.
- <sup>7</sup>I look forward to hearing from you. <sup>8</sup>Yours sincerely,

Talia Jones

- 5 Put the words in order to make sentences from another job application.
  - 1 your website. / the job of / I am writing to / as advertised on / apply for / English teacher
  - 2 my CV / and a copy of my teaching diploma. / I am attaching
  - 3 teacher. / I am / a patient, friendly
  - 4 in Granada. / I have worked / As you will see / for several schools / from my CV,
  - 5 from / I / hearing / you. / look / forward to
- 6 Write an email to apply for job B in Exercise 1. Use the email in Exercise 4 and the notes below to help you.
  - You have five years' diving experience
  - You are brave, calm and not afraid of sharks
  - You have a diving certificate and experience of swimming with sharks

## CAIN'S CIRCUS

## WANTED:

Trapeze Artist for exciting new show to tour in Europe

- Hotel accommodation is provided during tour
- You must be over 18 and be athletic and not afraid of heights
- Send photos and videos of your performance

billy.cain@caincircus.yahoo

Salarv €25-€35,000 per year (6-8 performances a week)

## SPEAKING

#### JOB INTERVIEW

- What kind of questions are usually asked at job interviews? What questions should you ask in a job interview? Why?
- 2 0 101 Talia has an interview for the trapeze artist job. Listen and complete the information.

Name: Talia Jones 1Age: Qualifications: A diploma in 2 <sup>3</sup>Amount of experience:

- 3 🔘 101 Listen again and match the beginnings of Billy Cain's questions (1-5) with the endings (a-e).
  - So, you're 21 years old,
  - Can you tell us about
  - How many years' experience of
  - Can you tell us
  - Which other languages
  - trapeze work do you have?
  - something about your other skills?
  - do you speak?
  - your qualifications and experience?
  - is that right?
- 4 Put the words in the correct order to complete Talia's questions to Mr Cain.

are you / What / offering / salary?

- 2 costumes / Are / provided? / the
- 3 my / get / hotel room? / Will I / own
- 4 going to / Am I / perform / people? / with / other
- be / Who / boss? / will / my
- 6 we / hours / practise? / How many / will
- will I / per week? / time off / get / How much

## **SEA WORLD**

We are looking for a cleaner for our shark tank. You must have:

- a diving qualification
- two year's diving experience
- a degree in marine biology

We give you special lessons to learn about working with sharks.

Send your CV and a letter telling us why you want the job

ken.timmins@seaworld.com

Salary: €40–€45,000 per year Hours:

35 hours a week

- 5 Match the answers a-g with the questions in Exercise 4.
  - You'll perform with five other artists.
  - We can offer you €33,000 a year.
  - My wife Ania trains the artists and will be your boss.
  - There are 10 hours of practice a week.
  - Mondays and Tuesdays are your days off.
  - No, you'll share a room with another artist.
  - Yes, we provide the costumes.
- 6 P @ 102 Listen to these pairs of questions. For each pair, does the speaker's voice:

a go up?

- b go down? c go up, then down?

Wh- questions

What time do we start in the mornings? Where is the photocopier?

Yes/no questions

- 2 Can I park here?
- Is this my chair?
- P 🙆 102 Listen again and repeat. Try to reproduce the intonation.
- 8 Work in pairs. You are going to role-play the interview for the shark tank cleaner's job.
  - Think what extra information you would like to ask at your interview and prepare at least six questions. Think about:
    - salary
    - working hours during the day
    - breaks
    - boss
- other people you will work with
- sharks dangerous? friendly?
- training
- 2 Think about how the interviewer will answer these questions.

When you are ready, role-play the interview with your partner. Then swap roles.



# EXAM FOCUS

## READING PART 4

## EXAM CHECK

- 1 Match the beginnings and endings of these sentences to complete the information about Reading Part 4.
  - 1 In Reading Part 4, you have to
  - 2 There are six gaps
  - 3 To complete each gap
  - 4 Reading Part 4 tests your
  - 5 You also need to make sure your answer
- a vocabulary.
- **b** is correct grammatically.
- c you choose from three options.
- d in the text.
- e read quite a long text.
- 2 For each question, choose the correct answer.

#### What is a Curriculum Vitae?

- 1 A facts
   B instructions
   C details

   2 A keep
   B include
   C join

   3 A experience
   B activity
   C practice

   4 A normal
   B popular
   C comfortable
  - A pass B take C use
    A problems B mistakes C accidents

## LISTENING PART 3

Answer these questions about Listening Part 3, using words in the box. You don't need to use all of the words.

three four five yes no two

- How many people will you hear? 1
- How many questions are there?
- Is there an example at the beginning?
- How many options are there for each question?
- Are there questions about the speaker's opinions and feelings?

## 2 0 103 For each question, choose the correct answer.

#### You will hear Lena and Max talking about a course which Max has done.

- When Max's boss told him to do the course, Max felt
  - A worried.
  - B excited.
  - angry.
- Max thought the teacher was good at
  - A including everyone in the lessons.
  - giving students interesting work to do.
  - explaining anything that was difficult.
- What didn't Max like about the course?
  - A The breaks weren't long enough.
  - There were too many students.

- Lena is going to do the course because
  - A her job has changed since she started it.
  - B she would like to earn more money.
  - she wants a new job.
- When is Lena going to do the course?
  - next week
  - next month
  - next year



## PLANNING TO STUDY IN ...

# GENEVA

- Would you like to study in another country for a short time? Why?
- 2 Look at the photos (A-D) of Geneva. Then read the text and match the photos with the paragraphs.
- Read the text again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
  - A lot of university classes are in English.
  - 2 You can only study science or business in Geneva.
  - 3 You can go skiing all year near Geneva.
  - 4 Geneva is a very big city.



Home About Q Search

## STUDYING IN GENEVA

Nowadays lots of students at school or university have plans to study abroad, as it's so easy to arrange. Universities are happy to accept students from all over the world. Many universities offer student exchanges for undergraduates, so students can study in another country for a few months or a year. Some universities also offer scholarships, which give students money to help them pay for their studies. Many classes are in English, so you don't need to learn the language of the country where you want to study.

Geneva has one of the best universities in the world. You can study any subject in Geneva, but it's especially good if you want to study science subjects because it's an important centre for scientific research. A lot of postgraduates choose to study in Geneva for this reason. There are also many international businesses in the city, so it's a very good place to study international business and maybe work for a multi-national company to get some work experience.

Geneva is also in a beautiful part of the world. It's in the Swiss Alps, so there are mountains all around where you can go skiing in the winter, or hiking in the summer. Lake Geneva is great for boat trips, and of course there is the famous tall fountain, the Jet d'Eau.

Life in Geneva is relaxed and enjoyable. The old city has some lovely buildings and there are lots of cafés and restaurants where you can meet friends and enjoy good food. It's quite a small city, so it's easy to get around, and you don't have to spend a lot of time travelling.



#### Read the text again. Match the words and phrases with the correct definitions.

- student exchange
- postgraduate
- undergraduate
- international
- scholarship
- work experience
- a student who has finished one course at a university and is studying more
- the chance to work at a business for a short time
- a student who is studying their first course at university
- when students from two schools or universities in different countries can each go to the other school or university for a short time
- money that a student is given by a university to pay for their course
- about lots of different countries
- 🛐 🙆 104 Listen to three conversations. Who is talking and what are they doing? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.
  - Two new students are arranging to go to a welcome event together.
  - Two teachers are preparing for a welcome event for new students.
  - Two new students are meeting for the first time at a welcome event.
  - d A new student is asking for information about a welcome event.
- 6 0 104 Complete the phrases with the correct words. Listen again and check.

do I need to is there can you give me about you which room what time

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE**

some information about the welcome event? does it start? 2 3 is it in? take anything with me? food at the event? 6 What



Choose the correct definitions for these informal words and phrases.

#### PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR

- 1 You might want to get there nice and early.
  - It's a good idea to get there early.
  - It's nice that it starts early.
- You can't miss it.
  - It's difficult to find.
  - It's easy to find.
- I think that's it.
  - I think that's all you have to take.
  - I think that's very important.
- There are a few snacks.
  - There will be a lot to eat.
  - There will be some small things to eat.
- Watch the video. What do you learn about these things in Geneva? Make notes.
  - the city

- the university
- organisations in the city
- life in the city
- Compare your notes. Watch the video again to check your ideas.



## LIFE COMPETENCIES

#### SOCIAL RESPONSIBILITIES

- Work in groups. Plan a welcome event in your town or city for students from other countries. Think about:
  - where to have the event
  - what kind of event it is
  - what food and drinks to serve
  - who to invite
- 11 Make an event plan and present it to the class.



#### **FAMILY RELATIONSHIPS**

- Work in pairs and discuss the questions.
  - 1 Do you come from a big family or a small family?
  - 2 What are the good and bad things about:
    - a having lots of brothers and sisters?
    - **b** being an only child?
- 2 Look at the photos and read about Aidan and Jasmine. Which photo is Aidan's family and which photo is Jasmine's?

## JASMINE

My family is very small as I'm an **only child**. My family is just my mother, my father and me! We get on really well. My only other **relative** is my aunt Linda, who's **an important person in my life**. She's **single** – she's never **married** – and I've always spent lots of time with her. She's an artist and taught me to draw and paint. She's really interested in fashion and I like the lovely jewellery and colourful clothes that she wears. The other very important person in my life is my **fiancé**, Tom. We've just got **engaged** and we're getting **married** next year.

## AIDAN

I'm from a large family. My two brothers and I live with our father and Katie, our **stepmother**. She has two daughters and we all live together in one house. It's often quite crowded and noisy, but I love my family! I've got two little **stepsisters**, Minnie and Lulu. They love animals and sports. They're quite funny and I actually get on better with them than my brothers! I live at home but I'm hoping to get my own flat soon.

#### 3 Read the texts again and answer the questions.

- 1 How many brothers or sisters has Jasmine got?
- 2 What has Jasmine learned from her aunt?
- 3 What is Jasmine doing next year?
- 4 How many people does Aidan live with?
- 5 Are Aidan's stepsisters older or younger than him?
- 6 What is Aidan planning to do soon?

## 4 Use the blue words in the text to complete the sentences.

- 1 Lauren likes being an \_\_\_\_\_\_ because she says her parents always have time to talk to her.
- Pablo is \_\_\_\_\_ again; he doesn't have a girlfriend at the moment.
- 3 My sister got \_\_\_\_\_ last month but I haven't met her \_\_\_\_\_ yet. They've decided to get married in September.
- 4 My mum met John last year and now they're married so he's my
- 6 I don't see my \_\_\_\_\_ very often because most of them live in Australia.
- 7 My granny is a very \_\_\_\_\_\_; I can talk to her about any problems.

#### Work in pairs and tell your partner about:

- people you have lived with/live with now.
- a person in your family you get on well with.
- a relative who is an important person in your life.



## VOCABULARY

#### PERSONALITY ADJECTIVES

Work in pairs and describe the people in the photos.



- 105 Listen to Aidan describing his two brothers. Label the photos with the correct name, Harry or Leo.
- 105 Listen again and complete the sentences with the words in box.

annoying brilliant confident kind lazy quiet sociable sweet

- 1 That's Minnie on the right and Lulu on the left.
- Aren't they \_\_\_\_\_?

  2 He's much cleverer than I am he's really \_\_\_\_
- 3 He's just very ! To start with he's a bit
- 4 He's also not very to Harry.
- 5 He's much more and . He has lots of friends.
- 6 Harry is \_\_\_\_ and shy.

out

- 4 Choose the correct options to complete the definitions.
  - 1 A brilliant/confident person is very clever and understands and learns new things easily.
  - A person who is sweet/annoying is pleasant and attractive – we usually say this about children.
  - 3 Sociable/Kind people enjoy talking to people and making new friends.
  - 4 A lazy/quiet person doesn't talk much or make a lot of noise.
- Which brother do you think you would get on with best? Why?

#### LOOK LIKE AND BE LIKE

- 6 Look at the questions and answers A and B. Which question:
  - 1 asks for information about hair/eye colour, clothes, etc.?
  - 2 asks for information about what kind of person they are, e.g. funny?
  - 3 uses do or does?
  - 4 uses am/is/are?

A

What does your brother look like?

He's not very tall but he's very good looking.

B

What's he like?

He's very annoying! To start with he's a bit lazy.

Z Look at the sentences below. Are they the answers to question A or B? Circle the correct option.

1	He's very friendly and sociable.	A/B
2	He's quiet and shy.	A/B
3	He's tall and good looking.	A/B
4	He's lazy and not very kind.	A/B
5	He's short and thin with straight fair hair.	A/B

- Work in pairs. Take turns to describe a person you both know or a famous person. Can your partner guess who it is?
  - Say two things about what he/she looks like.
  - Say two things about what he/she is like.

She's got big brown eyes and curly hair.

She's funny and clever but she often forgets things.

Is it Rachel?



#### **COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES**



## GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE Watch the video



## Read the examples from Aidan's conversation and the rules and answer the questions.

Harry is taller and thinner than me. Leo is more confident and more sociable than Harry. He is better-looking than both me and Harry! And he's funnier.

- 1 What do we add to the end of short adjectives to make comparatives?
- 2 Which word do we put before long adjectives?
- 3 Which word do we use after the adjective, before the second thing we are comparing?
- 4 What is the comparative form of good?

#### Comparing adjectives Short adjectives + -er

If the adjective ends in consonant + vowel + consonant, we double the consonant.

e.g. thin - thinner big - bigger wet - wetter than

If the adjective ends in consonant + 'y', we change the 'y' to 'i'.

funny - funnier pretty - prettier lazy - lazier than

Long adjectives – more in front of the adjective more expensive more interesting more important than Irregular adjectives

good - better bad - worse far - further than

#### **⇒** GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 222

2 Read and complete the text about Alistair and Jonny Brownlee. Use the correct comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

## **CHAMPIONS** in the family

Alistair and Jonny Brownlee are two of the best triathletes in the world, and won gold and silver medals at the Olympic Games in Rio de Janeiro in 2016. They are also brothers. Alistair is two years

(old) than Jonny and he is also a bit

2 (tall).

They work well together in races and are both very strong but is one Brownlee brother <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_\_(successful) than the other one? Is Alistair a

(strong) swimmer than Jonny? Is Jonny a

(fast) runner than Alistair? And is one brother a (quick) cyclist than the other?

Well, sometimes Alistair wins and sometimes Jonny wins, but in the end they are still brothers, and when Jonny couldn't run any further near the finish line in a race in Mexico in 2016, it was Alistair who stopped running to help his brother across the finish line.

3 Work in pairs and take turns to compare you and your family or friends.

My sister is younger than me, but she's taller.

## PUSH YOURSELF BI

## GRAMMAR: EQUAL COMPARISONS WITH (NOT) AS ... AS

She is just **as intelligent as** her sister.

His hair isn't as long as your hair.

Her sister isn't as friendly as she is.

He's as lazy as you are!

- 1 Look at the examples and choose the correct answer to complete the summary.
  - **a** We use **as** + adjective + **as** when we want to talk about things being different/the same.
  - **b** We use (**not**) **as** + adjective + **as** when we want to talk about things being different/the same.
- 2 Complete the sentences with an expression (not) as ... as and the adjectives in brackets.
  - 1 He's very quiet, but he's <u>not as shy as</u> your friend Sam. (not shy)
  - 2 'I'm really bad at dancing!' 'No, you aren't. You're just me!' (good)
  - 3 It costs a lot to live in Milan, but it's still \_\_\_\_ Tokyo. (not expensive)
  - 4 Driving a car is \_\_\_\_\_ riding a motorbike. (not dangerous)
  - 5 'I didn't enjoy the book. Perhaps the film will be better?'
    'No, the film is just \_\_\_\_\_\_ the book! (boring)
  - 6 You can stay with us \_\_\_\_\_ you like. (long).



## LISTENING PART 2 TRAINING

- Work in pairs and discuss the questions.
  - 1 Are clothes and shoes important to you?
  - 2 Do clothes say something about a person?
- 2 Turn to page 195 to find out what kind of dresser you are.
- 3 © 106 For each question, write the correct answer in each gap. Write one word or a number, or a date or a time.

You will hear some information about a new shop.

#### LILY'S Fashion Boutique

Address:

149 High Street

Date opens:

(1)

Will sell:

to

just

clothes for (2)

Time shop closes:

(3) \_\_\_\_ pm

For jobs, contact:

Mr (4)



In the UK, some people wear **trainers** on their feet. Women put their money in a **purse**, which they often carry in a **handbag**.

However, in the US, people wear **sneakers** on their feet, women carry **purses** and keep their money in a **wallet**.



## READING PART 5 TRAINING

Read a woman's email to her brother. For these questions, write the correct answer in each gap. Write ONE word for each gap.

Example: 0 am

Look at the example and the sentence around it. Ellie is talking about a new job starting next week.

We use the present continuous to describe future plans. The verb you need before ing is to be. So 'I **am** starting' is the correct answer.

Read the text and look at questions 1–5. Try to decide what kind of grammar word is needed.

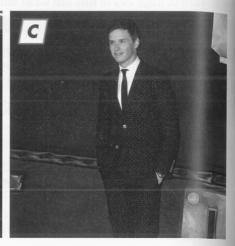
To: ben.baker@aol.com From: ellie.diazt@gmail.com	Q <b>n</b> i Reply Forward <mark>✓</mark>
Hi Ben  Iamstarting my new job nex I feel really excited about it.  Yesterday, Ishopping wi Owen. He's better 2me at	th my friend
clothes.  At first, I decided <sup>3</sup> buy a trousers. But then I saw a grey suit and I really liked it a <sup>4</sup> . It <sup>5</sup> expensive than the jacke trousers, but I bought it.	with a skirt was
I'll look good on my first day! Write soon,	
Love Ellie	

## READING

- Are you interested in the clothes that celebrities wear? Why?/Why not? Which celebrities do you think dress well?
- Read about some of the people on the list of the world's best-dressed celebrities. Match the texts with the photos (A-C).







- Read the texts again. Who:
  - 1 might wear boots and sunglasses with a designer dress at a party?
  - 2 wears very interesting clothes?
  - 3 makes fashion writers feel excited?

- 4 has an unusual style?
- 5 is always on the best-dressed list?
- 4 Complete the sentences with words in red from the texts.
  - Do you have a piece of \_\_\_\_\_\_, like a ring or necklace, that is special to you?
  - 2 Sam always buys clothes and shoes from famous
  - 3 Joe never wears or to job interviews, but he still looks smart.
  - 4 Cara reads a lot of fashion magazines to see what are in.
  - 5 Do you only wear \_\_\_\_ when you do sport, or do you wear them all the time to be fashionable?
  - 6 Oh, no! I've forgotten my \_\_\_\_\_\_. It's got my money, keys and phone in it.
  - 7 Emma, do you only wear \_\_\_\_\_ when it's sunny or do you wear them to look cool too?
  - 8 It's too hot to wear shoes. I think I'll put on my today.
- 5 Work in pairs. Which celebrities are the best dressed in your country? What is their style like?

## BEST-DRESSED CELEBRITIES

- Actress Lupita Nyong'o is one of the most successful stars in Hollywood at the moment. She is also famous for the way she dresses. **Fashion** magazine writers and photographers always get excited when she arrives at film premieres and parties. Her dress is usually the prettiest and she wears the coolest shoes or **sandals** from the best new **designers**.
- Actor Eddie Redmayne was a model before he started acting. Perhaps this is why he has been on the best-dressed list every year since he became famous. He often wears the smartest and most interesting suits and ties from the world's hottest designer brands and he looks fantastic!
- Everybody talks about what the singer Rihanna wears. At celebrity parties, her clothes and handbag are often the most unusual.

  She wears beautiful designer dresses with cool hats, jewellery or sunglasses and big boots or trainers.



SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES





- Read the rules and answer the questions.
  - 1 What do we add to the end of short adjectives to make superlatives?
  - What do we put before long adjectives?
  - Which word do we use before the superlative words?
  - Which word is the superlative form of good?

## Superlative adjectives

Short adjectives + -est

If the adjective ends in consonant + vowel + consonant. we double the consonant.

hot - hotter - the hottest big - bigger - the biggest thin - thinner - the thinnest

If the adjective ends in 'y', we change the 'y' to 'i'.

pretty - prettier - the prettiest funny - funnier - the funniest ugly - uglier - the ugliest

#### Long adjectives - most in front of the adjective

the most expensive the most interesting the most colourful

Irregular adjectives

out

anna

and

the

ith

y or

good - better - the best bad - worse - the worst far - further - the furthest

#### GRAMMAR REFERENCE / page 222

Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.

1	It's film I'	ve ever watched. (boring)
2	That'spo	air of trainers in the shop. (cheap)
3	I'm sorry, but that's	
	I'm not going to bu	ıy it! (ugly)
4	She's one of	actors in Mexico. (famous)
E	TI .	

That's hotel in the city (good). It's also (expensive).

It was day of the year. (hot) 3 Complete the article with comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives in brackets.

## What's new in clothes?

Most people just want to look good and feel comfortable when they buy clothes, but for some people, the clothes they buy are 1 (important) than that. At the moment one of 2 (interesting) things in the shops are clothes made from upcycled or recycled materials like old plastic bottles or glass. Making these (difficult) and 4 clothes is 3 than making normal clothes. However, a lot of people now think we should make more upcycled or recycled clothes to help our planet and they are 5 to buy them than in the past.

- P @ 107 Listen to some superlative adjectives. How is the -est ending pronounced?
- P 107 Listen again and repeat.

hottest thinnest funniest prettiest ugliest biggest

- Work in pairs and talk about:
  - the smartest clothes you've ever worn
  - the best-dressed, most fashionable person you know
  - the most interesting film you've ever seen/book you've
  - hottest and/or coldest place you have ever visited
- Have you got any upcycled or recycled clothes? Are they becoming popular in your country?



#### A PRODUCT REVIEW

- Work in pairs and discuss the questions.
  - 1 Do you follow any fashion bloggers or other bloggers on the internet?
  - What other kinds of products do you watch/read reviews about?
  - 3 How much do reviews and blogs help you decide what to do or buy?
- 2 Read the review from a fashion blogger's website and answer the questions.
  - 1 Where and when can people buy the trainers?
  - 2 What does the reviewer like about the trainers?
  - 3 What negative things does he say about them?
  - 4 What advice does he give about buying the trainers?

I'm so happy that the new trainers from my favourite brand are on sale at last! I bought mine online, but you can find them in sports shops, too.

I fell in love with the colours of the trainers immediately. They are the best-looking trainers I've seen for a long time – and they are also very light and comfortable to wear. But for me, the best thing about them is that they are so cool! You can wear them with anything – they'll make all your other clothes look good.

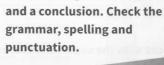
On the less positive side is the price (€109.99). The trainers look great, but they are not very practical or good value for money. When I wore them in the rain, my feet got wet in five minutes. There are lots of cheaper, stronger trainers available.

So do I recommend the trainers? It depends on what you want. If you are looking for a pair of trainers to wear every day, then they aren't a good buy. But if you need a pair of great-looking trainers, these are the best. Buy them quickly before they sell out!

- 3 Look at the phrases in bold in the text. Which phrase(s) does the writer use:
  - to say what he likes about the product?
  - 2 to introduce a negative point about the product?
  - 3 to talk about whether or not it's a good idea to spend money on the product?
- 4 Look at the end of the review. What do you think 'sell out' means?
- 5 Look at the plan of the review. Match the paragraph numbers with the topics.
  - Paragraph 1
- a the bad things about the product
- Paragraph 2
- **b** conclusion: overall opinion of the product recommendation
- Paragraph 3
- c the good things about the product
- Paragraph 4
- **d** introduction where/when you bought the product
- 6 In which part of a review could you use these phrases?

## **USEFUL LANGUAGE**

- 1 The great thing about X is ...
- 2 All in all, I would/wouldn't recommend ...
- 3 The biggest disadvantage of X is ...
- 4 What I liked best about X is ...
- 5 They would/wouldn't be a good buy for ...
- 6 I'm not so happy about ...
- You are going to write a review of a product you have bought recently. Choose the product and use the structure in Exercise 5 to help you plan your review.
  - Think of some interesting adjectives to describe the product
  - Think of how you feel about the product and why.
  - Think of two advantages and two disadvantages of the product.
  - Decide what you recommend overall.
- Write your review. When you have finished, exchange your review with a partner and check each other's work. Make sure they have included an introduction, the advantages and disadvantages of the product,







SPEAKING

ght

**APPEARANCE AND PERSONALITY** 



- Look at the photos. Work in pairs and answer the questions.
  - 1 Where do you think the photos were taken?
  - 2 Who do you think the people are?
  - 3 What are they doing?
- Work in pairs and take turns to describe each person in the photos. What do the people look like? What are they wearing?

He/she is ... He/she's got ... He/she's wearing ... He/she looks ...

Read the comments. Which photos could they match with? Do you agree with them?

They look quite serious.

2 It could be in Britain.

The woman has got red hair.

It might be face paint.

5 They're having a really good time.

They look very happy!

- 4 0 108 Listen to two people talking about the photos. Which photo is each person talking about?
- 5 0 108 Look at the opinion words the speakers use and complete the sentences below. Listen again and check.

I'm sure I (don't) think could be it might be maybe perhaps probably

1 \_\_\_\_\_the people in the middle of the photo are friends.

2 they're having a really good time.

3 ... she's got something on her face – \_\_\_\_\_face paint.

4 \_\_\_\_\_ they are at a music festival or gig.

It's a sunny day, but \_\_\_\_\_\_ it's very hot.There are trees with lots of areen, so I think it

6 There are trees with lots of green, so I think it's summer.

7 It in Britain.

8 They look quite serious – \_\_\_\_\_ they're thinking about work.

6 Work in pairs. Turn to page 194 and talk about the photo. Describe the people, where they are and what they're doing. Use the language in Exercises 2 and 5 to help you.

# EXAM FOCUS

## READING PART 5

#### **EXAM CHECK**

- Read these sentences about Part 5 and decide if they are true (T) or false (F). Correct the false statements.
  - 1 Reading Part 5 tests your vocabulary.
  - 2 You complete an email or postcard by choosing words from three options.
  - 3 There will only be one text for you to read.
  - 4 There are words missing from the text.
  - 5 There is an example which has been done for you.
- 2 For each question, write the correct answer.

Write ONE word for each gap.

Example: 0 VERY



## LISTENING PART 2

## EXAM CHECK

- Match each question about Listening Part 2 with the correct answer.
  - 1 How many people will I hear?
  - 2 What will I read?
  - 3 How many answers do I write?
  - 4 Are all of the answers words?
  - 5 Will I have to listen for the spelling of a name?
- **a** maybe
- **b** No. Some are numbers.
- c one
- d a form or some notes
- e Five. There's also an example.
- 2 0 109 For each question, write the correct answer in the gap.

Write one word or a number or a date or a time.

You will hear a woman talking at the start of a course on fashion.

Fashion – short course	
Name of room for lessons:	North
Time lessons start:	(1) am
Day for drawing lesson:	(2)
Name of photographer:	(3) Peter
Bring:	(4)
We'll make:	a <b>(5)</b>



## **REAL WORLD**

# SHOPPING FOR CLOTHES IN DIERAL

- Look at the photos (A-C) of Dubai. Which place would you prefer to go shopping in? Why?
- 2 Read the introduction to the text about shopping in Dubai. Are prices generally higher or lower in Dubai than in other countries?

Dubai is a great place to go shopping for clothes and other things. There are lots of big, modern shopping malls with shops selling all kinds of items. Many of the things you can buy are tax free, so they are cheaper than in other countries.

1 The malls are a great place to buy clothes. There are lots of shops that sell designer clothes with top brand names at great prices. The shops open at 10 am and the mornings are a good time to shop because the malls are quite quiet. Evenings are busier, but it's cooler then, so shopping is easier and more fun than in the afternoon.

2 The traditional markets, called souks, are also a good place to go shopping for clothes. A lot of things are cheaper in the souks, so these are the places to find bargains. But, the prices aren't fixed, so you have to know how much you are happy to pay for something. Go to the souk to find colourful scarves and dresses. You can also find second-hand clothes at very low prices in some souks. There are also lots of interesting souvenirs to take home with you.

3 Every year, there is a month-long shopping festival in Dubai. The shops in the malls all have sales, with some great price reductions. At the Dubai Global Village, there are stalls selling things from all around the world, so it's a great place to find clothes that are a bit different. There is also music and dancing in the streets, a big wheel to ride on and fireworks in the evenings. It's like one big shopping party!

- 3 Read the rest of the text. Match the photos (A-C) with the paragraphs.
- Read the text again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
  - 1 There are only a few shopping malls in Dubai.
  - 2 The afternoon is the best time to visit shopping malls in Dubai.
  - 3 You can often buy things for less money in the souks.
  - 4 The prices in the souks are always the same.
  - 5 There is entertainment in the streets during the shopping festival.
  - 6 You can buy things from lots of different countries at the Dubai Global Village.



- Find the words and phrases in the text and choose the correct definitions.
  - 1 tax free
    - a without paying extra money to the country
    - **b** without knowing where things come from
  - 2 designer clothes
    - a clothes with well-known names
    - **b** clothes that are made specially for you
  - 3 bargain
    - a something that is cheaper than usual
    - **b** something that is more expensive than usual
  - 4 souvenir
    - a a present
    - **b** something you buy to help you remember a place
  - 5 price reduction
    - a a higher price
    - **b** a lower price
  - 6 special offer
    - a lower price for a short time
    - **b** something you can only buy at some times of the year
- 110 Listen to three conversations about shopping for clothes. What are the speakers doing? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.
  - a buying clothes in a market
  - b asking a friend for advice about clothes
  - c asking a shop assistant about the price of some clothes
  - d asking a shop assistant for a different size
- 110 Complete the questions with the correct words. Listen again and check.

bigger	CC	lours	discou	nt	fit
how muc	h	look	sale	SI	uits

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE**

Do you have a \_\_\_\_\_ size?
Do you have it in other \_\_\_\_\_
Are these shoes in the \_\_\_\_\_
are they?
Is there a \_\_\_\_\_ for students?
How do they \_\_\_\_\_?
That colour really \_\_\_\_\_ you.



me perfectly.

8 Choose the correct definitions for these informal words and phrases.

#### PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR

- 1 We usually have all sizes in stock.
  - We don't usually sell all sizes.
  - **b** There are usually all sizes in the shop.
- 2 I'm afraid not.
  - a No, I'm sorry.
  - b I think it's possible they aren't.
- 3 If you come this way ...
  - You wear them like this.
  - b Please follow me.
- 4 It's worth taking a look.
  - a You might find something you like here.
  - **b** Don't look at these.
- Watch the video. What do you learn about these things in Dubai? Make notes.
  - the city
  - shopping malls
  - the souks
  - the shopping festival



## LIFE COMPETENCIES

#### CREATIVITY AND INNOVATION

- Ocheck your ideas. Watch the video again to check your ideas.
  - 1 Work in pairs. Imagine you are going shopping in Dubai to buy some new clothes. You have 300 Emirati Dirham to spend and want to find some bargains.
    - Find out how much this amount is worth in your country's money.
    - Find some information about what you can buy in Dubai.
    - Look at some websites for shops and souks in Dubai.
    - Decide what to buy.
  - 2 Compare with your classmates. Who found the best bargains?

# PLAY IT, WATCH IT, LOVE IT



## VOCABULARY

#### **SPORTS**

- Work in pairs and discuss the questions.
  - 1 Which sports do/don't you enjoy playing or watching?
  - 2 How much time do you spend playing or watching sport a week?
  - 3 Do you have a favourite sports team?
- 2 Look at the photos of the six most popular sports in the world. Match the photos with the sports and then do the quiz.

athletics basketball cricket football rugby tennis

## Which sport ..

- is a game for two or four people? You can play it indoors or outdoors by **hitting** a ball over a **net** with a **racket**.
- 2 is a game in which two **teams** of 11 players **kick** a ball and try to **score goals**?
- 3 is a competition with lots of different sports where people run races, jump and throw things?
- needs two teams of 15 players for a **match**? The ball isn't round and the goal is the shape of a letter H.
- is popular in countries like Australia and India? The players try to hit a ball with a long, square **bat**.
- 6 is a game which often has a lot of very tall players? Two teams try to win points by throwing a ball through a high net.









- 3 111 Put the sports in order 1-6 from the most to the least popular. Compare your ideas with a partner. Listen and check your answers.
- Write the most popular sports in your country.
  Compare your answers with a partner.
- 5 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
  - Football players mustn't touch the ball with their hands; they have to kick/hit/play it with their feet.
  - 2 She is going to *push/throw/score* the ball to another player in her *group/team/set*, who will try to catch it.
  - 3 Our team are losing/winning/succeeding the match; we have already made/scored/hit three goals and the other team only one.
  - **4** Please lend me your tennis bat/racket/stick to use in this match. I've broken mine!
  - 5 There are different running sports/races/games in the Olympic Games, for example 100 metres, 400 metres and 800 metres.
  - 6 If a tennis player hits the ball into the goal/net/bat, he/she doesn't win a point.
  - 7 A cricket goal/net/bat is quite big and heavy so your arms can get tired during a long sport/match/race.



- Work in pairs. Read the quote about football and answer the questions.
  - What do you think it means?
  - Do you think it is also true for other sports? 2
  - Are you a football fan? Why?/Why not?
- Read the text about football. Which facts are new for you? Which facts do you find the most interesting?

### The changing face of

### FOOTBA

Football is a very old sport, which some people say began in China in 500 BCE! When people started playing it in England in the 13th Century, the game was called 'football' because rich people rode horses for all their sports but this was a game ordinary people could play on foot. People were banned from playing it because the games

es.

ds:



sometimes lasted for days, there were no rules and players were often badly hurt or even killed! For hundreds of years, people couldn't play football in the street or other public places.

At this time, women played football too. Women's teams in Britain were also very popular and successful in the 1800s. But in 1921, the British Football Association decided that women's teams couldn't use their football pitches to play matches. Amazingly, this didn't change until 1971 when the Women's Football Association started.

Italy had the first professional women players in the 1970s and women's football has continued to grow globally since then. At the next FIFA Women's World Cup, teams from 24 countries will take part and millions of fans will experience the highs and lows of watching their teams score amazing goals or lose exciting matches against tough opponents. And with more and more girls taking up football, the future of the women's game looks good.

### FOOTBALL RULES - IN A NUTSHELL!

Teams can't have more than 11 players on the pitch. Players can use their feet, head or chest to play the ball.

Players mustn't touch the ball with their hands during play.

The ball needs to cross the goal line to be a goal.

Referees can show players a red card and send the player off the pitch.

Referees have to add any injury time at the end of each half.

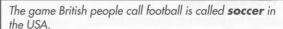
- Read the text again. Are these statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
  - The game of football is more than 1,000 years old.
  - It's called football because you use your feet to play the game.
  - For hundreds of years, people could play football anywhere in England.
  - Before 1971, women's teams couldn't use the same pitches as men to play matches.
  - Women's football is becoming less popular.
- Complete the description with the words in the box.

goal	loses	match	off	pitch	red card
referee	rules	score	seno	d tea	ıms

In modern football, there are two 1	of 11 players.
They play the game outdoors on a big f	ield called a
football <sup>2</sup> .	

football 2 .	
The players can't touch the ball with	n their hands. The aim of
the game is to kick the ball into the	other team's 3 .
Each time a player does this, they	
The team which <sup>5</sup> is the c	
goals. A football game is called a	
minutes long, with a break of 15 m	ninutes in the middle.
Modern football has lots of 7	that say what players
can and can't do. A 8 cor	ntrols the game. If a player
doesn't follow the rules, the referee	
9 and 10 him or	her 11 .

#### DID YOU KNOW?



British people play football on a pitch and Americans play soccer on a field.

### GRAMMAR



### GRAMMAR ON THE MOVE Watch the video



### CAN, MUST, HAVE TO, NEED TO

Read the sentences and complete the rules with the verbs in the box.

Teams can't have more than 11 players.
Players can use their feet, head or chest.
Players mustn't touch the ball.
Players must be fit to play.
The ball needs to cross the goal line.
Goalkeepers don't need to stay in their goal.
Referees have to add any injury time.
They don't have to wear a black top anymore.

can	don't need to	have to	mustn't
COIL	doll i llood lo	1101010	111001111

We use	
1 to	talk about things we are allowed to do.
can't / 2	to talk about things we aren't allowed
to do.	the family elected the questions
must / 3	to talk about things that are necessary
don't have to aren't necessar	to / 4 to talk about things that cy.
Be careful not t	to confuse mustn't and don't have to.
You mustn't too	uch the ball with your hand. (It's the rule.)
You don't have it's not a neces	to go to the party. (You can if you want but sity.)

#### **⇒ GRAMMAR REFERENCE** / page 224

- 2 Match the beginnings of the sentences (1-6) with the correct endings (a-f).
  - 1 If you aren't coming to football practice
  - You can't wear trainers for the match;
  - 3 We don't need to hurry,
  - 4 You mustn't say bad things
  - 5 She needs to try harder
  - 6 We must all work together
  - a to be a good team.
  - **b** about the players in the other team.
  - c you have to tell the team captain.
  - d if she really wants to improve.
  - e we've got lots of time.
  - f you need proper football boots.

UCONN	ente.	44.5k	
100			7

3 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of can, must, have to and need to. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

1	Ito wear glasses when I'm reading or I	
	see the words on the page.	

- 2 On Sundays, I get up as early as I do on the other days of the week. I stay in bed.
- 3 ' you run as fast as Jake?' 'No, I .'
- 4 You \_\_\_\_\_ eat a lot of fruit and vegetables if you want to be healthy.
- 5 My English is getting better and I \_\_\_\_\_\_look in the dictionary so much when I'm reading something.
- **6** They \_\_\_\_\_listen when the teacher is explaining something.
- 7 All of you \_\_\_\_ come to football practice next week. It's important because the team \_\_\_\_ learn to work together better.
- Yes you do. Everyone in the team has to wear them.'
- 4 Complete the sentences so they are true for you.
  Then compare your ideas with a partner.
  - 1 People don't have to ...
  - 2 Sometimes, we all need to ...
  - 3 If you want to do well in English, you must ...





- 1 Do you like running? Why?/Why not?
- 2 How far can you run?
- 3 What clothes and equipment do you need to be a runner?

### Read the text about Kenyan runners, then answer the questions.

- What sort of races do Kenyans often win?
- 2 Which part of Kenya do many of the runners come from?

### 112 Listen to a journalist talking to Florence Kipoge, a teacher at a running school. Why does she think there are so many good runners in this part of Kenya?

### 112 Listen again and choose the best answers to complete the sentences.

- Before talking to Florence Kipoge, the journalist
  - a went running.
  - **b** watched some of the students running.
- 2 Many of the students run to school every day
  - a because their families don't have any transport.
  - b because they want to practise running.
- 3 When Florence was a teenager she ran
  - a five kilometres every day.
  - **b** ten kilometres every day.
- 4 People in this part of Kenya get strong legs and breathe well
  - a because they run uphill a lot.
  - **b** because they work hard.
- 5 Students at the school have a good running style because they don't
  - a eat too much.
  - **b** usually wear shoes.
- 6 Students buy running shoes
  - a when they win money in competitions.
  - b when they hurt their feet.
- 7 Florence says the students at the school
  - a dream about being rich.
  - b work and train very hard.

### 5 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- Have you ever done a lot of training for a sports competition or event? When? How many hours? What did you do?
- 2 Would you like to be a professional sports person? Why?/Why not?

### AMAZING YOUNG RUNNERS

There are Kenyan athletes at all the big running competitions in the world and often they are the winners. Some of them have won lots of races, so they are real champions! At the last Olympic Games, Kenyan athletes won the gold and silver medals for many of the long-distance races including the men's and the women's marathon. Many of these athletes are from the same part of Kenya – the mountains above the Rift Valley. The mountain air helps train them to breathe well when they are running. There are special schools in the Rift Valley which help train young people to become professional runners. We went to visit one of them.

### VOCABULARY

### DO, PLAY AND GO WITH SPORTS

Read the sentences and complete the rules with do, play and go.

They're **playing** hockey. My friend Catrina loves **doing** karate. He **goes** running on Saturday mornings.

- We use \_\_\_\_\_ with non-team sports and activities.We use \_\_\_\_\_ for ball games.
- 3 We use \_\_\_\_ with sports ending in -ing.
- Put the sports and activities on the correct line.

baseball cycling fishing gymnastics aerobics handball horse riding judo rock climbing sailing skiing snowboarding surfing volleyball windsurfing yoga

- 1 do: \_\_\_\_\_ 2 play: \_\_\_\_ 3 go: \_\_\_\_
- Work in pairs and ask and answer about the sports you and your friends do. Ask how often, when and where they do them. How do they make them feel?

I go swimming once or twice a week at the sports centre. I go late in the evening. Swimming helps me feel relaxed.

### WRITING PART 7 TRAINING







- 1 Look at the words and pictures and match each picture (1-3) with a set of words (A-C). What do you think is happening in the story?
  - A bare feet have idea take off win
  - **B** dog sit down track trainers
  - **C** begin race run away take
- 2 Work in pairs. Write one or two sentences for each picture. Use the words in the boxes to help you. Then put the sentences together to make a story.
- 3 Read the story below. How is it similar to yours? How is it different? Which tenses are used?

As Joe was sitting down on the track to put on his trainers, a dog arrived. The dog took a trainer and ran away.

Joe didn't know what to do. He didn't have time to catch the dog before the start of the race.

Suddenly, he had an idea. He took off his other trainer and ran barefoot. He won the race!

- 4 Read another longer version of the story about Joe. Answer the questions.
  - 1 How is it different from the one in Exercise 3? Is it more interesting? Why?
  - 2 What kind of words are in blue?

As Joe was sitting down on the hard, red track to put on his new trainers, a big, friendly dog arrived. The dog took one of Joe's expensive trainers and ran away.

Joe didn't know what to do. The race was going to start so he didn't have time to catch the silly dog.

Suddenly, he had a brilliant idea. He took off his other trainer and ran barefoot. He won the race!

5	Rewrite the beginnings of these stories. Make					
	them more interesting by adding adjectives in					
	front of the nouns. Use the adjectives in the box					
	to help you.					

colourful busy beautiful big angry hard fresh fantastic crowded expensive round small modern quiet large new terrible ugly shiny strange

- 1 One day I was sitting in a **café** when I noticed that there was a **bag** on the **table** next to me.
- 2 A woman was walking through the park when suddenly she saw an object on the path in front of her.
- One afternoon, as I was crossing the road to my house, a car stopped in the street next to me and a man put his head out of the window to speak to me.
- 6 Look at the three pictures on page 194. Write the story shown in the pictures. Write 35 words or more.

### GRAMMAR

ich

#### **TENSES REVIEW**

Complete the text with the verbs in the box in the correct tense.

begin be born stop study take part win (x2) work (x2)

Trischa Zorn is an American para-athlete. She was in California in 1964 and blind when she 1 swimming when she was 10 years old. She started training for the Olympics while she at high school and she seven gold medals at the Olympic Games in Arnhem in 1980. Since then she 5 a total of 55 more Olympics Games and 6 medals! When she 7 swimming, she worked as a teacher for five years, but she now 8 the US government. At the moment she ? project to help disabled soldiers do sports and train for the Olympic Games.

- Work in pairs. Which tenses are used in the gaps? Why are they used?
- 113 Listen to the words. What do you notice about the vowel sounds in the words? Listen again and repeat.

bought thought taught saw

### PUSH YOURSELF BI

### **VOCABULARY: ADVERBS**

- They worked **slowly** but they finished the job. **Afterwards** they sat down and had a rest.
  - We put the bags down carefully on the ground and lay down on top of them.

    Surprisingly we didn't feel tired.
  - I quickly climbed into the room through the open window. Then I closed it. Luckily there was no one in the room to see me.
- Read the information about adverbs and complete the gaps with one of the phrases in the box.

how something happened how the speaker or writer feels about something when something happened

Adverbs of time: show us <sup>1</sup>, e.g. before, afterwards, next, finally.

Adverbs of manner: show us <sup>2</sup>, e.g. suddenly (quickly and unexpectedly)

Sentence adverbs: show us <sup>3</sup>, e.g. fortunately (it's a good thing), unfortunately (it's a bad thing). They go at the beginning of the phrase.

2 Look at the example sentences above and match the adverbs in bold with the three types of adverbs below.

adverbs of time \_\_\_\_\_ adverbs of manner \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 Choose the best option to complete the sentences.
  - 1 We had dinner and afterwards/before/suddenly we went to bed.
  - 2 I forgot my purse and couldn't pay for my coffee, but fortunately/unfortunately/sadly my friend paid for me.
  - 3 I was getting ready to go out when finally/suddenly/ before the telephone rang.
  - 4 She was sad because her friend forgot to say goodbye after/before/next he left.
  - 5 Finally/Unfortunately/Suddenly it was already dark when we arrived at the house, so I couldn't see the beautiful garden.







Loli, Monterrey Basketball fan Sandra, Cardiff Rugby fan Arno, Milan Formula 1 fan

- Look at the photos of three sports. Match the photos with the names of the people and the sports they like.

  Are these sports popular in your country? What do you know about them?
- 2 114 Listen to the three speakers talking about why they became sports fans. Write the names of the speakers in the order you hear them in the first row of the table below.
- 114 Listen again and complete the rest of the table.

	1	2	3
Age when he/she started watching the sport			HISTORIA RISKI
Why he/she started watching the sport		IL AUU SIII II S	the bursed person
Where the sport is played/ practised			(basketball) court
What the person likes about the sport/feels when watching a match	It's exciting – she likes the singing during matches and the atmosphere	lang teritor a magic	Technologies of the Techno

#### 4 Match the words with the definitions.

- 1 away match
- a a sports game that a team plays in the town where they come from
- 2 home match
- **b** a piece of paper that you can use to go and watch all the matches of one team in one year

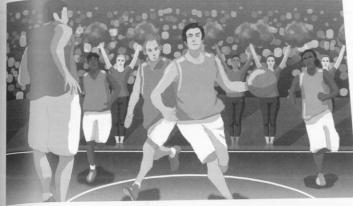
- 3 live
- c a sports game that a team plays in a different town
- 4 season ticket
- d seen or heard at the same time as it is happening
- Read what Sandra says about rugby and complete the gaps with the words below.

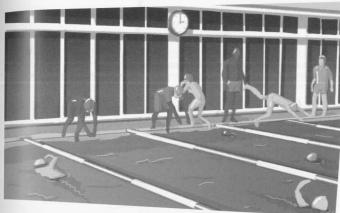
away	matches	home matches	live	season ticket	
Now I'r	m a serious	fan and I have a	1	to watch th	e Cardiff Blues, the team I support. I go to all the Blue
2	and I	sometimes follow t	hem to	3   Ir	eally love watching rugby 4

### 6 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- 1 What are the advantages and disadvantages of watching a sport live and watching it on television or online?
- 2 Why do you think sports teams win home matches more often than away matches?
- 3 How much do tickets to sports matches cost in your country? Do you ever go? Why?/Why not?

### SPEAKING PART 2 TRAINING





- Look at these pictures. Which of these sports have you tried? Which did you enjoy or not enjoy? Why?
- 2 \int 115 Listen to two exam candidates, Mei and Luca, discussing the pictures. Complete the table. Put a tick if he/she likes the sport or cross if he/she doesn't like it. Make notes about any other information you hear.

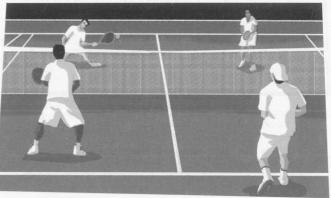




	MEI	LUCA
Basketball	X very fast game She's not very good	
Running		
Swimming		
Tennis		

- 3 Do Mei and Luca do this task well? Give reasons.
- 116 Now listen to the examiner asking questions about the sports in the pictures and write down three questions the examiner asks.
- 5 In phase 1 of Part 2 of the speaking exam you have to discuss some pictures with your partner. Look at the pictures on page 195 and follow the instructions.





- 6 117 Now listen to Mei and Luca doing phase 2 of Speaking Part 2. Which sport would Luca like to learn? Does Mei prefer watching sports or playing sports?
- 2 117 Listen again. Complete the gaps in the phrases that Mei and Luca use to give positive opinions about sports.

it's good for you I think it's amazing my favourite thing is I'd like to go it looks awesome

7	Which new sp	oort would you like to learn, Mei?'
	'I'm interested	in learning how to water-ski.'
	'Why?'	
	'Because	. Some people say it's a dangerous
	sport, but	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
-		

2 'And what about you, Luca?'

'I'd like to try snowboarding. My cousins are very good snowboarders and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ snowboarding with them.'

3 'Which do you prefer, watching sports or playing sports, Luca?' 'I don't know really. It's different for different sports. But probably playing sports, because it's fun and

4 'And you, Mei?'
'Definitely watching sports.\_\_\_\_\_\_ to go to a football match to watch my team.'

- **8** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the following questions.
  - 1 Which new sport would you like to learn?
  - 2 Which do you prefer, watching sports or playing sports?

# EXAM FOCUS

### WRITING PART 7

### EXAM CHECK

Complete this information about Writing Part 7 with words in the box.

In Writing Part 7 you see three 1 . Together, they 2 a story.

You have to 3 what the story is, and then 4 it. Your story needs to be at least 35 5 long.

2 Look at the three pictures.

Write the story shown in the pictures.

Write 35 words or more.

⇒ WRITING BANK / pages 235–236.







### SPEAKING PART 2

### **EXAM CHECK**

- The sentences below tell you what happens in Speaking Part 2, in the order that it happens. Match the beginning of each sentence with the correct ending.
  - 1 At the beginning of Speaking Part 2, the examiner will
  - 2 Next, the examiner will
  - 3 Then the examiner will
  - 4 After this, the examiner will
  - 5 Finally, the examiner will

- a stop you and ask each of you a few questions about the pictures.
- **b** give you and your partner five pictures to look at.
- take the pictures away, and ask you two more questions about the same topic.
- d give you one or two minutes to talk about the pictures with your partner.
- e ask if you like the things you can see in the pictures.
- 2 In this part of the test you are going to talk together.

Here are some pictures that show different sports you can do in the sea.

Do you like these different sports you can do in the sea? Say why or why not. Talk together.

SPEAKING BANK / pages 241-242.











- 3 Now one of you is the examiner and the other is a candidate. The examiner should ask these questions, and the candidate should answer.
  - Do you think swimming in the sea is dangerous? Why?/Why not?
  - Do you think sailing in the sea is difficult? Why?/Why not?
  - Do you think surfing in the sea is fun? Why?/Why not?
- Now change. The person who was the candidate before is now the examiner. The examiner should ask these questions, and the candidate should answer.
  - Do you think windsurfing in the sea is easy? Why?/Why not?
  - Do you think fishing in the sea is interesting? Why?/Why not?
- 5 For each question below, take turns to ask and answer.
  - Which sport do you do most often? Why?
  - Do you prefer to do sports alone, or in a team? Why?

**HOW WAS IT?** 

Gave it a go

**Getting there** 

Aced it!



# GOING TO A SPORTS EVENT IN ... MADRID

- Look at the photos (A-D) of football in Madrid. What can you see in the photos? Do you ever go to football matches or watch them on TV? Which team do you support?
- Read the webpage about a tour of the Bernabéu Stadium.
  Which part of the tour would you enjoy the most? Why?



Tour length: 1 hour and 30 minutes

Best time to visit: early in the morning

#### **TOUR HIGHLIGHTS**

- Enter the rooms where the home team and away team get changed. Look at the shirts of famous players who have played for Real Madrid.
- Walk through the tunnel onto the pitch and imagine hearing thousands of fans cheering for you.
- Walk around the pitch.
- See the different stands where fans sit to watch the game.
- Imagine what it's like to kick a ball into one of the famous goals.
- Visit the stadium museum and learn the history of the club and the stadium.
- Look at the trophies Real Madrid has won.
- On match days, why not buy a ticket and stay on to see the game?



- 3 Read the webpage again. Match the words and phrases with the correct definitions.
  - 1 home team
  - 2 away team
  - 3 tunnel
  - 4 pitch
  - 5 stands
  - 6 trophies
- a the team that is playing a game at its own stadium
- **b** an area of grass where people play football
- c large silver or gold cups that teams get if they win competitions
- **d** the part of a stadium that players walk through to start the game
- e the parts of a stadium where the people who are watching the game sit
- f the team that is playing a game at another team's stadium

Read three reviews of a stadium tour in the UK.
Which person didn't enjoy it?

### ( ClareM

I'm not a supporter of this team, and I'm not very keen on football, but this was a great way to spend a morning. You can go right to the top of the stadium and get a great view of the pitch. I loved the shop, too – I bought a team scarf as a souvenir!

### O TomR44

There's lots of information about the club. We also bought audio guides, which told us all about the history of the club. We loved seeing all the trophies. You can go right down to the pitch side and sit where the manager sits. Great fun!

### MizziGrand

I usually love stadium tours, but this one wasn't great! It was really busy, and they make you move around so quickly you don't get a chance to see anything. The changing rooms were really disappointing, and there was no time for photos. The tour ended at the shop, where everything was really expensive!

- 5 Read the reviews again. Which person ...
  - I thinks that there were too many people on the tour?
  - 2 bought something as a reminder of their visit?
  - 3 learned a lot from listening to something?
  - 4 thinks there wasn't enough time for the tour?
  - 5 enjoyed being somewhere where an important person usually goes?
  - 6 doesn't like football?
- 118 Listen to three conversations. Who are the people? There is one extra answer which you do not need to use.
  - a two tourists talking during a stadium tour
  - **b** a fan buying tickets to watch a match
  - c a guide showing people around a stadium
  - d two tourists talking after a match
- 118 Complete the phrases with the correct words. Listen again and check.

chance great referee support too what

#### **PHRASES YOU MIGHT USE**

- 1 Which team do you ?
- 2 about you?
- 3 That was a \_\_\_\_ game!
- 4 Me
- 5 The goalkeeper had no
- 6 I think the got that wrong.

8 Choose the correct definitions for these informal words and phrases.

#### PHRASES YOU MIGHT HEAR

- 1 Let's see what we've got.
  - a I will check which tickets we have.
  - b I can't see any free tickets.
- 2 Which part of the stadium did you have in mind?
  - a Do you mind where you sit?
  - b Where would you like to sit?
- 3 It's hard to say.
  - a It will be difficult for you to see.
  - b I'm not sure.
- 4 If the action's all at your end, ...
  - a If the game all happens close to you, ...
  - b If the game finishes very quickly, ...
- 5 You should get a better view from there.
  - You should choose a different seat.
  - b I think you will see better from there.
- Watch the video. What do you learn about these things? Make notes.
  - Madrid
  - football teams in the city
  - stadium tours
  - buying tickets for matches
- Och Compare your notes. Watch the video again to check your ideas.



### LIFE COMPETENCIES

SHARING IDEAS AND RESPECTING OTHERS'
CONTRIBUTIONS

Work in pairs. Choose another famous sports event you are interested in. Find out about tickets and tours. Compare your ideas in groups. Agree which event you would all like to go to the most.

# PROGRESS CHECK 5

### **UNITS 12-14**

1 Match each photo with what the person says about their clothes.









- 1 I love well-known brands, and I always try to look fashionable. I love dark colours.
- 2 I like to wear casual clothes when I go on holiday, and I always make sure I pack my sunglasses and sandals.
- 3 I wear trainers and sports clothes a lot as I'm quite sporty, but it's important to me to look
- 4 I have to look smart for my job so I always wear a suit and tie at work.
- 2 Match each person described in the sentences with a word in the box. There are two words which you don't need to use.

annoying clever fit funny kind lazy quiet sociable

- 1 My sister loves spending time with her friends and meeting new people.
- 2 My best friend tells lots of jokes and makes me laugh
- 3 My cousin spends a lot of time reading, and never says very much.
- 4 My teacher is always happy to help people and is nice to everyone.
- 5 My brother spends all his time lying in bed he never does anything!
- 6 My dad knows the answer to any question I ask him.

### 3 Complete the text with words in the box.

fiancé important person in my life married only child relatives small family

	f my friends have lots of brothe s, and aunts and uncles, but I d	
	. I come from a <sup>2</sup>	
	e sister, but my dad is an 3	
parents	s are very happy together - the	y have been
4	for twenty-one years. I think	the most
5	is my sister, Jenny. She's ol	der than me,
and it's	her wedding in a few months.	Her 6
is calle	d Rob, and he's really nice.	

### 4 Choose the correct option to complete the sentences.

- 1 You can/have to wear a special hat when you go horse riding. It's dangerous if you don't.
- 2 Do we *must/need to* wear football boots for the match on Saturday?
- 3 You don't have to/mustn't wear white clothes to play cricket, but people usually do.
- 4 Do you know if we can/shall go fishing in this lake?
- 5 We have a new team kit. All players could/must wear it for the next match.
- 6 You mustn't/don't have to go climbing in those shoes! It's dangerous. Wear trainers.

### 5 Choose the correct option to complete the sentences.

- 1 A: Are you going/doing swimming on Friday?
  - **B:** Yes. I need to train/race as much as possible I've got a champion/competition next month, and I really want to win.
- 2 A: Have you ever done/played cricket before?
  - **B:** No, but I can catch/play a ball, and I know how to hold the net/bat, so I'm sure I'll be fine.
- 3 A: Why didn't you play/do football on Saturday?
  - **B:** I got a red card/own goal the week before, so I was sent off. I have to miss the next three pitches/matches.

- 4 A: I'm not very good at season/team games like volleyball, so I go/do athletics after work one day a week.
  - B: Which sport? Running?
  - **A:** Yes, I'm a long-distance runner. I run 10,000 metre *races/medals*.
- 5 A: Have you tried any new sports recently?
  - **B:** Yes. When I was on holiday, I *played/went* surfing every day.
  - A: That sounds great. I'm going to go/do karate for the first time on Wednesday. I've seen it on TV, but I don't know anything about the points/rules.

### 6 Put the adjectives into the comparative or superlative form to complete the sentences.

- 1 The new college library is much \_\_\_\_\_ (big) than the old one.
- 2 My science course at college is \_\_\_\_\_ (interesting) than the science classes I had at school.
- 3 I really like meeting customers. It's the \_\_\_\_\_ (good) part of the job.
- The new girl in my class at university is the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (friendly) person I've ever met.
- 5 I don't understand why my mark for the history project was \_\_\_\_\_ (bad) than yours.
- 6 I'm much \_\_\_\_\_ (busy) at work now that two of my colleagues have left.

### Students often make mistakes with comparative and superlative adjectives. Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 1 I liked the tennis competition because it was between the better players in the world.
- 2 I want to go by car because it's more fast.
- 3 Football is the sport more popular in the world.
- 4 Tennis is one of my most favourite games.
- 5 We're going to the sports centre by car because that's more safer.

### 8 Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences to make conditional sentences.

- 1 When it rains
- 2 If you see Charlie
- 3 I'll wear this dress to the party
- 4 Do you ever look at your phone
- 5 You won't get the job
- 6 If he arrives late,
- a if it's hot.
- b when you're in class?
- c if you dress like that!
- d will you tell him about the meeting?
- e what shall we do?
- f we play tennis in the sports hall.

### 9 Read the text about cricket. Choose the correct word, A, B or C, for each gap.

I started <sup>1</sup> cricket when I was at school, and I really enjoyed it. I'm at university now, and I'm a member of the university cricket team. We <sup>2</sup> twice a week to get ready for our matches. In a game of cricket there are two teams of eleven players. You need a large area to play in, a long <sup>3</sup> made of wood, and a ball. The ball is very hard. In the past, some players got hurt when a ball <sup>4</sup> them on the head, so now players <sup>5</sup> wear a type of hat called a helmet. This has made the game much <sup>6</sup> than it was before.

7	A	doing	В	playing	C	going
2	A	train	В	race	C	throw
3	A	net	В	racket	C	bat
4	A	throw	В	kick	C	hit
5	A	must	В	shall	C	would
6	A	safe	В	safer	C	safest

### 10 Complete the sentences by choosing the correct words, then match each person with the school subject or job in the box.

chemistry drama farmer history journalist maths

When I was at primary school, I loved working

with numbers and doing/taking equations.

I've just graduated from university. I spent a lot of time on stage, taking/getting part in performances.

At secondary school there are special classrooms called labs where we can pass/do experiments.

I'm revising/passing for an exam at the moment. I've got to remember lots of important events that happened in the past.

I'm good at doing/finding out research, and writing essays, and I've just got a job on a local newspaper.

I work with animals, and then one day a week I go to college because I want to get some degrees/qualifications.

### 11 Change the passive sentences into active sentences.

- 1 My tooth was pulled out by the dentist.
- 2 That bridge was built by a really famous engineer.
- 3 We were asked to find out about rivers by our geography teacher.
- 4 I was given really good marks by my modern languages teacher.

# COMMUNICATION ACTIVITIES

### **UNIT 1, PAGE 17, EXERCISE 7: STUDENT A**

1 Read about Karen and ask your partner questions to complete the missing information. Use the words to help you.

Karen always gets up early because she starts work at

. She works in the gardens of a <sup>2</sup>
and she walks to work. She doesn't have breakfast
before she leaves, but she buys <sup>3</sup>
in a café.

When she arrives at work, she sits down and

. After breakfast, <sup>5</sup>
. She goes
home for lunch at 12.00 pm and comes back to work

. After lunch, she sometimes has a meeting
with <sup>7</sup>
to talk about what she needs to do
next. She finishes work at <sup>8</sup>
and walks home.

- 7 What time ...
- Where ...
- **3** What ...
- 4 What ...
- 5 What ...
- 6 When ...
- 7 Who ...
- 8 When ...

2 Read about Roman and answer your partner's questions about him.

Roman works on an oil rig in the Gulf of Mexico. He works on the rig for two weeks and then he goes home for a week. When he's on the rig, he works very hard. Sometimes he works at night. When he does this, he starts work at 10.00 pm and finishes at 7.00 am. When he works nights, he gets up at 3.00 pm in the afternoon and goes to the gym. He has a big meal in the cafeteria and then he often plays table tennis with his friend Pepe. Roman has to wear special clothes for his work because it's very cold on the oil rig. He gets dressed and is ready for work at 9.45 pm.

### UNIT 2, PAGE 33, EXERCISE 7: SPEAKING, DESCRIBING A PHOTO

Student A



Student B



### UNIT 3, PAGE 41, EXERCISE 6

### **QUIZ: MY SCREEN LIFE**

- **8–16:** You're not a fan of screens and you never will be. You probably aren't into computers but you do know how to use the internet for useful things.
- 17–27: You sometimes use the internet to help you but you don't spend hours and hours on it. You can live without your screens.
- 28–34: You're a screen fan. You spend a lot of time in front of screens. Go out and speak to your friends a bit more often.
- **35–40:** You love your screens! You spend a lot of time on your phone or tablet. Don't forget that there are other things to do too!

### **UNIT 5, PAGE 64, EXERCISE 3: VOCABULARY, TRAVEL**

### Quiz: Are you an adventurous traveller?

1 a = 1 point, b = 2 points, c = 3 points

4 a = 1 point, b = 2 points, c = 3 points

2 a = 1 point, b = 3 points, c = 2 points 3 a = 3 points, b = 2 points, c = 1 point

 $\mathbf{5}$  a = 2 points, b = 1 point, c = 3 points

**5–8 points**: You like to feel safe and comfortable when you travel. That isn't a bad thing, but you don't get many surprises. Maybe you could try to be a little more adventurous on your next trip.

**9–12 points**: You enjoy travelling. You don't like to take big risks, but you still have a good sense of adventure.

13–15 points: You are an adventurous traveller! You love trying new things and meeting new people. For you the world is one big adventure.

### UNIT 6, PAGE 80, EXERCISE 8: GRAMMAR, A/AN, SOME AND ANY



biscuits bread cheese chicken eggs fruit jam juice melon milk salami sausage tomatoes yoghurt

There's some fruit.

There aren't any eggs.

### UNIT 6, PAGE 84, EXERCISE 7: SPEAKING, MAKING SUGGESTIONS

Work with a partner and decide where to have lunch.

- A: Apologise for arriving late.
- B: Reply. Ask if A is hungry.
- A: Reply. Suggest a restaurant.
- B: Suggest an alternative.
- A: Give a negative response.
- B: Suggest an alternative.
- A: Give a positive response and suggest where to sit.

### UNIT 1, PAGE 17, EXERCISE 7: STUDENT B

1 Read about Karen and answer your partner's questions about her.

Karen always gets up early because she starts work at 7.00 am. She works in the gardens of a big, old house in her village and she walks to work. She doesn't have breakfast before she leaves, but she buys a cup of tea and a sandwich in a café. When she arrives at work, she sits down and eats her breakfast. After breakfast, she works in the garden. She goes home for lunch at 12.00 pm and comes back to work at 2.00 pm. After lunch, she sometimes has a meeting with the owner of the garden to talk about what she needs to do next. She finishes work at 5.00 pm and walks home.

2 Read about Roman and ask your partner questions to find the missing information. Use the words to help you.

Roman works on an oil rig 1 He works on the rig for two weeks and then he goes home
2 . When he's on the rig, he works very hard.
Sometimes he works at night. When he does this, he
starts work at 3 and finishes at 7.00 am.
When he works nights, he gets up at 3.00 pm in the
afternoon and goes to 4 . He has a big meal
in the cafeteria and then he often plays 5
with 6
for his work because 7 . He gets dressed and
is ready for work at 8

- 1 Where ...
- **5** What ...
- 2 How long ... for?
- **5** Who ...
- **3** When ...
- 7 Why ...
- 4 Where ...
- 3 When ...

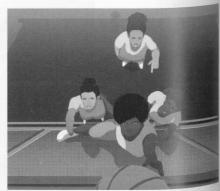
### UNIT 13, PAGE 173, EXERCISE 6: SPEAKING, APPEARANCE AND PERSONALITY



### UNIT 14, PAGE 183, EXERCISE 6: WRITING PART 7







### UNIT 13, PAGE 169, EXERCISE 2: LISTENING PART 2

Read the texts and match them to the styles in the photos (A-E). What kind of a dresser are you?

- You aren't interested in fashion and you don't like wearing special clothes when you go out to parties. You want to be comfortable, so your favourite clothes are jeans and T-shirts.
- Because you move a lot you like comfortable clothes. You like shorts and T-shirts that make it easy to do exercise. You prefer **trainers** to shoes and you like wearing **sandals** in summer.
- You like **suits** or jackets. If you are a man, you often wear a **tie** and if you are a woman you probably wear expensive shoes and have a **handbag** to match. You want to look good enough to walk into an expensive restaurant or an important meeting at any time.
- Clothes are important to you and you like to follow people on social media to see the colours and **styles** that are in. If you are a woman, you like to buy new **jewellery** too sometimes.
- The important thing for you is to look good. You always have the most fashionable **brand** of jeans and trainers, and you like **sunglasses** with a brand name, too!











### **UNIT 14, PAGE 185, EXERCISE 5: SPEAKING PART 2**









### Work in pairs and talk about the four pictures. Think about:

- the name of the sport
- any famous sportspeople or teams you know
- where/when you have done this sport
- · why you do it and who you do it with
- your opinion of it do you like it? Why?/why not?
- words you could use to talk about it

Remember to ask your partner for his/her opinion.
Use the expressions in the box below.

What do you think? What about you? Do you play ...?

Now take it in turns to ask and answer the examiner's questions about the sports above.

#### Student A

Do you think learning judo is difficult? Do you think rock climbing is dangerous? Which of these sports do you like best?

#### Student B

Do you think cycling is expensive?

Do you think volleyball is fun?

Which of these sports do you like best?

## GRAMMAR REFERENCE

### STARTER UNIT

#### BE

### **POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES**

1	am/'m	
	am not/'m not	
You/We/They	are/'re	20 years old.
	are not/aren't	Spanish. happy.
He/She/It	is/'s	
	is not/isn't	

### **QUESTIONS**

Am	1		
Are	you/we/they	20 years old? Spanish?	
ls	he/she/it	Spanish	

### **SHORT ANSWERS**

Yes,	1	am.
	he/she/it	is.
	you/we/they	are.
	1	am not.
	he/she/it	isn't.
	you/we/they	aren't.

We use be to talk about:

nationality	I'm French.
ane	She's 20

jobs My mum and dad are teachers.

feelings
time

Are you happy?
It's 10 o'clock.

• where things are The plates **are** on the table.

### PRACTICE

- 1 Rewrite these sentences with the short forms of the underlined words.
  - You are 20 years old.
  - 2 My brother is not very funny.
  - 3 A: Are you French?
  - B: No, <u>I am not</u>.We are not teachers. We are students.
  - 5 She is Australian.

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of be.
  - **1** My sister \_\_\_\_\_ 19.
  - 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ not very happy this morning.
  - 3 Two of my friends \_\_\_\_\_ American.
  - 4 A: your mother a doctor?
    - B: No, she \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher.
  - **5 A:** you 18 years old?
    - B: Yes, I

### **HAVE GOT**

### **POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES**

LOC AN IT	have/'ve		
I/You/We/They	have not/haven't		
	has/'s	got a phone.	
He/She/It	has not/hasn't		

### QUESTIONS

Have	I/you/we/they	
Has	he/she/it	got a phone?

#### **SHORT ANSWERS**

Yes,	I/you/we/they	have.
	he/she/it	has.
No,	I/you/we/they	haven't.
	he/she/it	hasn't.

In short answers, we do not use got.

Yes, I **have**. Yes, I have got. Use have got to talk about:

things we own

I've got a new top.

She's got blue eyes.

• people in our families I have got two brothers and a sister.

- 3 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
  - 1 Kelly hasn't/haven't got a new dress to wear for the party.
  - 2 Paul and Liza has/have got two children.
  - 3 My brother and I has/have got black hair.
  - 4 A: Has/Have we got any homework tonight?
    - **B:** No, we haven't got/haven't.
  - 5 All my friends has/have got smartphones.

4	Complete these sentences with the correct form of
	have got.

1	, , , ,	three brothers and
	two sisters.	1
2	We don't know what the time is a watch.	because we
3	My older brother Ben	a new car.
4	4 A: I don't know where my phone is	
	B: No, 1	
5	I'm sorry, but we any	coffee.

### CAN/CAN'T/LIKE/DON'T LIKE

We use can/can't + verb (without to) to talk about ability: | can swim.

He can't speak Japanese.

We use like + noun to say what we think of things or people: I like chocolate.

He **doesn't like** cats. We **like** American films.

### **PRACTICE**

sister.

ces.

party.

#### 5 Correct the mistakes or tick the correct sentences.

- 1 She can't to paint very well.
- 2 We don't liking dogs.
- 3 He likes going on holiday.
- 4 They don't like fast food.
- 5 I like watch films on TV.
- 6 She can read Chinese.

### WH- QUESTION WORDS

- We use question words to ask certain types of questions.
- We call these words Wh- words because they contain the letters wh (WHy, WHat, HoW).

QUESTION WORD	USE	EXAMPLE
What	asking for information	What is your name?
When	asking about time	When is the party?
Where	asking what place	Where do you live?
Who	asking which person	Who is that?
Whose	asking about ownership	Whose is this pen?
How old	asking about age	How old is he?

#### **PRACTICE**

### 6 Write the correct question words for each question.

1	does he live?	He lives in London.
2	is that woman?	She's my mother.
3	old are they?	They're only eight.
4	does the bank open?	At nine o'clock.
5	is that coat?	It's mine.

### 7 Complete the questions about the words in bold.

1	He drinks <b>coffe</b> drink for breakfo		does he
2	He's in <b>London</b>		
3	She's only twen	ity years old.	old is she?
4	It's hers.	bike is this?	
5	At six o'clock.	does the <b>film</b> sto	artș

### THE APOSTROPHE 'S

- We use the apostrophe 's to show possession:
   The man's car. My teacher's wife. Mr Smith's flat.
- If the word ends in s use an apostrophe without another s: Mrs Stephens' book.
- We show possession with nouns that form their plurals by adding -s or -es by putting an apostrophe after the plural s: The waitresses' uniforms.
- We also use an apostrophe with contractions. The apostrophe replaces a letter or letters that have been removed.

does not – doesn't	it is – it's
cannot – can't	you would – you'd

#### PRACTICE

### 8 Write the apostrophes in the sentences.

- 1 This is my best friends car.
- 2 Steve Browns in my class.
- 3 The childrens books are on the teachers desk.
- 4 The new pilots uniforms are dark blue.
- 5 Its very noisy here.
- 6 Peters so friendly, hes always helping me.

### 3RD PERSON S IN THE PRESENT TENSE

The he/she/it form of most verbs use the infinitive + -s:
He likes biscuits.
She loves pop music.
He lives in London.
It comes from Mexico.

#### **PRACTICE**

### 9 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the present simple.

7	They	(like) tast cars.
2	Steve	(eat) too much fast food.
3	She	(love) her new job.
4	They	(come) from South Africa
5	He	(walk) to college every day.



### PRESENT SIMPLE

We use present simple verbs to talk about:

- things that happen regularly.
   We go to college every day.
- things that are always true.
   Summer comes after spring.
   We live in Moscow.

### **POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES**

I/You/We/They	eat	
	don't eat	
He/She/It	eats	chocolate.
	doesn't eat	PROSTROPA

### **QUESTIONS**

Do	I/you/we/they	
Does	he/she/it	eat chocolate?

### **SHORT ANSWERS**

Vee	I/you/we/they	do.
Yes,	he/she/it	does.
No,	I/you/we/they	don't.
	he/she/it	doesn't.

The he/she/it form of most verbs uses the infinitive + -s. Sometimes we add -es (do  $\rightarrow$  does; go  $\rightarrow$  goes). If the verb ends in a consonant + -y, we add -ies (carry  $\rightarrow$  carries).

- 7 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.
  - Paul \_\_\_\_\_ the piano every evening. (play)
  - 2 I at 6 o'clock every day. (get up)
  - 3 My brother football. (like)
  - 4 My friends \_\_\_\_\_ near me. (live)
  - 5 Hannah to work by bus. (go)
- 2 Write the negative form of the sentences in Exercise 1.
  - 1 Paul
  - 2 |
  - 3 My brother
  - 4 My friends5 Hannah
- 3 Underline and correct the mistakes in these sentences.
  - 1 My brother work in Moscow.
  - 2 Tom don't play the piano.
  - 3 I plays football every weekend.
  - 4 Does she starts work at 9 o'clock every morning?
  - 5 My parents doesn't watch TV in the afternoon.



### ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

Frequency adverbs tell us how often something happens.

always
usually
often
sometimes

I always go to bed at night.
I usually go to bed at 10.00.
I often go to bed at 11.00.
I sometimes go to bed at midnight.
I never go to bed at lunchtime.

- We use frequency adverbs after the verb be.
   They are always happy at the weekend.
- We usually put frequency adverbs before other verbs.

  I often get home at 5 o'clock.
- In negative sentences, frequency adverbs come between don't/doesn't and the verb.

We don't always get up early at the weekend.

 We can also use expressions like every day, twice a week, once a year to say how often something happens. We put these at the beginning or the end of sentences.

**Every year**, we go on holiday to Italy. I have piano lessons **once a week**.

### PRACTICE

- 4 Put the words in order to make sentences.
  - 1 evening / go / I / in / never / work / the / to
  - 2 help / homework / his / I / help / my brother / sometimes / with
  - 3 and / I / sister / day / every / My / college / to / walk
  - 4 am / for / I / late / work / sometimes
  - 5 always / at / hard / I / college / work
- 5 Make these sentences true for you. Add adverbs or other frequency expressions.
  - 1 get up at 7 o'clock in the morning
  - 2 have lunch at work
  - 3 go out in the evening
  - 4 go to bed at 10 o'clock
  - 5 sleep for 8 hours

### LIKE/LOVE/HATE

We use *like/love/hate* + infinitive to say how we feel about doing things.

like to swim.

He doesn't like to do his homework.

We can also use like/love/hate + verb -ing to say how we feel about doing things.

like swimming.

He doesn't like doing his homework.

### **WANT TO**

We use want to + infinitive to express a wish or desire. He wants to go swimming. She doesn't want to go out tonight. They don't want to watch that film.

- 6 Put the words in order to make sentences.
  - 1 camping / He / doesn't / go / like / to
  - 2 early / like / getting up / don't / They
  - 3 coffee / He / loves / iced / drink / to
  - 4 don't / want / We / shopping / to / go / morning / this
  - 5 She / to / her / top / party / wants / wear / new / to / the



### PRESENT CONTINUOUS

### **POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES**

1	am/'m	
	am not/'m not	ok sill rese
You/We/They	are/'re	
	are not/aren't	eating.
He/She/It	is/'s	
	is not/isn't	on miletading wind

### **QUESTIONS**

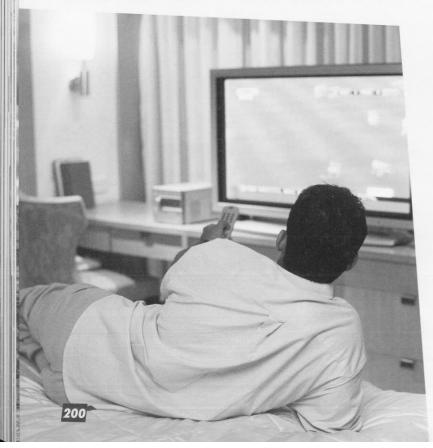
Am		53(T3A)	
Are	you/we/they	eating?	
Is	he/she/it		

### **SHORT ANSWERS**

	And I have been been	am.
Yes,	he/she/it	is.
	you/we/they	are.
No,	1	am not.
	he/she/it	isn't.
	you/we/they	aren't.

We use present continuous verbs to talk about things that are happening now.

I'm watching sport on TV.



#### **SPELLING**

Most verbs	add <i>-ing</i> to the infinitive	watch → watching find → finding
Verbs ending in -e	take off -e, then add -ing	like → liking write → writing
Verbs with one syllable, ending in consonant plus vowel plus consonant	repeat the last consonant and add -ing	put → putting run → running

- 1 Complete the sentences with the present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.
  - My parents \_\_\_\_\_ (not watch) TV. They \_\_\_\_\_ (listen) to music.
  - 2 | (write) an email to my cousin in France.
  - 3 A: (you, do) your homework?
    - B: No, I (not). I (play) a computer game.
  - 4 Tom (run) to work because he's late.
  - 5 Maria (not wash) her hair.
- 2 Underline and correct the spelling mistakes in the sentences.
  - 1 Ben is readding one of his books.
  - 2 Emma and Anna are puting their clothes away.
  - 3 Are you cookeing our lunch?
  - 4 I'm siting in the kitchen.
  - 5 My brother and sister are danceing in the garden.

### PRESENT SIMPLE OR PRESENT CONTINUOUS?

We use the present continuous to talk about things that are happening now.

**We're watching** television at the moment. We use the present simple:

- to talk about things we do regularly.
   I usually watch television in the evening.
   I walk to work.
- with verbs that describe states (things that don't change)
   e.g. be, like, hate, have, want, love, know, understand.
   I like tea but I hate coffee.

I have three brothers, and I love them all.

We do not usually use state verbs in the present continuous. *Junderstand* German and Spanish.

tam understanding German and Spanish.

The verb have is a state verb when we talk about things that don't change.

I have two brothers.

We can use the continuous form of have when we talk about actions.

We're having breakfast.

He's having a wash.

- 3 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
  - 1 My brother and I go/are going to college by bus every day.
  - 2 Dan can't come out. He does/'s doing his homework.
  - 3 I love/am loving the holidays.
  - 4 Oh no! It starts/'s starting to rain.
  - 5 My sister and I play/are playing tennis every Saturday.
  - 6 In our family, we have/are having a dog and three cats.
- 4 Underline and correct the mistakes in these sentences.
  - 1 After school, we are usually getting home at five o'clock.
  - 2 Ssh! I listen to the news on the radio.
  - 3 Everyone in my family is hating cold weather.
  - 4 Mateo is having a son and a daughter.
  - 5 Jon has a shower at the moment.



### PAST SIMPLE

### **BE - POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES**

alienanial allega	was	- 2 - 1
I/He/She/It	was not/ wasn't	at home yesterday.
yelennel yana m	were	di fiorne yesierday.
You/We/They	were not/ weren't	leed on at 6

### **BE** - QUESTIONS

Was	I/he/she/it	at home	
Were	you/we/they	yesterday?	

### **BE - SHORT ANSWERS**

V	I/he/she/it	was.
Yes,	you/we/they	were.
No,	I/he/she/it	wasn't.
	you/we/they	weren't.

We use was/were to talk about the past.

We were at college yesterday.

Our new teacher was very interesting.



### OTHER VERBS

### **POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES**

1/V /11 /Cl /II/	enjoyed	Marian Parintin	
I/You/He/She/It/ We/They	did not/didn't enjoy	the film last night.	

### **QUESTIONS**

Did	I/you/he/she/it/ we/they	enjoy the film?
-----	-----------------------------	-----------------

#### **SHORT ANSWERS**

Yes,	I/you/he/she/it/	did.
No,	we/they	didn't.

We use the past simple to talk about finished events in the past. We **studied** a lot today.

I watched TV last night.

We often use time expressions with past simple verbs, for example, last year, yesterday, a week ago.

### **SPELLING OF PAST SIMPLE REGULAR VERBS**

Most verbs	add -ed	watch → watched		
Verbs ending in -e	add -d	like <b>→ liked</b>		
Verbs with one syllable, ending in consonant plus vowel plus consonant	repeat the last consonant and add -ed	stop → stopped		
Verb ending in a consonant + -y	change -y to -i and add -ed	study → studied		

We texted our friends about the party.

### IRREGULAR VERBS

There are many irregular past simple verbs\* in English. Here are some common ones.

PRESENT SIMPLE	PAST SIMPLE			
break	broke			
come	came			
do	did			
drink	drank			
eat	ate			
get	got			
give	gave			
go	went			
have	had			
leave	left			
see	saw			
take	took			

We left home at 8.30.

ast.

RBS

ed

We went on holiday to France last year.
\*There is a list of irregular verbs on page 226.

### **PRACTICE**

1	Complete the short conversations with the past simple form of
	the verbs in brackets.

	-		4 7 1		1 0
7	A:	Why	(be) you la	te for work yeste	rday?
	B:	Our bus	(break)	down, so we	(walk).
2	A:	What	you	(have) for b	reakfast this
		morning?			
	B:	1	(eat) toast and	eggs and I	(drink)
		orange juid	ce.		
3	A:	What	you	(get) for you	r birthday?
					ther, and my siste
			give) me a T-shi		
4	A:	)	/ou(g	o) out yesterday	Ş
	B:			(go) to a	
5	A:			ratch) the footba	
	B:	Account to the contract of the		(take) m	
			(be) great!		
6	A:			ou this morning,	but you
		(not be) in.	,	O'	

### 2 Complete these sentences with the past simple form of the irregular verbs in the box.

B: Sorry I

(be) at the dentist.

b	egin	buy	feel	leave	make	meet	win	
7	We		hom	e this mo	orning at	7.30.		make B.
2	lafter	wards.		es at the	weekend	but I		very tired
3	Myk	orother	and I		lunch for	the who	ole famil	ly yesterday.
4	lnew	clothes		nds in to	wn on Sa	turday. \	We	some
5		s ago.	to do m	y homev	vork at se	even o'clo	ock. The	ıt's three



### CAN/CAN'T, COULD/COULDN'T + INFINITIVE WITHOUT TO

We use can/can't to talk about present abilities.

I can play the piano.
I can't play the guitar.

Can you speak French?

Yes, I can. / No, I can't.

We use could/couldn't to talk about past abilities. My sister could talk before she could walk.

I couldn't sleep last night.

Could you hear what I said?

Yes, I could. / No, I couldn't.

The infinitive without to follows can/can't and could/couldn't.

The forms of can, can't, could, couldn't do not change.

He can (not cans) cook.

#### **PRACTICE**

1	I've broken my arm so I play tennis at the mome				
2	Some babies swim before they walk.				
3	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,				
4					
5	A: you cook?				
	<b>B:</b> No, I				
Wr	ite questions starting with can or could and then				
	e short answers that are true for you.				
1	ride a bike when you were five?				
	Could you ride a bike when you were five?				
	Yes, I could.				
2	swim when you were three?				
3	speak more than two languages?				
4	skateboard?				
5	both of your parents drive?				



when I was two.



### SHOULD/SHOULDN'T

We use should/shouldn't + infinitive to give someone advice. You **should do** more exercise.

You shouldn't eat too much before you go to bed.

#### **POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES**

1/1 /cl // / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	<b>should eat</b> more fruit and vegetables.
I/He/She/It/You/We/They	<b>shouldn't eat</b> a lot of fast food.

### **QUESTION FORMS AND SHORT ANSWERS**

Should	I/you/we/they he/she/it	ask someone to help me?
Yes,	I/you/we/they he/she/it	should.
No,	I/you/we/they he/she/it	shouldn't.

### **PRACTICE**

3 Complete the table with this advice to students before an exam.

Go to bed early.

Work late the day before.

Spend too much time alone.

Ask parents or friends to help you.

Worry.

YOU SHOULD	YOU SHOULDN'T

4 Complete the sentences with should/shouldn't and the verbs in the box.

а	rrive	drink	eat	get	ride	wear	
1	If it's	very ho	t, you		lots	of water.	
2	If it's	cold, yo	U	у	our hat	and coat.	
3	You		too n	nuch su	ıgar. It's	bad for y	our teeth
4						problem	
5						more sl	
6	Stuc	ents		late for	school		

### PAST CONTINUOUS

### **POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES**

// /cl //	was	
I/He/She/It	was not/wasn't	lista a la sala sala sala
and the feet	were	listening to music.
You/We/They	were not/weren't	

### **QUESTIONS**

Was	I/he/she/it	listania a tamais
Were	you/we/they	listening to music?

### **SHORT ANSWERS**

V	I/he/she/it	was.
Yes,	you/we/they	were.
	I/he/she/it	wasn't.
No,	you/we/they	weren't.

We use the past continuous:

to talk about something happening over a period of time in the past.
 We were watching a film at 8 o'clock last night.

to talk about two things happening at the same time.
 They were watching the film while I was doing the housework.

with the past simple to talk about one thing happening in the middle of another.
 When I left home, my brother was eating his breakfast.
 While I was walking into town, it started to rain.



### PRACTICE

- 1 Choose the correct verbs to complete the sentences.
  - 1 We listened/were listening to the news while we had/were having lunch.
  - 2 I slept/was sleeping when you phoned/were phoning this morning.
  - 3 At 3 o'clock this afternoon I did/was doing a maths test at college.
  - 4 When I woke up/was waking up this morning, it rained/was raining.
  - 5 What are you doing/were you doing at 10 o'clock last night?
- 2 Complete the story with past forms of verbs from the box. You need seven past continuous and three past simple verbs.

be	come	drive	listen	pass	read	see	stand	tell	travel		
										motorway	
										ister and I	
maga	zines and	d Mum a	nd Dad '	*	to mu	isic on t	the car ro	idio. Si	uddenly w	/e 3	bright blue
lights	on the ro	ad in fro	nt of us.	A police	eman in	a yello	w jacket '	6	in the	middle of	the road.
He 7		everyone	to drive	more sl	owly. Af	ter a fe	w minute	es we 8		a burning	car.
Smoke	9	out o	f its engi	ne. Ther	e were t	wo fire	engines	at the	side of the	road near	r to it.
Luckily	, no-one	10	hurt.								

### PAST CONTINUOUS AND PAST SIMPLE

### WITH WHEN, WHILE AND AS

We can use these words with the past continuous and the past simple to introduce an action happening at the same time as another.

Matt was walking home when it started to snow.

The doorbell rang while I was having dinner.

They came as we were leaving.

- 3 Choose the correct options to complete the sentences.
  - 1 While I watched/was watching TV, my sister was doing her homework.
  - 2 My friends often phoned/were often phoning me when my parents were out.
  - 3 While I was talking to my friend, I realised/was realising that something was wrong.
  - 4 It was a lovely day. The sun shone/was shining and the birds sang/were singing.
  - 5 Paul Pogba won/was winning the World Cup with France in Moscow.
- 4 Complete the sentences with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

7	While I	(tidy) my room, I	(find) som	e old photos.		
2	As I	(leave) the cinema, I	(realise) t	hat I'd left my phone beh	nind.	
3	While Simon	(watch) television	, his brother	(cook) dinner.		
4	When we	(hear) the fire alarm	, we all	(stop) what we	(do) and	(walk)
	out of the buil	ding.				
5	My computer	(crash) while I	(updat	te) my web page.		

### COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

	COUNTABLE NOUNS	UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS			
•	are things we can count. a school, two teachers, three students	•	are things we cannot count.  air, milk, money		
•	can be singular or plural. one <b>student</b> , two <b>students</b>	•	can't be plural. airs, milks or informations		
•	take <i>a, an</i> or numbers.  I am <b>a student</b> .  I have <b>three teachers</b> .	•	do not go after <i>a, an</i> or numbers. I like <b>water</b> . I like <del>a water</del> .		

#### Note:

We use a or an:

• with singular, countable nouns mentioned for the first time.

A young child needs a lot of sleep.

to talk about jobs.

I want to be a teacher.

We do not use a or an with uncountable nouns.

If you have information, you have power.

We use an before words which begin with a vowel sound. (including words with a silent 'h').

I've bought **an** app.

Let's go there in an hour.

### **SOME AND ANY**

	USE SOME		USE ANY
•	with plural countable nouns.  Some students are taking an exam today. with uncountable nouns in affirmative sentences.	•	with plural nouns in negative sentences and questions.  We haven't got any books with us.  Have you got any
	I've got <b>some money</b> in my pocket.	•	questions? with uncountable nouns
•	in offers or requests.  Would you like <b>some</b> coffee?  Can you lend me <b>some</b> money, please?		in negative sentences and questions. She has <b>n't</b> got <b>any</b> <b>money</b> . Do we have <b>any</b>
	money, piedse:		coffee?

#### **PLURAL FORMS**

For most nouns, add -s	student → students banana → bananas
For nouns which end in -s, -ch, -sh, -x, add -es	bus → buses match → matches dish → dishes box → boxes
For some nouns which end in -f or -fe, change -f to -v and add -es	half → halves knife → knives wife → wives
For nouns which end in consonant + -y, change the -y to -ies	family → families city → cities
Some nouns are irregular.	child → children man → men woman → women person → people

### **PRACTICE**

1 Complete the table with the nouns in the box.

baby	box	bread	child		coffee	juice	knife
man	milk	money	pers	on	rice	school	
strawb	erry	student	tea	te	acher	water	

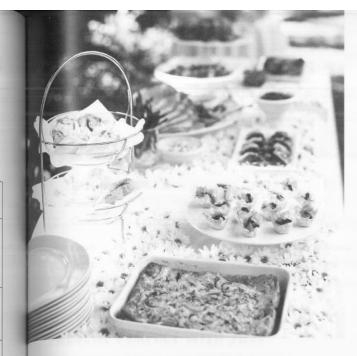
COUNTABLE NOUNS	UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS
baby	Dispose the correct study
	cowhorder is I shall be I
	2 My brendt character

2 Write the plural forms of the countable nouns in Exercise 1.

baby babies

3 Complete the sentences with a, an, some or any.

1	Would you like	apple?	
2	Do we need	vegetables?	
3	students ar	re not at college today.	
4	Please can I have	water?	
5	We haven't got	coffee.	
6	There's mo	bile phone on the floor.	



### **EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY**

We use these words and phrases to talk about quantity.

- Use How much with uncountable nouns.
   How much money have you got?
   How much food do we need for our party?
- Use How many with plural countable nouns.
   How many students are in your class?
   How many people are coming to our party?
- Use a little (= not much) with uncountable nouns.
   Can I borrow a little sugar, please?
   There's still a little time left.
- Use a few (= not many) with plural countable nouns.
   Can I borrow a few cups, please?
   There are a few good films on TV tonight.
- Use a lot of (= a large number) with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns.

  There are a lot of poor lo in the supermarket.
  - There are **a lot of people** in the supermarket. We've got **a lot of money** in the bank.
- Use no (= not any) with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns.
  - There are **no vegetables** in the kitchen. There's **no milk** in the fridge.

#### PRACTICE

- 4 Choose the correct words to complete the conversation.
  - A: 1How much/How many food do we need for the party?
  - **B:** I'm not sure. <sup>2</sup>How much/How many people are coming?
  - A: <sup>3</sup>A lot of/A little adults and <sup>4</sup>a little/a few children.
  - B: OK, so we need 5a lot of/a few food. And drinks?
  - A: We have 6no/a little drinks at the moment.
  - **B:** OK. Let's get <sup>7</sup>a few/a little orange juice for the children and <sup>8</sup>a few/a little other things for the adults.

### **IMPERATIVES**

We use the imperative form when we tell someone to do something or not to do something.

- Positive sentences
   Turn to page 50.
   Be quick!
- Negative sentences

  Don't be late!

  Don't eat so quickly.

We can make imperatives sound more polite by adding please.

Turn to page 50, please.

Please don't eat so quickly.

We do not use subject pronouns with imperatives.

Get up! (not <del>You get up!)</del> Don't be late! (not <del>Don't you be late!)</del>

We also use imperatives for:

- instructions or directions. **Boil** a litre of water. **Turn** left at the end of the road.
- advice.

**Rest** as much as possible. **Don't** worry!

- orders or warnings.

  Be quiet!

  Don't touch that!
- requests.
   Please close the door quietly.
  - invitations.

    Come to my party!

#### **PRACTICE**

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.





3 here. (run) slowly. (walk)

I'm really tired. (to bed)



here. (shout) quietly. (talk)



in here.
(come) the

6 Write sentences with imperatives for these situations.
Use one of the verbs in the box and the words in brackets.

b	<del>uy</del> forget go wash watch
1	These jeans are too small for me. (some new ones)  Buy some new ones.
2	My hands are very dirty. (them)
3	It's Mum's birthday at the weekend. (to buy her a present)
4	The radio is really loud. (it off)

### PRESENT PERFECT

### **POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES**

I/You/We/They	have/'ve have not/haven't	been to Australia.	
He/She/It	has/'s has not/hasn't	learned to cook.	

### **QUESTION FORMS AND SHORT ANSWERS**

Have	I/you/we/they	<b>been</b> to Australia?	
Has	he/she/it		
Yes,	I/you/we/they	have.	
	he/she/it	has.	
	I/you/we/they	haven't.	
No,	he/she/it	hasn't.	

• The past participle form of regular verbs is the same as the past simple.

walk - **walked** 

smile - smiled

• You will need to learn the past participle form of irregular verbs\*. Here are some common examples.

be	been
break	broken
come	come
do	done
eat	eaten
find	found
get	got
have	had
meet	met
see	seen
speak	spoken

\*There is a list of irregular verbs on page 226.

- We can use the present perfect to talk about our experiences.
  - I've seen all the Lord of the Rings films, but I haven't read the books.
- We do not say when something happened with the present perfect.

I've been to India. (not I've been to India last year.)

• Use the past simple to say when something happened.

I went to India last year.

We often use ever in present perfect questions (ever = in your life).
 Have you ever been to India?

Have you **ever** met someone famous?

We can use never to talk about things we have not done in our life.
 She's never been to India.

He's never met anyone famous.

#### PRACTICE

My sister

1	Complete the sentences with the present p	erfect of the verb in brackets.
---	---	---------------------------------

7	My father	(meet) the president of our country.
2	I (never	
3	you eve	travel) to another country?
4	My brother	(win) a prize at college.

2 Choose the correct verbs to complete the conversation.

### (never swim) in the sea.

Hi, Tim. I <sup>1</sup>didn't see/haven't seen you last week. Where were you? On holiday in the US. <sup>2</sup>Did you ever go/Have you ever been there? Tim:

No, I <sup>3</sup> didn't/haven't. But my parents <sup>4</sup> went/have been there three or four times. Ben:

Tim: You should go. I <sup>5</sup>went/have been twice.

### PRESENT PERFECT WITH JUST

We use just to talk about something that happened a short time ago. We put just between have/has and the past participle. I've just spoken to my friend Paul. My dad has just got home from work.

#### PRACTICE

### 3 Put just in the correct position in these sentences.

- I'm really hot. I've run home from college.
- We've finished eating.
- I've texted my brother.
- He's told me he passed his exam.
- They've arrived back from India.

### PRESENT PERFECT WITH FOR AND SINCE

We can use the present perfect with for and since to talk about something that started in the past and continues up to the present.

I've known my best friend for a long time.

I've known my best friend since I was six.

(= I still know my best friend now.)

### FOR

Use the present perfect with for to talk about a period of time. I've studied English for six years.

We've lived in Berlin for three months.

#### SINCE

Use the present perfect with since to talk about when a situation started. I've studied English since 2015.

We've lived in Berlin since June

### **PRACTICE**

### 1 Complete the table with the time phrases in the box.

24 hours 6 o'clock 400 years last November my birthday October 12th ten minutes the end of May three weeks 12 months yesterday

FOR	SINCE

### 2 Choose the correct options to complete the sentences.

- 1 I haven't seen my sister for last weekend/two weeks.
- 2 My parents have been married for 1993/25 years.
- 3 I haven't done any cooking since last weekend/two weeks.
- 4 I've had my car since January/six months.
- 5 My father has worked as a doctor for 1994/23 years.
- 6 Juan has played the piano since the age of nine/nine years.



### PRESENT PERFECT WITH YET AND ALREADY

We use already and yet with present perfect verbs to talk about things that have happened before now but have a connection with now.

### ALREADY

- We use already to talk about something that happened before now or before we expected.
  I've already had my lunch. (I'm not hungry now.)
  We've already told Mike where the match is. (Mike knows, so you don't need to tell him.)
  Have you already finished your homework? That was quick! (The speaker did not expect this.)
- We put already between have/has and the past participle or at the end of a sentence.
   I've already seen him. / I've seen him already.

### YET

We use yet (= until now) in negative sentences and questions to talk about things we plan to do in the
future, but which are not done. Yet is placed at the end of a sentence.

Have you finished your homework yet?
I haven't read your email yet.

3 Pu	t the words in brackets in the correct position i	n these senten	ces.	
1	Have you tidied your bedroom	? (yet)		
2	They'vefinishedtheir college p	roject. (already)		
3	I don't want to watch that programme. I've	seen it	twice. (already)	
4	Tania doesn't wantto go to bed	. She isn't tired	. (yet)	
4 Pu	t the words in order to make sentences.			
7	I / haven't / my / new / shoes / worn / yet			
2	eating / finished / already / We've			
3	already / all / friends / I've / my / texted	1100-1111(100-111		
4	book / finished / Have / reading / that / yet / you / ?			
5	sister / I've / already / my / older / phoned			

## -ING OR TO INFINITIVE AFTER VERBS, ADJECTIVES AND PREPOSITIONS

WE USE TO + INFINITIVE AFTER:				
some verbs	choose, help, hope, learn, offer, want	I hope to go to university next year. He wants to help me. I'm learning to speak Italian.		
adjectives	happy, difficult, etc.	They were <b>happy to see</b> me. This exercise isn't <b>difficult to do</b> . She was <b>surprised to hear</b> I was ill.		
other phrases	would like/love/hate, can't be bothered, planning, hoping	We'd like to come and see you later. I can't be bothered to do that now. He's planning to go to university next year. She's hoping to get a new job.		

WE USE THE -ING FORM AFTER:		
some verbs	enjoy, finish, keep, mind, miss	I <b>enjoy watching</b> all sports. We <b>finished doing</b> our homework. I <b>miss seeing</b> my friends.
prepositions	for, of, about, etc.	Thanks <b>for helping</b> me.
other phrases	can't stand feel like, keen on, excited about	I can't stand waiting in long queues.  She feels like doing something special at the weekend.  They are keen on fishing.  I'm excited about going to Thailand.



#### PRACTICE

#### 1 Choose the correct words to complete these sentences.

- 1 I'm pleased to tell/telling you the job is yours.
- 2 My dad offered to help/helping me with the shopping.
- 3 I enjoy to play/playing the piano.
- 4 Let's finish to watch/watching the film before we go to bed.
- 5 My brother and I enjoy to play/playing video games.
- 6 Thank you for to help/helping me.

#### 2 Underline the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 My friends and always enjoy to meet in town on Saturdays.
- 2 I hope visiting Brazil one day.
- 3 I'm sorry hearing you're ill.
- 4 All my friends enjoy watch football.
- 5 Do you mind to wait a little longer?

#### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 My friends would love \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) you in your new flat.
- 2 He's very keen on \_\_\_\_ (play) chess.
- 3 I really feel like \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a barbecue tonight.
- 4 He can't be bothered \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) his project.
- 5 He's planning \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) more time with his family.
- 6 She's hoping (pass) her exams.
- 7 They can't stand \_\_\_\_\_ (be) late.
- 8 She feels like (go) out with her friends.



## THE FUTURE WITH WILL

We can use will/won't + infinitive without to when we talk about the future.

#### **POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES**

I/You/He/She/It/	will/'ll	see them tomorrow.
We/They	will not/won't	

#### **QUESTIONS**

Will	I/you/he/she/it/ we/they	see Ben tomorrow?
	we/mey	

#### **SHORT ANSWERS**

Yes,	I/you/he/she/it/	will.	
No,	we/they	won't.	

We can use will/won't with these words and phrases:

- I think/I don't think
   I think Brazil will win the match.
- sure

I'm **sure** you**'ll** pass the English test.

maybe/probably/perhaps
 Maybe they'll be late for the party.
 I'll probably go to bed quite late tonight.
 Perhaps we'll have a picnic at the weekend.

We can use will/won't:

- to talk about things in the future.
   I think it will be warm and sunny tomorrow.
   I'm sure it won't be cold and rainy.
- for something we decide at the time of speaking.
  - A: The phone's ringing.
  - B: I'll answer it.



### WILL AND SHALL FOR OFFERS AND PROMISES

Will and Shall are used to express intentions that you decide instantly when you are speaking, such as offers and promises. Those bags look really heavy. I'll carry them to the car for you. (offer)

I will always be your best friend. (promise)

There are lots of dirty dishes. **Shall I** do the washing up? (offer)

#### **PRACTICE**

7	Co	mplete the se	ntences with will or	won't and the verbs in	n brackets.
	1 2			shopping before we leav	
3		There's someone at the door. I (go) and see who it is.  A: you (be) away long?		ris.	
	4 5			naths test. I think it	(be) really difficult.

#### 2 Put the words in order to make sentences.

- 1 for / go / holiday / next / our / probably / Spain / to / We'll / year.
- 2 be / colder / I / it / think / tomorrow. / will
- 3 a / have / new / next / Perhaps / teacher / term. / we'll
- 4 Are / be / OK / sure / you / you'll / ?
- 5 come / He / our / party. / probably / to / won't

#### 3 Choose the correct options to complete the sentences.

- Shall/Will I make you a cup of tea?
- 2 Don't worry! I'll/I shall help you with your project.
- 3 Will/Shall you love me forever?
- 4 We shall not/won't go by car tonight.
- 5 Both of the specials sound good, but I think I will/shall have the fish pie.
- 6 Oh no, you've spilled soup on your dress. I'll/I shall get you something to clean it.

#### 4 Match sentences 1-6 with sentences a-f.

- 1 Thank you for lending me the money!
- 2 I can't hear the TV.
- 3 We haven't got any sugar.
- 4 I've got a bad headache.
- 5 I'm starving.
- 6 It's hot in here.

- Shall I get you some aspirin?
- **b** I'll pay you back next month.
- c Shall I turn up the volume?
- d I'll open the window.
- e Shall I buy some?
- f I'll make you a sandwich.

### MAY/MIGHT

Use may and might (not) + infinitive when we are not sure about something in the present or the future.

Jenny might be too busy to help us at the moment.

It may be sunny tomorrow.

My parents might buy a new car next week.

It may not rain this evening.

We might not go to Jack's party at the weekend.

#### PRACTICE

#### 5 Ben asks six of his friends if they are coming to his party. Here are their replies. Who is going to the party?

- 1 I might come. I'll tell you tomorrow. (Suzie)
- 2 Not sure, I may have to check with my brother. (Hannah)
- 3 Yes, I'll be there. (Tom)
- 4 Probably not. I may have to go out with my brother. (Mike)
- 5 Of course. What time does it start? (Julie)
- 6 I hope so, but I may have to work. (Ryan)

#### 6 Match sentences 1-6 with sentences a-f.

- 1 I'm feeling really tired.
- 2 I'm really hungry.
- 3 I may phone my brother.
- 4 I might not go to work.
- 5 My dad has a new job.
- 6 Don't call me tonight.

- a He might know where my books are.
- b I'm not feeling very well.
- c We might move house.
- d I might be busy.
- e I might go to bed early.
- f I might have something to eat.

## BE GOING TO

#### **POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES**

1-2-11	am/'m am not/'m not	
He/She/It	is/'s is not/isn't	going to watch TV all evening.
You/We/They	are/'re are not/aren't	

#### **QUESTIONS AND SHORT ANSWERS**

Am	1	
Is	he/she/it	going to stay in tonight?
Are	you/we/they	lonignie

#### **SHORT ANSWERS**

	1	am.
Yes,	he/she/it	is.
	you/we/they	are.
No,	T.	'm not.
	he/she/it	isn't.
	you/we/they	aren't.

Use going to + infinitive to talk about:

future plans.

I'm going to spend all evening on my studies. I'm not going to fall asleep.

 things we predict because of something we can see or because of information we have now.

It's going to rain. Look at those dark clouds.

My older sister is going to have a baby.

#### **PRACTICE**

1 Complete the sentences with *going to* and a verb from the box. There is one verb you do not need to use.

	d	o miss (not) need talk ride visit
	1	It nearly 8 o'clock. Youyour bus.
	2	Tomorrow morning we our bikes to work.
	3	more exercise in future.
	4	We our coats. The sun is coming out.
	5	My sister and I our grandparents at the weekend.
2	Co	mplete the conversations with going to.
	7	A: You / have coffee for breakfast?
		Are you going to have coffee for breakfast?
		B: No / tea.
		No, I'm going to have tea.
	2	A: What you / do this evening?
		B: 1 / play a video game.
	3	A: It rain tomorrow?
		B: No, Look at the red sky. It / sunny all day.
	4	A: What you / do when you leave college?
		B: 1 / look for a good job.
	5	A: your team / win the match?
		<b>B:</b> No, the other team is much better. We / lose.



## PRESENT CONTINUOUS FOR THE FUTURE

We can use the present continuous to talk about things happening now. We can also use it to talk about future arrangements.

My sister is picking me up from the station tomorrow afternoon.

We're having a holiday in Florida next year.

I'm seeing the doctor later this morning.

We use going to and the present continuous to talk about the future in different ways. We use going to when we talk about something we have decided.

I'm going to have a shower tonight.

We use the present continuous when we have an arrangement, often with other people.

I'm meeting my friends at the cinema tonight.

#### PRACTICE

#### 3 Choose the best options to complete the sentences.

- 1 From now on, I'm going to eat/eating less fast food.
- 2 We're going to catch/catching the 8.40 train tomorrow. I have the tickets.
- 3 I've got toothache, so I'm going to see/seeing the dentist at 9.00 tomorrow.
- 4 A: What are you going to do/doing when you get home?
  - B: I'm going to phone/phoning my friend.
- 5 We're going to have/having a party on Sunday. It starts at 7.30.

### PRESENT SIMPLE TO TALK ABOUT THE FUTURE

We use the present simple to talk about something that is scheduled or arranged.

I have a driving lesson next Friday.

The plane arrives at 7.30 this evening.

The school holidays start at the end of July.

It's my dad's birthday tomorrow.

#### **PRACTICE**

- 4 Choose the correct options to complete the sentences.
  - 1 The last train tonight leaves/is leaving at midnight.
  - 2 He's having/has dinner with some friends today. They want to show him their holiday photos.
  - 3 I think everyone comes/is coming to the party on Saturday.
  - 4 The film starts/is starting at eight, so I'll meet you outside the cinema at ten to eight.
  - 5 What are you going to do when you finish/are finishing college?

## ZERO CONDITIONAL

· We use the zero conditional to talk about things which are always true.

conditional clause:	main clause/result clause:
if + present verb	present simple verb
If the sun is too hot,	it <b>burns</b> you.

## FIRST CONDITIONAL

• We use the first conditional to talk about likely situations/actions.

conditional clause: if + present simple	main clause/result: will + infinitive
If we run,	we'll catch the bus.
If we don't run,	we won't catch the bus.

- The conditional clause can start or finish the sentence.
   If you work hard, you'll pass your exam. (There is a comma after the conditional clause.)
   You'll pass your exam if you work hard. (There is no comma after the main clause.)
- We can use the first conditional to talk about the future, but we use a present tense verb after if.
   If you work hard, you'll pass your exam. (not If you will work hard, you'll pass your exam.)

#### **PRACTICE**

7	Ма	Match the sentence beginnings (1–6) with the correct endings (a–f) to make zero and first conditional sent				
	7	If I have time,	а	you get green.		
	2	If you mix blue and yellow	Ь	she never answers the call.		
	3	If he phones her,	с	I'll go to university.		
	4	If my computer breaks down again	d	I'll phone you.		
	5	If I pass all my exams,	е	I'll buy a new one.		
	6	If it gets colder than zero	f	the water in our pond freezes.		

2 Complete the first conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1	It I	(see) my brother, I (tell) him to text you.	
2	You	(hurt) yourself if you (fall) over on the ice.	
3	If we	(not catch) the 10 o'clock bus, we (have) to wait for an hour	
4	You	(be) late for work if you (not leave) soon.	
5	If the music _	(be) loud, it(wake) the baby.	

3 Put the words in order to make first conditional sentences. Don't forget to add commas to some sentences.

1	earn / get / a new job / I / I'll / If / more money.
2	a car / buy / enough money. / have / I / I'll / if I'll
3	a / car / to go / buy / I / I'll / If / use / to work. / it If _
4	my bike / fit / get / I / I'll / if / ride / to work. I'll
5	by bus. / fit / get / go / I / I / if / to work / won't

# CONJUNCTIONS: WHEN, IF, UNLESS + PRESENT, FUTURE

#### WHEN

 Use when to talk about things that will happen at a particular time.

When I get home this evening, I'll have a shower.

#### IF

Use if for things that may or may not happen, or to say what happens if something else happens.
 If I finish work early, I'll go swimming.

#### UNLESS

unless means the same as 'if not'.
 Unless I get home early, I won't go swimming. (= If I do not get home early, I won't go swimming.)

#### PRACTICE

4 Complete these sentences with if, when or unless.

7	you take me to the station, I'll have to walk.
2	We'll fail the exam we revise.
3	we hurry, we'll get there in time.
4	Let's watch the late film you are not too tired
5	In some countries, you can't drive you are over 18.
6	I'm sad, I usually talk to my friends.
7	you're not feeling better tomorrow, you should go to the doctor.
8	I'll watch some TV I get home tonight.



### THE PASSIVE

We form the passive by using the correct form of *be* followed by the past participle.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
We feed our cat twice a day.	Our cat is fed twice a day.
They built our college in 2012.	Our college <b>was built</b> in 2012.

We use passive verbs rather than active verbs when:

- we don't know who did the action.
   My bike was stolen last week.
   (I don't know who stole it.)
- we are more interested in who or what is affected by the action of the verb than who or what does the action.
   My trainers were made in China. (The focus is on my trainers rather than where someone made them.)
   We were given a lot of homework to do in the holidays.
   (Here, we are the focus, not the homework or the teachers who gave the homework.)

To say who did something, we use the passive +by + the person or thing.

My stolen bike was found by the police.
These shoes were made by my grandfather.

#### **PRACTICE**

- 5 Complete the sentences with the present simple passive form of the verbs in brackets.
  - 1 A lot of tea (grow) in China.
  - 2 Millions of bottles of water (sell) every day.
  - 3 Interesting films \_\_\_\_\_ (show) at the cinema in my
  - 4 Our furniture (make) out of wood.
  - 5 The road (close) today because of the storm.
- 6 Complete the sentences with the past simple passive form of the verbs in the box.

build	close	give	send	take	tell
	El-Fax	.man			

- 7 Our house \_\_\_\_\_ five years ago.
- 2 We \_\_\_\_\_ how to get out if there was a fire in the building.
- 3 The factory in our town \_\_\_\_\_ two years ago. Nobody works there now.
- 4 I a new watch for my birthday.
- 5 These photos \_\_\_\_\_ on my phone.
- 6 I this email yesterday.

## COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

We use comparative adjectives to talk about the difference between two people or things.

Hannah is **younger** than her sister.

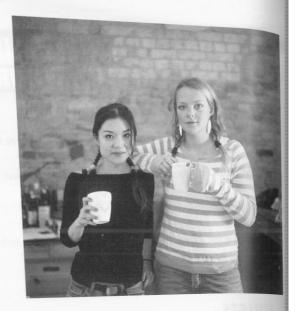
I am taller than my friend.

Use superlative adjectives to talk about the difference between three or more people or things.

Hannah is the **youngest** child in the family.

I am the tallest student in the class.

- We often use than after comparative adjectives: I am younger than her.
- We use the before superlative adjectives: She is **the youngest** person in the family.
- We often use phrases like these after superlative adjectives: in the family, in the world, in the class (NOT of the family, of the world, of the class).



#### **SPELLING**

ADJECTIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
one syllable (e.g. small), add -er or -est	smaller, colder than	the smallest, the coldest
one syllable ending in -e (e.g. large, nice), add -r or -est	larger, nicer than	the largest, the nicest
short adjectives ending in consonant + vowel + consonant (e.g. big, thin), double the consonant and add -er or -est	bigger, thinner than	the <b>biggest</b> , the <b>thinnest</b>
ending in consonant + -y (e.g. heavy, pretty), take off the -y and add -ier or -iest	heavier, prettier than	the heaviest, the prettiest
with three syllables or more (e.g. difficult, important), add more or most	more difficult more important than	the most difficult the most important
irregular adjectives (e.g. good, bad)	better, worse than	the <b>best</b> , the <b>worst</b>

#### **PRACTICE**

1 Cc	omplete the sentences with the comparative form of the	adject	ives in brackets.
1 2 3 4 5	My class is than my brother's class. (big) Today's meeting is than yesterday's meeting. (inter My new bike is than my old one. (heavy) The sea is than it was last week. (warm) The weather today is than it was yesterday. (bad) These shoes are too small. I need ones. (large)	esting)	
2 U	nderline the mistakes and correct them.		
1	I am the better footballer at my college.	4	What is the more expensive thing you have?
2	Anna is happyer than she was this morning.	5	Ben's apartment is largerer than mine.
3	I want to be fiter so I do lots of exercise.	6	Tom is taller his father.

# TO BE LIKE AND TO LOOK LIKE

We use like as a preposition in questions, with the verbs be and look to ask about appearance and character. We use be like to ask about a person's character.

What is she like?

She is very friendly and helpful.

We use look like to ask about physical appearance.

What does she look like?

She's quite tall with blond hair.

#### PRACTICE

2	Write	questions	to	match	the	answers.

7	? He's short and wears glasses.
2	? Our new neighbours aren't very helpful.
3	? Their new baby is always happy and never cries
4	? She is very slim and has long brown hair.

## AS ... AS, NOT AS ... AS

We use as + adjective/adverb + as to compare things or people that are equal in some way.

The world's biggest mouse is as big as a rat.

The weather this winter is as cold as last year.

We use not as ... as to compare things or people that aren't equal.

The furniture was not as beautiful as I thought it would be.

My son isn't as tall as his father.

We can modify not as ... as by using not quite as or not nearly as.

The last question on the exam was not quite as easy as the first one.

(The last question was easy but the first one was easier.)

These new trainers are not nearly as comfortable as my old ones.

(My old trainers are a lot more comfortable than these new ones.)

#### 4 Underline the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 He is tall as his father now.
- 2 The climate in England is as pleasant the climate in Ireland.
- 3 You must play hard you can if you want to win the match.
- 4 This ice cream's not tasty as the one we bought yesterday.
- 5 I'm making as many mistakes I did yesterday.

## MUST/MUSTN'T

Use must/mustn't + infinitive without to:

- to talk about something that is important and there is no choice.
   I must be at work by 8.30 every morning.
   We mustn't be late.
- to give strong advice.
  You **must be** careful when you cross the road.
  You **mustn't cross** without looking.

must does not change its form.

I/You/He/She/It/	must wear a uniform for school.
We/They	mustn't be late for work.

We do not usually use must in questions. We use have to.

What time do we have to be at work?

Do you have to wear a uniform for work?

To talk about the past, use had to.

We had to be at work at 7.30 yesterday.

We had to take an exam.

#### **PRACTICE**

1 Complete the sentences with must/mustn't and verbs in the box.

b	e finish	run talk	use	wear	
7	Be quick! V	Ve	late or	we'll mi	ss the start of the film.
2	You	trainers w	hen yo	ou play t	ennis.
3	You	across the	road.	It's very	dangerous.
4	Shh. You	in the	e libra	ry!	
5	Put your ph	one away. Yo	OU	it	in the cinema.
6		my project by			

2 Complete the advice to tourists. Use must or mustn't and a verb.

the museum. It's really interesting!
the taxis. They're very expensive. Use the metro.
the pizza restaurant. They have fantastic food.
your passport. Keep it somewhere safe!
the cathedral. It's a beautiful building.



## HAVE TO

We use have, has to + infinitive to talk about things that are necessary.

We have to go to work five days a week.

We use don't have, doesn't have to + infinitive to talk about things that are not necessary.

We don't have to go to work at the weekend.

#### **POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES**

Marie Marie Marie	have to	
I/You/We/They	don't have to	go to work tomorrow.
11 /Cl /II	has to	
He/She/It	doesn't have to	

#### QUESTIONS

Do	I/you/we/they	have to go to	
Does	he/she/it	work tomorrow?	

#### **SHORT ANSWERS**

Yes,	I/you/we/they	do.
	he/she/it	does.
No,	I/you/we/they	don't.
	he/she/it	doesn't.

## 3 Complete the conversation with the correct form of have to and the verbs in brackets.

- A: Hi. Do you want to go swimming?
- **B:** No, I can't. My sister and I <sup>1</sup> (help) our flatmate.
- A: What 2 (you do)?
- **B:** To start with 1<sup>3</sup> (tidy) the house.
- A: And your sister? 4 (tidy) the house, too?
- **B:** Yes, <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, and then she <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (wash) the car. And you?
- A: 17 (not do) anything!

#### 4 Choose the correct verb to complete the sentences.

- 1 Teachers have to/don't have to work in schools.
- 2 Students have to/don't have to go to college in the holidays.
- 3 Young children have to/don't have to go to work every day.
- 4 Farmers have to/don't have to work outside.
- 5 Police officers have to/don't have to wear uniforms.

### NEED TO

We use *need to* + verb to express that it is important for us to do something.

She **needs to go** to London at the weekend.

I **need to get up** early tomorrow for my doctor's appointment.

You **need to spend** more time with your family. We **need to study** harder or we'll fail the exam.

### DON'T NEED TO

We use don't need to to express that something isn't necessary, but possible. We can use don't need to to express that we don't expect someone to do something.

You don't need to come early tomorrow.

He **doesn't need to worry** about passing the exam. He's a great student.

I don't need to work next Monday.

## 5 Put the words in order to make sentences with modals.

- 1 by Friday. / need to / You don't / finish the project
- 2 everything is OK. / I / home / need to phone / to check that
- 3 harder or / very good marks. / I really / I won't get / need to work
- 4 dinner tonight. / needs to / some food for / She / buy

### CAN/CAN'T

We use the modal *can* to show that something is possible: It *can be* very hot in summer. (= It is sometimes very hot

If can be very hot in summer. (= It is sometimes very hot in summer.)

You **can** easily get lost in that part of town. (= People often get lost in that part of town.)

We use the negative *can't* or *cannot* to show that something is impossible.

You can't be 43. You look so young.

You cannot be serious!

#### 6 Put the words in order to make sentences.

- 1 Anyone / become / famous. / rich and / can
- 2 very hard. / Learning / can be / a foreign language
- 3 fifty pounds. / A room / can't cost / in a small hotel / more than
- 4 around the house. / small children / When you have / you can't leave objects

# IRREGULAR VERB LIST

VERB	PAST SIMPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	
be	was/were	been	
beat	beat	beaten	
become	became	become	
begin	began	begun	
bend	bent	bent	
bite	bit	bitten	
bleed	bled	bled	
blow	blew	blown	
break	broke	broken	
bring	brought	brought	
build	built	built	
burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned	
	bought	bought	
buy catch			
	caught	caught	
choose	chose	chosen	
come	came	come	
cost	cost	cost	
cut	cut	cut	
deal	dealt	dealt	
dig	dug	dug	
do	did	done	
draw	drew	drawn	
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed	
drink	drank	drunk	
drive	drove	driven	
eat	ate	eaten	
fall	fell	fallen	
feed	fed	fed	
feel	felt	felt	
fight	fought	fought	
find	found	found	
fly	flew	flown	
forbid	forbade	forbidden	
2,3720,000	100000000000000000000000000000000000000		
forget	forgot	forgotten	
forgive	forgave	forgiven	
freeze	froze	frozen	
get .	got	got	
give	gave	given	
go	went	gone	
grow	grew	grown	
hang	hung	hung	
have	had	had	
hear	heard	heard	
hide	hid	hidden	
hit	hit	hit	
hold	held	held	
hurt	hurt	hurt	
keep	kept	kept	
kneel	knelt	knelt	
know	knew	known	
lay	laid	laid	
lead	led	led	
learn		learnt/learned	
leave	learnt/learned	left	

VERB	PAST SIMPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit .	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
	said	said
say see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
sew	sewed	sewn.
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
smell	smelt/smelled	smelt/smelled
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilt/spilled	spilt/spilled
spoil	spoilt/spoiled	spoilt/spoiled
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
strike	struck	struck
sweep	swept	swept
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	fore	torn
tell	told	told
think		
100 A 11	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

# PHRASAL VERB BANK

A phrasal verb is a verb with two or three parts. The meaning of the verb is sometimes different from the meaning of its separate parts. Phrasal verbs can combine verbs with prepositions or adverbs.

This section focuses on phrasal verbs related to four topics: getting about, in the morning, people and communication and other phrasal verbs.

#### **GETTING ABOUT**

1 Match the phrasal verbs to the definitions below.

come round

get back pick (someone) up take off = return = leave the ground (a plane) = visit someone's house = enter a place



= collect someone from somewhere

#### PRACTICE

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs from Exercise 1.

Our plane at three tomorrow afternoon. We're away for a few days, but I'll call you when we 3 Yesterday evening my dad from school in his car. You look tired. Why don't you and sit down.

to your house yesterday but you were out.

3 Write a sentence using each of the phrasal verbs.

#### IN THE MORNING

1 Match the phrasal verbs to the definitions below.

go out put something on take something off wake up = stop wearing = stop sleeping = get out of bed = leave = start wearing

#### **PRACTICE**

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs from Exercise 1.

1	I usually music for 20 m		then listen to
2		s me at 6.50 and I	
3	Next I shower.	my night cloth	es and have o
4	Then I have breakfast	my school uniform	and
5	I usually bus to school.	at about 7.4	5 to catch the

Write a sentence using each of the phrasal verbs.



#### PEOPLE AND COMMUNICATION

1 Match the phrasal verbs to the definitions below.

call someone back find out grow up look after	get on with someone
= become an adult	
= return a phone call = get information about	
= take care of	



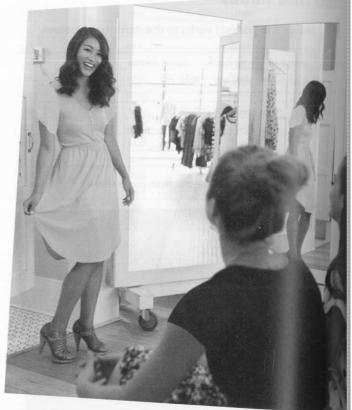
#### **PRACTICE**

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs from Exercise 1.
  - 1 I need to \_\_\_\_\_ my little sister while my parents are out.
  - 2 I very well with all my brothers and sisters.
  - 3 There's a car outside our house. I want to who it belongs to.
  - 4 Sorry, I have to hurry. I'll \_\_\_\_\_\_you \_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
  - We live in the city now, but my parents in a small village.
- 3 Write a sentence using each of the phrasal verbs.

#### OTHER PHRASAL VERBS

1 Match the phrasal verbs to the definitions below.

fill in try on	give back lie down turn off	
	= usually something you do before you to sleep	go
	= stop a machine or light from working	1
	= write information on a form	
	= give something to the person who go	ive it
	to you	
	= put on clothes to see if they fit	



#### PRACTICE

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs from Exercise 1.
  - 1 I've got a bad headache so I'm going to
  - 2 Don't forget to \_\_\_\_\_\_ the lights when you leave the building.
  - 3 I always shoes before I buy them.
    4 To get a passport you have to
  - 4 To get a passport you have to \_\_\_\_\_ a large of forms.

    5 When are you going to \_\_\_\_\_ the book
- 3 Write a sentence using each of the phrasal verbs.

I lent you?

# WRITING BANK

### HOW TO MAKE YOUR WRITING BETTER: ADJECTIVES

To make a sentence more interesting, we can use adjectives.

- 1 Look at the pairs of sentences. Underline the adjectives in each b sentence.
  - 1 a There was a chair in the corner of the room.
    - **b** There was a <u>comfortable</u> chair in the corner of the room.
  - 2 a We had lunch in a restaurant.
    - **b** We had lunch in a small, friendly restaurant.
  - 3 a A woman showed me the way home.
    - **b** A kind woman showed me the way home.
  - 4 a I knew I had made a mistake.
    - **b** I knew I had made a big mistake.
- 2 Look at Exercise 1 again. Decide if the sentences are true or false.

Adjectives ...

the

you

a lot

- 1 describe people or things.
- 2 usually come after the person or thing they describe.
- 3 can make sentences more interesting because they add more information.
- 3 Complete the sentences with an adjective from the box.

<ul><li>1 He was carrying a suitcase.</li><li>2 I have an message for you.</li></ul>	modern
2 I have an message for you.	
3 She lives in a apartment.	
4 We had a day in the park.	
5 She was wearing an jacket.	

- 4 We often use adjectives to talk about good or nice things. Choose the two adjectives which can replace good or nice in each sentence.
  - 1 It was a very good film. (exciting/friendly/funny)
  - 2 She was wearing a nice dress. (beautiful/lovely/clever)
  - 3 That's a good idea. (brilliant/famous/great)
  - 4 A nice doctor helped me. (friendly/favourite/kind)
  - 5 The weather was nice. (sunny/clever/pleasant)
  - 6 We had some good food. (great/hungry/excellent)
- We often use adjectives to talk about very good or very bad things. <u>Underline</u> the adjectives which mean 'very good' or 'very bad' in each sentence. Then add them to the table.
  - 1 It was a nice day. We had a wonderful meal.
  - 2 We didn't play tennis because the weather was terrible.
  - 3 I loved the film. It was amazing!
  - 4 I didn't like the food. It was horrible.
  - 5 We watched a film, but it was awful!
  - 6 I think she's a fantastic singer. I love her songs.

VERY GOOD	VERY BAD
vonderful	lantog int
1, 10, 11, 11, 11, 11, 11, 11, 11, 11, 1	

# HOW TO MAKE YOUR WRITING BETTER: ADVERBS AND INTERESTING VERBS

1	Look at the pairs of sentences.	<u>Underline</u> the
	adverbs in each b sentence.	

- 1 a I ran home.
  - **b** I guickly ran home.
- 2 a The children were playing in the garden.
  - **b** The children were playing happily in the garden.
- 3 a I read the invitation.
  - **b** I read the invitation carefully.
- 4 a She opened the letter.
  - **b** She opened the letter slowly.
- 5 a I couldn't see because it was cloudy.
  - **b** I couldn't see well because it was cloudy.

## 2 Look at Exercise 1 again. Decide if the sentences are true or false.

- 1 Adverbs can describe how someone does something.
- 2 Most adverbs end in -ly.
- 3 Adverbs always come before the verb.
- 4 Adverbs can make sentences more interesting, because they describe actions.

#### 3 Choose the best adverb in each sentence.

- 1 A man called my name loudly/terribly.
- 2 The children ate their pizzas kindly/hungrily.
- 3 He spoke clearly/cheaply.

230

- 4 My friend was driving very noisily/fast.
- 5 She carefully/busily picked up the young bird.
- 6 We found the boat easily/loudly.
- 7 Everyone in the team played quickly/well, and we won the game!
- 8 She sang the song beautifully/highly.

#### 4 Complete the sentences with the adverb in brackets. Choose the correct place to put the adverb.

The \_\_\_\_\_ police officer spoke to me \_\_\_\_ .

(angrily)

The police officer spoke to me angrily.

- 2 I read the letter. (quickly)
  3 She closed the door (quietly)
- 4 He \_\_\_\_ carried the hot drinks into the \_\_\_\_ sitting room. (carefully)
- 5 We walked \_\_\_\_\_ through \_\_\_\_ the park.
  (slowly)
- 6 Mark didn't sleep last night. (well)

#### 5 Sometimes we can use a more interesting verb instead of a verb and an adverb. <u>Underline</u> the verb in each b sentence which matches the verb + adverb in the first sentence.

- 1 a I went to the bus stop quickly.
  - **b** I hurried to the bus stop.
- 2 a Everyone was speaking loudly at the same time.
  - **b** Everyone was shouting at the same time.
- 3 a They were sitting quietly in the garden.
  - **b** They were relaxing in the garden.
  - a We got into the water quickly.
    - **b** We jumped into the water.
- 5 a I put the letter quickly into the bin.
  - **b** I threw the letter into the bin.
- 6 a 'I'm lost,' she said sadly.
  - b 'I'm lost,' she cried.

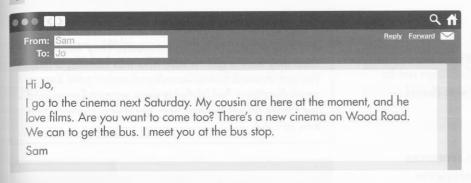
#### 6 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box.

jumped ran relaxed shouted threw

1 She \_\_\_\_\_ into the room and picked up the phone.
2 'Go away!' he \_\_\_\_ .
3 We sat down and \_\_\_\_ for a few minutes.
4 The cat \_\_\_\_ into the man's arms.
5 He \_\_\_\_ the map onto the fire.

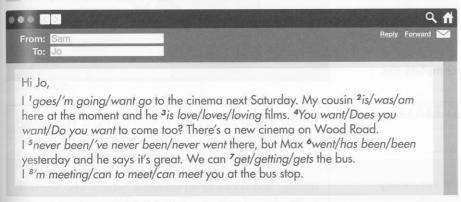
# USE VERB FORMS CORRECTLY TO TALK ABOUT THE PAST, PRESENT AND FUTURE

1 Read the email. Underline six mistakes with verb forms.

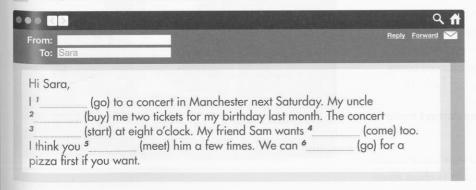


2 Write the email from Exercise 1 correctly.

3 This email has more information. Read it and choose the correct options.



- 4 Look at Exercise 3 again. Find an example of these things.
  - 1 the present continuous for future plans
  - 2 the past simple for an action in the past
  - 3 the present perfect for an experience at some time in the past
  - 4 a modal verb
- 5 Complete the email below with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.



- 6 Use these notes to write an email. Try to use different verb forms correctly.
  - ask a friend to come to a water park with you next Saturday
  - say where it is
  - say how you can get there

# USE LINKING WORDS AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS TO MAKE LONGER SENTENCES

1 Read the story. How many sentences are there?

Dan woke up. He got out of bed. He didn't look at his clock. He opened the fridge. It was almost empty. He was hungry. He decided to go out for some food. He went to a café. It was closed. It was only 6.30 in the morning!

2 Read the same story. This time, the sentences are linked with linking words. <u>Underline</u> the linking words.

Dan woke up <u>and</u> got out of bed. He didn't look at his clock. He opened the fridge, but it was almost empty. He was hungry, so he decided to go out for some food. He went to a café, but it was closed because it was only 6.30 in the morning!

- 3 Choose the correct linking words to complete the sentences.
  - 1 I wanted to go to the cinema, but/so I didn't have any money.
  - 2 It was late and/because I was very tired.
  - 3 It was cold, but/so I put on my coat.
  - 4 We couldn't play tennis but/because it was raining.
  - 5 I invited Sam, because/but he didn't want to come.
  - 6 It was sunny, but/so we decided to have a barbecue.
- 4 Look at the a and b sentences. <u>Underline</u> the linking words that join the sentences in b.
  - 1 a He showed me a photo. It wasn't very clear.
    - **b** He showed me a photo which wasn't very clear.
  - 2 a I saw a girl. She looked scared.
    - **b** I saw a girl who looked scared.
  - 3 a I saw a man in the street. He was singing.
    - **b** I saw a man in the street who was singing.
  - 4 a The man was carrying a bag. It looked heavy.
    - **b** The man was carrying a bag that looked heavy.
- 5 Look at Exercise 4 again. Choose the correct options to complete the rules.
  - 1 We can use who/which and that to write about people.
  - 2 We can use who/which and that to write about things.

6 Choose the correct options to complete the stories.

Emma was on holiday with her friends in a new city, and they wanted to go to a museum. They were lost. Then they saw a girl \*which/who\* was holding a map. The girl showed Emma her map. But she gave Emma some directions \*2which/who\* were wrong! Emma and her family found the museum, but it was closed when they arrived!



Martin was in the city centre with his mum. He wanted to buy some new shoes, so he went to a shoe shop. He saw some black shoes <sup>3</sup>which/who he liked. They were very expensive. His mum didn't have much money. She spoke to an assistant <sup>4</sup>which/who worked in the shop. The assistant showed Martin some cheaper shoes. Martin liked these ones, too, so he got them.



# WRITING PART 6: A SHORT MESSAGE

Read the exam task. How many things must you write about in your email? How many words should you write?

You want to borrow a bike from your English friend, Mike. Write an email to Mike.

In your email:

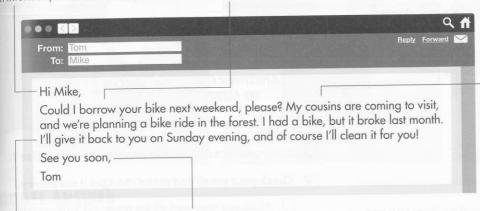
- . ask Mike if you can borrow his bike
- explain why you need it
- say when you will give it back

Write 25 words or more.

#### MODEL ANSWER

an informal phrase to start the email

answer the first point in the task



answer the second point in the task

answer the third point in the task an informal phrase to end the email

#### KEY LANGUAGE AND IDEAS FOR EMAILS

#### Opening an email:

Hi Tom, Hello

#### Closing an email:

Love, See you soon, Bye, Thanks ...

#### Inviting someone:

Would you like to ...? Do you want to ...?

#### Making a suggestion:

Why don't you/we ...? You/We could ... Let's ...

How about ...? What about ...?

#### Making an offer or promise:

I could ... if you like. I can ... if you want. I'll ..

#### Making a request:

Could I/you ...? Can I/you ...? Is it OK if I ...?

#### Giving good news:

Can you believe it? Great news! Guess what?

#### Giving bad news:

I'm sorry, but ... I'm afraid ...

#### Linking words and phrases:

and but so because

#### Informal language:

- contractions: I'm you're she's
- informal words and phrases: amazing brilliant OK

#### 2 Complete the suggestions with the words in the box.

C	ould	don't	Let's	Shall	Why
1	Why		we g	get the bu	us together?
2	We	We meet outside the cinema.			
3		we	buy th	e tickets	online?
4		ge	t the tro	ıin.	
5		do	n't we g	go for a	pizza after the show?

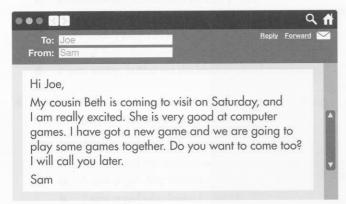
#### 3 Match sentence beginnings 1-5 with endings a-e.

- 1 Could I borrow
  2 Can you help me
  3 Is it OK
  4 Could I stay
  5 Can you bring your

  a with my work?
  b laptop?
  c your bike?
  d if I bring my friend Jack?
  at your house on
- Write sentences about good or bad news. Use the word in brackets.
  - I've passed all my exams. (believe)
     Can you believe it? I've passed all my exams!
     I can't come to your party. (afraid)
     I'll be a bit late. (sorry)
     I won the competition! (guess)

Saturday night?

5 Read the email. Underline six verbs where you can use contractions.



## 6 Read the exam task. What information should you include in your email?

Your English friend Laura has invited you to go to a concert with her on Saturday, but you can't go. Write an email to Laura.

In your email:

- · say that you can't go on Saturday
- explain why you can't go
- suggest another day to meet.

Write 25 words or more.

## 7 Before you write your email, complete the table with ideas.

YOU CAN'T GO ON SATURDAY	I'm sorry, but
WHY?	because
ANOTHER DAY TO MEET	Why don't we?

- 8 Write your email, using your notes from Exercise 7.
- 9 Check your email and make changes if necessary.

Have you answered all the points in Laura's email?
Have you used a suitable phrase to open and close your email?
Have you used a range of language?
Have you used linking words to make longer sentences?
Have you used contractions and informal language?
Have you counted your words?

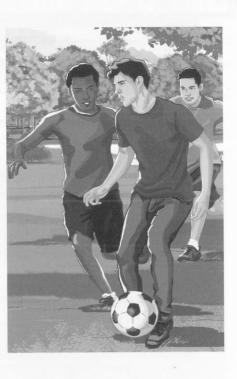
## WRITING PART 7: A STORY

#### 1 Read the exam task. How many words should you write?

Look at the three pictures.
Write the story shown in the pictures.
Write **35 words** or more.







#### **MODEL ANSWER**

this tells the first part of the story

past simple verbs for the main events in the story

adjectives and adverbs make the story more interesting

Mark got up and looked outside. He was happy because it was a sunny day. He decided to play football. He then found his football and hurried outside. Next, he called his friends. Later, his friends arrived, and they played together. They had a wonderful time!

this tells the second part of the story

this tells the third part of the story

#### KEY LANGUAGE AND IDEAS FOR STORIES

Give the story an interesting title:

The robbery A day out

Use past simple and past continuous verbs:

Mark got up. It was raining.

Use time expressions:

first then later the next day

Use adjectives to describe people, places and feelings:

friendly kind busy excited angry

Use adverbs:

quickly slowly carefully

Use interesting verbs:

hurried ran shouted

2 Complete the story with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

A	sur	prise	VISIT

Mary was at home one afternoon. She <sup>1</sup>
(feel) bored because it <sup>2</sup> (rain). Suddenly,
Mary's friend Sara <sup>3</sup> (arrive) at the house.
She <sup>4</sup> (carry) a pizza in a box, and a video
game. Mary was very happy! Mary and Sara
<sup>5</sup> (eat) the pizza together and <sup>6</sup>
(play) the game.

3 Choose the correct time expressions to complete the stories.

Max decided to make a cake. <sup>1</sup>First/Next, he went to the supermarket to buy some eggs and butter. <sup>2</sup>Suddenly/Next he mixed everything together quickly and put the cake in the oven. <sup>3</sup>Finally/First, the cake was ready! Max ate a big slice, and it was fantastic!

Paula was cycling home. \*First/Suddenly, she saw a puppy in the road. It was on its own, and it looked sad. It was her friend Sam's dog. Paula called the dog to her. \*Then/Finally, she phoned Sam. \*Finally/Next, Sam arrived. He was very pleased, and the dog was so excited!





4	Cross out the adjective that is not possible in	each
	sentence.	

- 1 I was feeling angry/happy/tired/tall.
- 2 The waiter was very polite/empty/kind/friendly.
- 3 The town was quite busy/quiet/pleased/old.
- 4 She was wearing a blue/big/quick/pretty hat.
- 5 It was a boring/great/high/brilliant film.
- 6 He was carrying a small/black/ready/new suitcase.
- 5 Read the exam task. Before you write your story, make notes on your ideas in the table.

Look at the pictures.

Write the story shown in the pictures.

Write 35 words or more.

PICTURE 1		
PICTURE 2	v	
PICTURE 3		

- 6 Write your story, using your notes from Exercise 5.
- 7 Check your story and make changes if necessary.
  - ☐ Have you written about all three pictures?
  - ☐ Have you used past simple verbs?
  - Have you used adjectives and adverbs to make your story interesting?
  - ☐ Have you counted your words?



# SPEAKING BANK

# GIVING PERSONAL INFORMATION

1 119 Listen to two students giving personal information. Complete the table.

PABLO	LUCIA
	PABLO

# KEY LANGUAGE AND IDEAS FOR GIVING PERSONAL INFORMATION

Saying your name:

My name is / My name's ...

Saying your age:

I'm ... years old.

Saying where you come from:

I come from ...

Saying where you live:

I live in ...

- 2 119 Match the sentence beginnings 1-4 with endings a-d. Listen again and check.
  - 1 My
  - 2 I come
  - 3 I'm eighteen
  - 4 I live

- a in Milan.
- **b** name's Pablo.
- from Madrid.
- **d** years old.

# TALKING ABOUT HABITS, LIKES AND DISLIKES

1 20 Listen to Sophie talking about her habits.
Which activities does she talk about?

doing homework going to the cinema meeting friends playing football playing tennis watching TV

#### KEY LANGUAGE AND IDEAS FOR TALKING ABOUT HABITS

I sometimes ...

I often ...

I usually ...

I always ...

I never ...

1 ... every day/every weekend/on Saturdays.

Use words like sometimes, often, etc. with the present simple form of verbs:

I sometimes meet my friends.

I often go to the cinema.

I go out with friends every weekend.

Notice that sometimes, often, usually, etc. come before the main verb, but after the verb be. Phrases such as every day, every weekend, on Saturdays come at the end:

I never play football.

I'm never late.

I often play video games.

I play video games every day.

- 2 120 Choose the correct options to complete the sentences. Listen again and check.
  - 1 I always get up/get up always early.
  - 2 I never am/am never late for school.
  - 3 I usually do/do usually my homework when I get home from school.
  - 4 I don't often watch/watch often TV.
  - 5 I usually play tennis in Saturdays/on Saturdays.
  - 6 I meet sometimes/sometimes meet my friends at the weekend.

3 \( \text{\ti}\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\ti

# KEY LANGUAGE AND IDEAS FOR TALKING ABOUT LIKES AND DISLIKES

1 like ...

I don't like ...

1 love ...

I prefer ...

I enjoy ...

My favourite (sport, food, etc.) is ...

Use like, love and prefer with a noun, an -ing form of a verb, or an infinitive.

| like/love/prefer adventure films.

I like/love/prefer going shopping.

I like/love/prefer to go out with friends.

Use enjoy with a noun or an -ing form of a verb.

enjoy basketball.

I enjoy going on holiday.

I enjoy to go shopping.

Say I prefer ... to ....

I prefer basketball to tennis.

4 2 121 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Listen again and check.

d	on't	favourite	like	listening	prefer
1	11	math	ns and	science.	
2	1	like o	art.		
3	l enj	oy	to mu	ısic.	
4	1	footl	oall to t	ennis.	
5	Basketball is my sport.				

## GIVING OPINIONS AND REASONS

- 1 22 Listen to a conversation about different activities.
  Which activity do both people like?

about going	do do don't fun love prefer think what
Lily:	you like swimming?
Rob:	Yes, I <sup>2</sup> . It's fun. What <sup>3</sup> you
Lily:	No, 14 like swimming. 15 to the cinema. It's really interesting. 7 do you think?
Rob:	No, I think going to the cinema is expensive.  I * to watch films at home. My favourit activity is cycling. Do you think cycling is  ?
Lily:	Yes, I do. I <sup>10</sup> cycling!

- 3 (2) 123 We often give reasons to explain our opinions. Listen to three people giving reasons for their opinions. Choose the reason that each person gives.
  - 1 I like travelling because
    - a you meet interesting people.
    - **b** you learn about different countries.
  - 2 I don't like skateboarding because
    - a it's dangerous.
    - b it's boring.
  - 3 I love this computer game because
    - a it's exciting.
    - b I'm very good at it.

#### KEY LANGUAGE AND IDEAS FOR GIVING OPINIONS AND REASONS

#### Asking for opinions:

Do you like ...?

Do you think ... is/are (fun/interesting/exciting ...)?

Do you prefer ... or ...?

What about you?

What do you think?

Giving opinions:

I think ... is/are (boring/difficult ...)

I don't think ... is/are (dangerous/expensive ...)

For me, ... is (fun/interesting ...)

#### **Giving reasons:**

I like ... because ...

I think ... is interesting because ...

Use is with singular nouns and are with plural nouns:

Do you think camping is fun?

I think video games are fun.

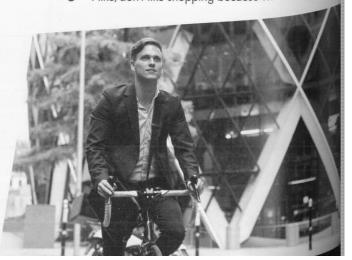
Use I don't think + a positive verb:

I don't think reading is interesting. NOT + think it

isn't very interesting.

I **don't think** football **is** fun. NOT <del>I think football isn't fun</del>.

- - 1 I like/don't like reading because ...
  - 2 | love/hate football because ...
  - 3 I like/don't like shopping because ...





## AGREEING AND DISAGREEING

- 1 \( \sum\_{125} \) Listen to a conversation about playing a musical instrument. What do the people agree about?
  - It's important to practise.
  - It's very difficult.
  - Lessons are always very expensive.

#### Agreeing:

Yes, I agree with you. I agree with you that ... Exactly! That's true.

#### Disagreeing:

I'm not sure about that. I think ... I don't know. I think ... Yes, but ...

2 125 Complete part of the conversation with the phrases in the box. Listen again and check.

a	gree with y	ou not	sure about	that's true	yes, bu
A:	I think it's	very diffic	cult to learn	an instrument	
B:	l'm 1important		The guitar i	sn't very diffic v.	ult, but it
A:	so that yo	u can get		s important to nk that lessons	
B:	yourself.	_ you can	watch lesso	ns online and	teach

DEALING WITH PROBLEMS
1
that please? the question, please? Could you, please?
2
<ul><li>Could you repeat again that, please?</li><li>Can you repeat me the question, please?</li><li>Could you say again, please?</li></ul>
3 27 Listen to two people talking. What are they trying to describe?
Item 1 a piece of clothing Item 2 b a kind of food Item 3 c a game
KIEY LAMIGUAGE AND IDEAS FOR DEALING WITH PROBLEMS  Asking someone to repeat: Can/Could you repeat that, please? Can/Could you repeat the question, please? Can/Could you say that again, please? When you don't know the word for something: I'm not sure what the word is, but it's (a sport, a kind of food) It's something you use when you (play football, cook) I don't know the word, but it's something you (wear, eat) I'm not sure what this is called, but it's a kind of (animal, plant, game)
4 2 127 Complete what the people say with one word in each gap. Listen again and check.
<ul> <li>I'm sure what the is, but you often play this on the beach.</li> <li>I'm not sure this is , but it's something you wear around your neck.</li> <li>I don't what the word , but it's something you eat.</li> </ul>

### SPEAKING PART 1

- 1 28 Listen to Ana answering three questions.

  Does she use full sentences in her answers?
- 2 128 Listen again. Notice how she adds extra information.
  - 1 What do you do at weekends?
  - 2 Who do you like spending your weekends with?
  - 3 Where do you like going shopping?
  - 4 What do you like buying?
- - 1 I often go shopping, \_\_\_\_\_ I sometimes go to the cinema.
  - 2 I like going shopping in London \_\_\_\_\_ there are lots of good shops.
  - 3 I like buying clothes and shoes \_\_\_\_\_\_I'm interested in fashion.
- 4 2 129 Read Ana's answer to a longer question. Choose the correct options. Listen and check.
  - **Examiner:** Now, please tell me something about presents that you buy for other people.
  - Ana:

    Well, I \*love/loved buying presents for people. I usually \*2buy/am buying presents for people when it's their birthday. For example, last month I \*3buy/bought\* a T-shirt for my brother and he really \*4like/liked\* it. It's my friend's birthday next week, and I \*5take/'m going to take her to the cinema as a present.
- 5 Choose the best answers to the questions.
  - 1 Where do you usually meet your friends?
    - a I usually meet my friends at the weekend.
    - **b** I often meet them at the cinema, or we go for a meal together.
  - 2 Who do you live with?
    - a I share a flat with three friends.
    - **b** I live in a small apartment in the city centre.
  - 3 What sports can you do in your area?
    - a I play tennis once a week, but I can't play very well.
    - **b** You can play tennis and football at the sports centre near my house.
  - 4 What time do you usually have lunch?
    - a I usually have lunch at about one o'clock.
    - **b** I usually have a sandwich and some fruit.
  - 5 What did you eat for breakfast this morning?
    - a I don't usually have breakfast, but sometimes I have some cereal.
    - **b** I had some eggs and some orange juice.
  - 6 How many rooms are there in your house or flat?
    - a I like my bedroom because it's quite big, and you can see the park from my window.
    - **b** There are two bedrooms, a kitchen, a living room and a bathroom, so five rooms.

- 6 Choose the correct options. Then decide if each sentence is about the present, past or future.
  - 1 I usually have/had dinner with my family.
  - 2 I meet/'m going to meet my friends tomorrow, because it's the weekend.
  - 3 I sometimes watch/'m going to watch films on my laptop because I love watching films.
  - 4 I cook/cooked a meal for some friends last night, and it was very good.
  - 5 I play/'m going to play tennis next weekend with my friends
  - 6 1 buy/bought some new shoes yesterday, and some new jeans too.
- - 1 A: Tell me something about what you like doing at home.
    - **B:** I like watching films, and I enjoy playing video games.
  - 2 A: Tell me something about what you like to eat with friends.
    - **B:** I sometimes go to restaurants with my friends, and I prefer Italian food.
  - 3 A: Tell me something about the clothes you like to buy.
    - **B:** My favourite thing to buy is jeans, because I like wearing them.
  - **4 A:** Tell me something about the places you like to visit
    - B: I like visiting places that are near the sea.
  - 5 A: Tell me something about the sports you like to do
    - **B:** I like playing football. I play for a team, and we have a game every Saturday.
  - a My team doesn't often win.
  - **b** I love swimming when the weather's hot.
  - c I've just got a new game.
  - **d** We went to a pizza restaurant last weekend.
  - e I bought some really nice jeans last week.
- 8 Practise answering the questions.
  - What's your name?
  - How old are you?
  - What do you usually do at the weekend?
  - Who do you like going shopping with?
  - Where do you usually meet your friends?
  - What did you eat for breakfast this morning?
  - Tell me something about the clothes you like to buy.
  - Tell me something about the sports you like to do.

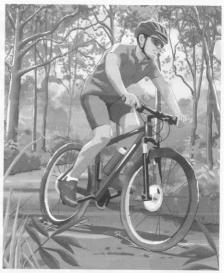
# SPEAKING PART 2

1 2 131 Listen to two students doing the task. Do they talk about all the pictures?

Do you like these different hobbies? Say why or why not.











2 🔘 132 Listen to one of the students answering a follow-up question. Does she give reasons for her answers?

## 3 (2) 133 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Listen and check.

ak	bout agree do like sure think
A:	I think video games are exciting. What do you
B:	I'm not 2 about that.
	What about taking photos? Do you <sup>3</sup> taki photos?
B:	I often take photos when I'm with my friends. I take photos on my phone. What 4you?
A:	I like taking photos, too. I've got a camera.
B:	I always go cycling at weekends. What <sup>5</sup> think about it?

- 4 Match the opinions (1-5) with the reasons (a-e).
  - 1 I prefer to go on holiday with friends because
  - 2 I prefer to play team sports because
  - 3 I don't like doing outdoor activities when the weather's bad
  - 4 I prefer to watch films at home because
  - 5 I prefer staying in hotels to camping because
  - a exercising on your own is boring.
  - **b** you can have food while you watch.
  - c it's more comfortable, and you don't get cold at night.
  - d you can have more fun with people of the same age.
  - e because nothing is fun when it's raining.

#### 

Do you like these different summer activities?

with you that it's fun.



A: |6









#### 6 135 Practise answering the follow-up questions. Then listen and compare your ideas.

- Which of these activities do you like the best?
- Do you prefer to go on holiday to the beach or the countryside?
- Do you prefer swimming in the sea or in a swimming pool?

# A2 KEY EXAM INFORMATION

PART/TIMING	CONTENT	EXAM FOCUS
Reading and Writing 45 minutes	Part 1: Discrete three-option multiple choice questions on six short texts.  Part 2: Matching. There are three short texts with seven items. Candidates are asked to decide which text an item refers to.  Part 3: Three-option multiple choice. Candidates read a text and are asked to choose the correct answer from five multiple-choice questions.  Part 4: Three-option multiple-choice cloze. A text is followed by six questions. Candidates select the correct word from each question to complete	Part 1: Candidates focus on overall understanding of emails, notices and messages. Part 2: Candidates read for specific information and detailed comprehension.  Part 3: Candidates read for detailed understanding and main ideas.  Part 4: Candidates read and identify the appropriate word.
	the text.  Part 5: Open cloze. Candidates complete gaps in one or two short texts.  Part 6: Writing – short message  Part 7: Writing – story	Part 5: Candidates read and identify the appropriate word with the focus on grammar.  Part 6: Candidates write a communicative note or email of at least 25 words.  Part 7: Candidates write a narrative of at least 35 words describing the people, events and locations that are shown in three pictures.
2 Listening approximately 30 minutes	Part 1: Five short dialogues with three-option multiple-choice questions with pictures.  Part 2: Longer dialogue. Five gaps to fill with words or numbers.  Part 3: Longer informal dialogue with five three-option multiple-choice items.  Part 4: Five three-option multiple choice questions on five short dialogues or monologues.  Part 5: Matching. There is a longer informal dialogue.  Candidates match five items with eight options.	Part 1: Candidates are expected to listen and identify key information.  Part 2: Candidates are expected to identify and write down key information.  Part 3: Candidates listen to identify specific information, feelings and opinions.  Part 4: Candidates listen to identify the main idea, message, gist, topic or point.  Part 5: Candidates listen to identify specific information.
<b>Speaking</b> 8–10 minutes per pair of candidates	Part 1 Phase 1: Each candidate interacts with the interlocutor, giving factual information of a personal nature.  Part 1 Phase 2: A topic-based interview where the interlocutor asks each candidate two questions about their daily life.  Part 2 Phase 1: A discussion based on topic-based artwork prompts. Candidates discuss the objects and activities in the artwork with each other.  Part 2 Phase 2: The interlocutor leads follow-up discussion on same topic as Phase 1.  Each candidate is asked two questions.	Part 1: Candidates focus on interactional and social language.  Part 2: Candidates focus on organising a larger unit of discourse.

### ANSWERS AND AUDIOSCRIPTS

#### **STARTER**

Page 8

#### **VOCABULARY**

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

A at a sports centre, photo 1

B on holiday, photo 3

C in an English class, photo 2

#### Track 002

A

Ben: Hi, I'm Ben. What's your name?

**Jim:** Hello, Ben. My name's Jim. Nice to meet you.

**Ben:** Nice to meet you, too, Jim. Is this the basketball club?

Jim: No, it isn't. It's five-a-side football.

В

Man: Are you British?

Woman: No, we aren't. We're

Canadian.

Man: Oh, that's interesting. Where are

you from in Canada?

C

Girl 1: Is he our English teacher?

Girl 2: Yes, he is. His name is

Mr Robinson. He's very nice. Are you a new student?

Girl 1: Yes, I am. This is my first lesson.

Girl 2: Where are you from?

#### **Exercise 3**

1 'm

2 's

**3** Is

4 isn't, 's

5 Are

6 aren't, 're

7 's, are

8 ls

9 is, 's, Are

10 am

**11** are

#### **VOCABULARY**

1 Italian, American

2 Spanish, Mexican

3 French, Chinese

#### Page 9

#### READING

#### Exercise 1

1 Karl

2 Robert

3 Adam

4 Zadie

5 Adi

6 Lily

**7** Marco

8 Leroy

#### Exercise 2

1 b

**3** a

**5** d **6** e

2 c 4 f Exercise 3

1 who

wno where

3 what

3 what

4 how old

5 whose

6 how many

#### Page 10

#### **VOCABULARY**

#### Exercise 1

1 grandparents

2 nephew

3 uncle

4 nieces

5 aunt

6 cousins

7 granddaughter, grandson

#### Exercise 2

1 Mum

2 Dad

3 Grandma / Granny

4 Grandad / Grandpa

#### **GRAMMAR**

#### Exercise 1

1 's

2 haven't

3 Have, I have

4 Has, has

#### **Exercise 2**

1 Have ... got

2 Has ... got

3 has ... got

4 Has ... got

#### Page 11

#### READING

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### **Exercise 2**

He works at a dance school; He can speak English and Portuguese.

#### Exercise 3

1 Porto

2 two languages

3 a dance teacher

4 two sisters

5 dance

#### GRAMMAR

#### Exercise 1

1 can

2 can't

3 Can

4 can't

#### Exercise 2

#### Suggested answers

Can your parents speak English?

Can your dad dance?

Can your teacher swim?

Can your brother/sister play tennis?

Can you cook?

#### Exercise 3

1 likes

2 doesn't like

3 Does

4 like

5 does

6 doesn't

#### Exercise 4

1 lives

2 comes

3 likes 4 works

#### Exercise 5

1 c

**2** a

3 b

#### Exercise 6

1 doesn't live

2 Can ... speak Yes, she can.

3 Has ... got Yes, she has.

4 does ... work? She works at a pizza restaurant.

5 Does ... like Yes, she does.

6 doesn't like

#### Page 12

#### LISTENING

#### Exercises 1 & 2

Students' own answers.

#### Track 003

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, W, X, Y, Z

#### Exercise 3

UK (United Kingdom)

USA (United States of America)

EU (European Union)

DOB (date of birth)

LOL (laugh out loud)

#### Track 004

- 1 UK United Kingdom
- 2 USA United States of America
- 3 EU European Union
- 4 DOB date of birth
- 5 LOL laugh out loud

#### **Exercise 4**

#### Suggested answer

Your first name, surname, address and date of birth

#### Exercise 5

at a sports club

#### Track 005

**George:** Hello, I'd like to become a member please.

**Woman:** OK, that's no problem, which sports are you interested in?

**George:** Tennis and swimming – and I'd also like to use the gym.

**Woman:** That's fine. Can I take some personal information? What's your name, please?

**George:** George Smithson. **Woman:** How do you spell that?

**George:** George G-E-O-R-G-E and my surname is Smithson – S-M-I-T-H-S-O-N.

**Woman:** Could you spell your surname again, please?

**George:** Yes, it's Smithson – S-M-I-T-H-S-O-N.

Woman: Thank you, Mr Smithson.

#### **Exercise 6**

First name: George Surname: Smithson

#### Exercise 7

Date of birth: 17th June. 1995

Address: 16 Redwood Road, New Town, NW4 8JG

Phone number: 06819 772 3451

#### Track 006

O, P,

**Woman:** OK, Could you tell me your date of birth, please?

**George:** Oh, yes. It's the 17th June, 1995.

Woman: The 17th June ... 1995.

George: Yes, that's right.

**Woman:** Thank you. And now I just need your contact details. What's your address please?

**George:** It's sixteen – that's one six, Redwood Road R-E-D-W-O-O-D Road, New Town and the postcode is NW4 8JG.

Woman: NW4 8JG.
George: Yes, that's right.

Woman: OK and finally, what's your

phone number?

George: It's 06819 772 3451.

#### **Exercise 8**

- 1 name
- 2 spell
- 3 old
- 4 date of birth
- 5 address
- 6 phone number

#### **Exercise 9**

Students' own answers.

#### Page 13

#### **SPEAKING**

#### Exercise 1

Beyoncé, famous singer and songwriter. USA

Diego Boneta, famous actor and singer. Mexican-American

Millie Bobby Brown, actress, England

#### Exercise 2

- 1 Beyoncé: 4 September, 1981
- 2 Diego Boneta: 29 November, 1990
- 3 Millie Bobby Brown: February 19, 2004

#### Track 007

Beyoncé is a very famous American singer. She was born on the 4<sup>th</sup> September 1981 in Houston. Beyoncé has got 2 daughters and a son.

Diego Boneta is Mexican-American. He's an actor, but he can also sing. He was born in Mexico City on 29 November 1990. He's got a brother and a sister. Millie Bobby Brown is a young British actress. She was born on the 19<sup>th</sup> February 2004 in Marbella. She's got a brother and two sisters.

#### **Exercise 3**

Students' own answers.

#### WRITING

#### Exercise 1

Name: Miguel, Likes: New York and his job, Lives: New York, Age: 30, Family: his parents and two sisters, Is from: Porto, Languages: English and Portuguese, Things he can do: dance, speak English and Portuguese

#### Exercises 2 & 3

Students' own answers.

#### UNIT 1

#### Page 14

#### **VOCABULARY**

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- A spend time alone
- B spend time with friends
- C play video games

D relax at home

E go shopping

F play or watch sport

#### Exercise 3

Speaker 1 B

Speaker 2 F

Speaker 3 A

Speaker 4 C

#### Track 008

#### Narrator: Speaker 1

**Woman 1:** My perfect day ...? Well, on my perfect day, I spend time with my friends. We go to the beach and swim, talk and have fun. We probably go home at about half past seven.

Narrator: Speaker 2

**Boy:** For me, a perfect day is about sport. I meet my friends at the park when it opens at quarter past eight and we play basketball. When we get tired, we watch sport on TV and eat ice cream.

Narrator: Speaker 3

Man: My perfect day is when I can spend time alone. I like getting up early and going for a long walk in the countryside. I can walk for 15 or 20 kilometres in the fresh air. Perfect!

Narrator: Speaker 4

**Woman 2:** For me, a perfect day is playing video games for hours with my friends. We play all day and stop at about half past nine in the evening to go for a pizza.

#### Exercise 4

- 1 at the beach
- 2 They watch sport on TV and eat ice cream.
- 3 going for a long walk alone
- 4 go out for a pizza

#### Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

#### Page 15

#### LISTENING

#### Exercise 1

- 1 one o'clock
- 2 half past nine
- 3 quarter past eight
- 4 quarter to six

#### Exercise 2

Students' own answers.

#### Track 009

at half past six at half past two at quarter to four at quarter to seven at quarter past nine at quarter past eleven

#### Exercise 3

- 1 at half past six
  - at half past two
  - at quarter to four
  - at quarter to seven
  - at quarter past nine
  - at **qu**arter past eleven
- 2 the/I/ is silent
- 3 They are both pronounced /ə/ (like the final sound in America or teacher)

#### Exercise 4

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 5

- 1 She's a teacher.
- 2 She's a police officer.
- 3 They live in a small village

#### Track 010

Interviewer: So, Amy, what job do you do?

Amy: I'm a teacher.

**Interviewer:** Can you tell me about your day? What time do you get up?

Amy: I usually wake up at quarter past seven, but I don't get up! I always stay in bed until half past seven and then I get up! Then I have breakfast with my sister, Olivia. She's a police officer, and we live together.

**Interviewer:** What do you have for breakfast?

Amy: I usually have toast and Olivia has cereal. We both drink coffee for breakfast. We don't like tea. After breakfast, I have a shower and get dressed. Then I get my bag, put on my coat and leave the house to go to work.

Interviewer: How do you get to work?

Amy: By bus. We live in a small village and it's the quickest way to get into town.

Interviewer: How does Olivia get to

work? Does she go by bus, too?

Amy: No, she doesn't catch the bus.
She goes by car.

#### Exercise 6

- 1 F She wakes up at 7.15.
- 2 T
- 3 T
- 4 F Lessons start at 9 o'clock.
- 5 T
- 6 T
- 7 F She sometimes watches TV.

#### Track 011

**Interviewer:** So, Amy, what job do you do?

Amy: I'm a teacher.

Interviewer: Can you tell me about your day? What time do you get up?

Amy: I usually wake up at quarter past seven, but I don't get up! I always stay in bed until half past seven and then I get up! Then I have breakfast with my sister, Olivia. She's a police officer, and we live together.

Interviewer: What do you have for breakfast?

Amy: I usually have toast and Olivia has cereal. We both drink coffee for breakfast. We don't like tea. After breakfast, I have a shower and get dressed. Then I get my bag, put on my coat and leave the house to go to work.

Interviewer: How do you get to work?

Amy: By bus. We live in a small village and it's the quickest way to get into town.

**Interviewer:** How does Olivia get to work? Does she go by bus, too?

**Amy:** No, she doesn't catch the bus. She goes by car.

**Interviewer:** So, Amy, can you tell me about your day at work?

**Amy:** I arrive at work at quarter to nine. Lessons start at nine o'clock and lunch is at half past twelve.

**Interviewer:** Where do you have lunch? Do you have lunch at college?

**Amy:** No, I don't. I have lunch in a café. Sometimes, if it's a nice day, we buy sandwiches and go to the park.

Interviewer: Who do you have lunch with?

Amy: I often have lunch with some of the other teachers from college, but I like having lunch alone sometimes. In the afternoon, lessons finish at half past three. I do some work and get the bus back. I usually get home at about quarter past five.

**Interviewer:** What do you do when you get home?

Amy: I take off my work clothes and put on my jeans and go outside for some fresh air! I take my dog for a walk and when we get home, I have dinner. Then I sometimes watch TV.

**Interviewer:** And when do you go to bed?

Amy: I usually go to bed at about half past ten.

#### Exercise 7

- 1 get dressed
- 2 take off
- 3 get on
- 4 wake up
- 5 put on
- 6 get up

#### Page 16

#### **GRAMMAR**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 regularly
- 2 always true

#### **Exercise 2**

- 1 don't
- 2 get up

- 3 meet
- 4 doesn't
- 5 feels
- 6 have
- **7** go
- 8 don't

#### Exercise 3

- 1 doesn't get dressed
- 2 has, doesn't eat
- 3 walks
- 4 Do ... go, catch
- 5 don't write

#### **Exercise 4**

Students' own answers.

#### **Exercise 5**

- 1 does
- 2 How, What

#### Exercise 6

- 1 e 3 b
- 5
- f 4 c

#### Page 17

#### Exercise 7

- 1 What (job) does he do?
- 2 Where does he study?
- 3 Where does he live?
- 4 Who does he live with?
- 5 How does he get to work?
- 6 What time does he start and finish work?
- 7 What does he do in the evening?
- 8 Why does he like his job?

#### **SPEAKING**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 watching, listening
- 2 studying, walking

#### Track 012

Interviewer: So, Sergio, what do you like doing in the evening?

**Sergio:** I like watching TV and I love listening to music.

Interviewer: And what don't you like doing?

**Sergio:** I don't like studying for my job in the evenings. And I hate walking.

#### **Exercise 2**

-ing

#### **Exercise 3**

- 1 staying
- 2 listening to
- 3 having
- 4 meeting
- 5 dancing
- 6 playing
- 7 watching
- 8 shopping

#### exercises 4 & 5

Students' own answers.

#### **Exercise** 6

A in a garden, a gardener

B on an oil rig, a mechanic

#### **Exercise 7**

#### Karen

- 1 7.00 am
- 2 big, old house in her village
- 3 a cup of tea and a sandwich
- 4 eats her breakfast
- 5 she works in the garden
- 6 2.00 pm
- 7 the owner of the garden
- 8 5.00 pm

#### Roman

- 1 in the Gulf of Mexico
- 2 for a week
- 3 10.00 pm
- 4 the gym
- 5 table tennis
- 6 his friend Pepe
- 7 it's very cold on the oil rig
- 8 9.45 pm

#### Page 18

#### **READING PART 2: TRAINING**

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- A the nurse
- B the nightclub DJ
- C the security guard

#### Exercise 3

- 1 C Pablo
- 2 B Tobi
- 3 B Tobi
- 4 A Bridget
- 5 C Pablo
- 6 A Bridget

#### Exercise 4

Students' own answers.

#### Page 19

#### GRAMMAR

#### Exercise 1

- 1 before
- 2 after
- 3 between

#### Exercise 2

- 1 sometimes
- 2 never
- 3 always
- 4 usually/often
- 5 often/usually

#### Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 once
- 2 twice

#### Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

#### **VOCABULARY**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 photographer D
- 2 police officer C
- 3 mechanic A
- 4 pilot B

#### Track 013

1

**Man 1:** I'm a photographer. My job is taking interesting photographs of things, places and people.

2

Man 2: I'm a police officer. My job is to keep people safe. I work in a police station.

3

**Woman 1:** In my job, I repair machines, like cars, when they go wrong – or I try to! I'm a mechanic.

4

**Woman 2:** I'm a pilot. My job is to fly planes. I work for an airline.

#### Exercise 2

- 1 mechanic
- 2 photographer
- 3 pilot
- 4 police officer

#### Page 20

#### **PUSH YOURSELF B1**

1	f	<b>3</b> a	5 0
	٦	1 h	6 -

#### LISTENING PART 1: TRAINING

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

Students' own answers.

#### Track 014

**Narrator:** One. What job does the woman want to do when she finishes her studies?

**Interviewer:** You're studying to be a nurse, aren't you?

**Student:** Yes, but I've decided that's not the job I want. After my course ends, I want to become a DJ.

**Interviewer:** Wow! Are your parents OK about that?

Student: Well, they're a bit worried but I've told them I'll become a teacher if I can't make any money as a DJ, and they're happy with that.

#### Exercise 3

**2** B

3 C

#### Track 015

**Narrator:** Two. What does the police officer do first when he gets home from work?

**Interviewer:** Now, you're a police officer. What do you do when you get home from work? Do you have something to eat?

**Police officer:** I usually have a sandwich in my afternoon break, so I'm not hungry when I get home. I go and read in the garden.

Interviewer: Don't you eat any dinner?
Police officer: Yes, but I cook dinner
later. And then I watch TV for a while
before I go to bed.

**Narrator:** Three. What time does the man get up in the morning?

**Interviewer:** You're a DJ on an early morning radio programme, aren't you? What time do you have to get up in the morning?

**DJ:** Well, I wake up at quarter to four most days.

Interviewer: That IS early. Is that difficult?

**DJ:** Yes, but I then have a coffee in bed at 4 and I don't usually get out of bed until quarter past four. Then I have a shower and get dressed.

#### Page 21

#### WRITING

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

She's a waitress. She likes talking to customers.

#### Exercise 3

Expressions for beginning an email: Hi, How are you? Expressions for ending an email: Love, Write soon!

#### Exercises 4 & 5

Students' own answers.

#### Page 22

# EXAM FOCUS READING PART 2

1 C 4 C 7 C 2 A 5 B 6 A

#### Page 23

#### LISTENING PART 1

1 B 4 C 2 A 5 C 3 A

#### Track 016

**Narrator:** For each question, choose the correct answer. One. What time does the man start work?

**Woman:** How's your new job, Luca? Do you have to start at seven in the morning, as you did before?

Man: That's one of the things I like about this job – the shop opens at half past nine.

**Woman:** Great! But you have to arrive before then, don't you?

Man: Oh yes. I'm there from nine, but that's much better than seven!

**Narrator:** Two. Where did the woman go with her friend?

Man: Did you see that film you wanted to see yesterday, with your friend Sara?

**Woman:** There weren't any seats left when we got to the cinema. Sara works in a restaurant, and she finished work late.

Man: Oh, that's a pity. So what did you do?

**Woman:** We just walked around the centre of town, chatting, until it was time to come home.

**Narrator:** Three. How should the man contact Eva?

Man: Do you know how I can contact Eva? I've called her several times this morning, but she never answers.

**Woman:** She's not good at answering calls. I send her emails. She checks those on her phone when she's working.

Man: OK, I'll try that. I thought about going to her office.

**Woman:** She's not always there. Sometimes she goes out to meet customers.

Narrator: Four. What does the man need to buy?

Man: I'm going to the supermarket later. Shall I get some bread? I don't think we've got much.

**Woman:** I got that this morning at the shop on the corner. I wanted some fruit as well, but they didn't have any.

Man: I'll get some then. And what about some fish, for dinner?

**Woman:** We're going out for dinner tonight. Have you forgotten?

**Narrator:** Five. Why was the woman late for work?

Woman: I'm really sorry I'm late.

Man: Don't worry, it's only a few minutes. Was the traffic bad this morning?

Woman: Actually, it was fine, but I couldn't start my car. I tried to get a taxi, but there weren't any, so I had to wait for a bus

Man: Oh, well let me know if you need a lift tomorrow.

#### Page 24

#### **REAL WORLD**

Exercises 1 & 2

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 3

1	D	3	B
2	C	4	A

#### Page 25

#### Exercise 4

1	b	3	b	5	а
2	а	4	а	6	b

#### Exercise 5

1 b	2 d	<b>3</b> a

#### Track 017

#### 1

**Official:** Passport, please. Thank you. What's the purpose of your visit?

**Student:** I'm here for a holiday and also to learn Spanish.

**Official:** How long are you planning to be in the country?

**Student:** I'll be here for five weeks. **Official:** OK. When do you fly back? **Student:** I'm flying home on the 28<sup>th</sup> of August.

**Official:** And where are you staying? **Student:** I'm staying with a family in Mexico City.

2

**Maria:** Hello. You must be Charlie. Welcome to Mexico City.

Student: Thanks.

Maria: Come in. I'm Maria, and this is my husband, Raul.

Student: Pleased to meet you.

**Maria:** And you. You'll meet our children later, but they're at school at the moment.

Raul: Here, let me take your bags for you. So, how was your flight?

**Student:** Fine, thanks. No delays. **Maria:** Good. Come in and sit down.

Student: Thanks.

Maria: So, you're from the UK? Student: Yes. I live in Harrow.

**Maria:** And do you come from a big family?

**Student:** No. I've got one brother. I'm the oldest.

Raul: That's nice. And is this your first time in Mexico?

**Student:** Yes. I'm very excited to be here. **Maria:** That's perfect. Now, before I show you your room, I'd just like to ask you a few questions. First, about food. Is there anything you don't eat?

Student: No, I like everything.

**Maria:** Good. Do you have any food allergies? Any foods that make you ill?

**Student:** No, I'm not allergic to anything.

Maria: That's nice and easy. We usually eat at around 8 o'clock in the evening. Is that convenient for you?

Student: Yes, that's fine for me.

3

Girl: Hi. I'm Eva.

**Student:** Hi, Eva. I'm Charlie. Nice to meet you.

**Girl:** Nice to meet you too. Where are you from?

**Student:** I'm from Harrow, in the UK. I'm staying with Maria and Raul for a few weeks.

**Girl:** Cool. I'd love to visit the UK one day. What do you do?

**Student:** I'm a student. I'm studying Spanish and business at university.

**Girl:** Wow. That's great. And what do you think of Mexico City?

**Student:** I really like the city. It's very lively and there's lots to do.

Girl: Great. And what about Mexican

Student: I love spicy food, so I really like

the food here. **Girl:** That's good. So, maybe we should

go and get some food, then? **Student:** Yes, good idea!

#### Exercise 6

- 1 1/1
- 2 I'm staying
- 3 I've got
- 4 very excited
- 5 allergic
- 6 from
- 7 student
- 8 really like

#### Exercise 7

1 a 3 a

#### Exercises 8 & 9

Mexico City: capital of Mexico; first buildings there in 1300s; Spanish explorers built a new city when they arrived in 1500s; lots of old colonial buildings in the city centre.

Family life: In the past, Mexican families were large, and grandparents, parents and children all lived together; most modern families now just parents and children; family life and traditions still important, for example, a quinceañera is a celebration when a girl becomes 15 and has a big party with family and friends. Homestays: a good way to learn about family life and culture and learn the language; there are official websites.

#### Exercise 10

Students' own answers.

#### UNIT 2

#### Page 26

#### **VOCABULARY**

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### **Exercise 2**

1 A 2 D

3 B 4 0

#### Track 018

Sonia: My friends love to share photos of their trips on social media. These photos are from their holidays at different times of the year. Sam's photo is this winter one with all the snow. It's from his trip to New York and it shows the view from the window of his hotel. I think it's December or January - it's definitely winter!

2

Sonia: My Japanese friend Keiko posts photos every day. That one is from her trip to Kyoto with her family in spring - in April or May, I think. They're walking through a park in the rain, but you can see from the flowers on the trees that it's spring.

Sonia: My friend Nathalie visits her grandparents in the forest of Orléans every autumn, so I think this photo is from October or November. This is what a French forest looks like on a foggy day in autumn!

4

Sonia: The last one is from our summer holidays in Ireland. Look at the clear, green sea. Isn't it beautiful? It's a perfect summer day at the end of July.

#### Exercise 3

- 1 winter
- 2 spring
- 3 autumn
- 4 summer

#### Exercises 4 & 5

- 1 January
- 2 April
- 3 May
- 4 July
- 5 October
- 6 November
- 7 December

#### Track 019

January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December

#### Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

#### Page 27

#### **VOCABULARY**

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### **Exercise 2**

1 B

2 C

3 A

#### Exercise 3

1 T

2 F It's wet and often cloudy and foggy.

3 F At night it can be cool.

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 sunshine
- 2 storm
- 3 freezing
- 4 wet
- 5 thunder
- 6 snows
- 7 foggy
- 8 temperature
- 9 cloudy

#### **Exercise 5**

-у

#### Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

#### Page 28

#### GRAMMAR

#### Exercise 1

1 b

2 a

#### Exercise 2

- 1 are you
- 2 It's raining
- 3 watching
- 4 is coming
- 5 're all getting
- 6 isn't sitting
- 7 Is
- 8 isn't
- 9 's working
- 10 is

#### Exercise 3

- 1 're having
- 2 'm sitting
- 3 looking
- 4 is taking
- 5 'm messaging
- 6 're enjoying
- 7 're walking
- 8 isn't raining
- 9 aren't having
- 10 'm enjoying

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 are ... doing
- 2 is ... wearing
- 3 are ... learning
- 4 are ... doing

#### Page 29

#### **LISTENING PART 2: TRAINING**

#### Exercises 1 & 2

Students' own answers.

#### Track 020

Woman: Hello, everyone. As you know, we're going on a trip to Long Beach soon. It's on the 6th of May - that's one week after the trip to the Science Museum on the 29th of April.

#### Exercise 3

- 2 coach
- 3 towel
- 4 9.45
- 5 Burrell

#### Track 021

Woman: Hello, everyone. As you know, we're going on a trip to Long Beach soon. It's on the 6th of May - that's one week after the trip to the Science Museum on the 29th of April.

We usually travel by train on our trips. But we're taking a coach this time, because there isn't a station near Long Beach. If you want, you can bring beach balls or games to play. It's possible to rent sunbeds at the beach, but you will need to take a towel. The journey from college to Long Beach takes only one hour. We're going at 9.45 but can everybody be outside school at 9.15? We'll be back at 4.30. If you'd like to join this trip, please pay Sally Burrell in the college office. If Sally's not there, put the money in an envelope and leave it for her. Sally's surname is spelt B-U-double R-Edouble-L. Now, any questions?

#### **PUSH YOURSELF B1**

#### Exercise 1

1 C

3 D

2 A

4 B

#### Exercise 2

heavy storms

strong winds

bright sunshine

clear skies

heavy snow

thick fog

hard frost

#### **Exercise 3**

- 1 thick fog
- 2 hard frost
- 3 heavy snow
- 4 heavy storms, clear skies
- 5 bright sunshine
- 6 strong winds

#### **Exercise 4**

Students' own answers.

#### READING

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- Koon-Sung usually lives in Singapore. Now he's living in Turin, Italy.
   Carla usually lives in Mexico City. Now she's living in the United Arab Emirates and on holiday.
- 2 Koon-Sung is in Turin for his job. He is working on a big engineering project/ making a road in the mountains. Carla is in the United Arab Emirates because she is on a student exchange programme.

#### Exercise 3

1	С	3	b
2	b	4	а

#### **VOCABULARY**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 mountains
- 2 Islands
- 3 valley
- 4 coast
- 5 hill
- 6 forest
- 7 lake
- 8 waterfall

#### Page 31

#### Exercises 2 & 3

Students' own answers.

#### **GRAMMAR**

#### Exercise 1

a	2	c	1
b	4	d	3

#### Exercise 2

- 1 rains
- 2 'm staying
- 3 's snowing
- 4 live

#### **Exercise 3**

- 1 plays
- 2 travels
- 3 's staying
- 4 's practising
- 5 're learning
- 6 goes
- 7 doesn't like
- 8 's wearing

#### **Exercise 4**

Students' own answers.

#### Page 32

#### **WRITING PART 6: TRAINING**

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

	1	2	3
to do what	go out for pizza	go to the beach and go camping	go to a football match
meet where	in the Arum cafe	in the supermarket car park	at Rose's house
meet when	at 6 pm	at 10 am	at 4.30

#### Exercise 3

- 1 Hi + name Hey + name Dear + name name only
- 2 name only
  Love + name
  with a question
  Let me know.
  Hope you can make it!

#### **Exercise 4**

1	3	b	2	c
.4	9	1.0	_	C

#### Exercise 5

Phrases for saying 'yes'	Phrases for saying 'no'
I'd love to come Thanks, that sounds great.	Thanks for asking but I'd love to come, but I'm afraid

#### Exercise 6

- 1 interested
- 2 about
- 3 like
- 4 afraid
- 5 sounds
- 6 come

#### Exercise 7

Yes, it does.

#### **Exercise 8**

Students' own answers.

#### Page 33

#### **SPEAKING**

#### Exercises 1 & 2

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 3

Photo B - the man by the waterfall

#### Track 022

Irina: In this photo I can see a man who is standing next to a big, beautiful waterfall. He is quite young and he's got dark hair and a beard. He's wearing a black T-shirt and jeans and he's holding his phone on a selfie stick and he's taking a photo. He's smiling and he looks happy.

The man is in the middle of the photo and he is alone. Maybe he is visiting the waterfall with friends but we can't see them. Behind him, at the bottom of the photo we can see a fence. I think it is to stop people from falling into the river. Behind the fence is the river with the waterfall. It's very big. On the left, at the top of the photo we can see the trees of a big forest.

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 dark hair ... beard
- 2 a black T-shirt and jeans ... happy
- 3 taking a photo
- 4 waterfall ... friends
- 5 into ... water

#### Exercise 5

- 1 He (She/It) looks ...
- 2 Maybe he's visiting ...
- 3 I think the fence is to stop ...

#### Exercise 6

- 1 next
- 2 middle
- 3 bottom
- 4 Behind
- 5 top

#### Exercise 7

Students' own answers.

#### Page 34

# EXAM FOCUS LISTENING PART 2

- 1 8 / eight
- 2 6 / six
- 3 (the) office
- 4 75 / seventy-five
- 5 Albury

#### Track 023

**Narrator:** For each question, write the correct answer in the gap. Write one word or a number or a date or a time.

You will hear a woman giving information about a cycle ride.

Woman: Welcome to the visitor centre at Redhill Forest. I hope you're all ready for your thirty kilometre cycle ride! It's now seven thirty, and we'll be on our bikes and away at eight. We ask everyone to arrive well before the ride starts because someone's always late – but not me! I was here at six! As you're all early, you've got time to visit the shop! For £3 you can buy a hat, or if you prefer a T-shirt, they're £6 each. I hope you've all brought water, but if you haven't it's £1 per bottle.

We did send everyone maps, but if you've forgotten or lost yours, go to the office, which is just behind me, opposite the café. As you know, this forest does have some hills. The highest is three hundred metres!

Don't worry – we won't be cycling up that one today! The highest we'll go is seventyfive metres, which isn't too bad. The ride ends at Albury village. You spell that A-L-B-U-R-Y. Albury. Right any questions ...

### Page 35

## **WRITING PART 6**

#### Model answer

Hi Harley,

Good to hear from you. The best place to go walking is in the mountains. There arelots of hotels that you can stay in. The weather is hot at this time of year. (36 words)

## Page 36

## **REAL WORLD**

#### Exercise 1

- A spring
- **B** summer
- C autumn
- **D** winter

## **Exercise 2**

- 1 summer
- 2 spring
- 3 winter
- 4 summer
- 5 summer and autumn
- 6 winter

## Page 37

## Exercise 3

1	а	3	b	5	b
2	b	4	a		

## **Exercise 4**

		200
<b>1</b> a	<b>2</b> b	3 b

## Track 024

1

**Guest:** Good morning. Do you know the weather forecast for today? We want to go skiing.

**Receptionist:** Oh, I don't think you'll have much luck with that today. They're forecasting a big storm coming in from the north about mid-afternoon, with gale-force winds and a lot of snow.

**Guest:** Oh. So, is it OK to go skiing this morning?

Receptionist: No, I think they'll be closing the slopes all day because you never quite know when the storm will hit, and you don't want to get caught out there once the storm comes.

2

**Receptionist 2:** Good morning. Not such a good day today.

Guest 2: No. Do you think it will rain all day?

**Receptionist 2:** No. The forecast is for rain till lunch time, then it should clear and we should get some sun later on.

**Guest 2:** Oh, that's good. We want to go to the beach after lunch.

Receptionist 2: Yeah, well they reckon from about midday onwards it should dry up, and once the sun comes out, it'll soon warm up.

3

Receptionist 3: Hi. Good morning. Can I help you?

**Guest 3:** Yes. Do you know if there's rain forecast today?

**Receptionist 3:** Yes. The morning's going to be fine, quite bright and sunny, but then it's gonna cloud over this afternoon, and there may be a few showers, so you might want to take an umbrella with you.

Guest 3: OK. Thank you.

**Receptionist 3:** Yeah. The weather's a bit unpredictable at this time of year, so you never know what's going to happen.

#### Exercise 5

- 1 forecast
- 2 OK
- 3 all
- 4 want
- 5 there's

#### Exercise 6

1	е	<b>3</b> d	5	b
2	а	<b>4</b> c		

## Exercises 7 & 8

spring: kayaking and whale watching summer: beaches and swimming autumn: jogging and film festival winter: sledge rides and Chinese New Year

### **Exercise 9**

Students' own answers.

## Page 38

## **PROGRESS CHECK 1**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 wakes up ... quarter past seven
- 2 gets up ... half past seven
- 3 gets dressed ... quarter to seven
- 4 puts on ... eight o'clock
- 5 gets on ... quarter to nine
- 6 takes off ... four o'clock

## Exercise 2

- 1 grandmother
- 2 niece
- 3 uncle
- 4 nephew
- 5 cousin
- 6 grandfather

#### Exercise 3

- 1 has got
- 2 have got
- **3** is
- 4 are
- 5 hasn't got
- 6 Has ... got

#### Exercise 4

- 1 A mountain
  - **B** winter
- 2 A coast
  - **B** summer
- 3 A forest
  - **B** autumn
- 4 A spring
- B lake

## Exercise 5

- 1 island
- 2 west
- 3 valley, hills
- 4 waterfall
- 5 north
- 6 desert

## **Exercise 6**

- 1 France
- 2 Italian
- 3 Mexico
- 4 Spanish

## Page 39

#### Exercise 7

- 1 Nurses often have to work at night.
- 2 Musicians need to practise every day.
- 3 Teachers never go to school at the weekend.
- 4 Some school children always wear a uniform.
- 5 Is your shop usually busy at weekends?
- **6** Business people sometimes travel to other countries.

## Exercise 8

- 1 I drink
- 2 it's raining
- 3 I wake up
- 4 it never snows
- 5 Is he playing
- 6 We go

## Exercise 9

- 1 coming come
- 2 She have has (got) green eyes
- 3 The people there is are very friendly
- 4 I usually can write
- 5 The club is always open always.
- 6 I sell I'm selling a bike

1	C	3 A	<b>5</b> B	<b>7</b> B
2		4 C	6 A	8 C

## **UNIT 3**

Page 40

## **VOCABULARY**

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercises 2 & 3

54% watching TV

20% using social media

12% watching videos online

8% playing video games

6% playing sports and doing exercise

## Track 025

Woman: So, how do we spend our leisure time? Well on average, we spend fifty-four per cent of it watching TV. That's still everybody's favourite free-time activity. We spend twenty per cent of our time using social media and twelve per cent watching videos online. On average we spend eight per cent of our free time playing video games, but some people probably spend more. In total we only spend six per cent of our time outdoors playing sports or doing exercise.

## **Exercise 4**

- 1 chat online 5; messaging friends 5; upload photos – 3; download films – 3; watch an episode/series – 4; write or follow a blog – 3; stream music – 5.
- 2 Her final score is 28. She's a screen fan.

## Track 026

**Susie:** So, how often do you chat online, Roz?

**Roz:** Er, that's number five – several times a day. You know that! I chat online with you every evening!

**Susie:** Yeah, that's true! So what about messaging? Is that five, too?

**Roz:** Well, I message my friends all day: that's how we talk to each other if we aren't together. So I think the score should be five here.

**Susie:** OK and how often do you upload photos?

**Roz:** Mm, I like uploading photos to social media sites to share them with my friends, so that's probably number three. And It's also three for 'how often do you download films. I watch most films online.

**Susie:** And what about series? How often do you watch them online?

**Roz:** I usually watch an episode from my favourite series every day, so that's four.

**Susie:** And blogs and vlogs. Do you have any time to watch those?

Roz: I probably look at them ... once or twice a week. So that's three.

**Susie:** OK, and finally what about streaming music?

**Roz:** I stream music all the time. It's how I listen to music – so that's another score of five.

**Susie:** So, let's see that gives you a total score of ... 28. So, you spend a lot of time in front of screens. It's the way you like to spend free time and talk to people.

## Page 41

## Exercise 5

- 1 chat online
- 2 message ... friends
- 3 uploading photos
- 4 watch ... episode
- 5 stream

#### Exercises 6 & 7

Students' own answers.

## **PUSH YOURSELF B1**

#### Exercise 1

- Science-fiction film = 3; horror film = 2; comedy = 1
- 2 The writer enjoyed the comedy and the scientce fiction film but not the horror film.

#### Exercise 2

1	d	5	h	<b>9</b> a
2	b	6	С	<b>10</b> g
3	i	7	е	
4	i	8	f	

## Page 42

## **GRAMMAR**

## Exercise 1

- 1 was
- 2 were

## Exercise 2

- 1 wasn't
- 2 Were
- 3 were
- 4 Was
- 5 wasn't
- 6 weren't

## Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

## **LISTENING PART 5: TRAINING**

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

Abby was at a barbecue and Sophie was visiting her cousin.

## Track 027

**Abby:** Hi, Sophie. You didn't come to the barbecue on Saturday. Were you ill?

**Sophie:** No, I went to see my cousin. She's just had a baby. She's got an apartment near the football stadium.

## Exercise 3

1	D	3	Е
2	C	4	Α

## Track 028

**Abby:** Hi Sophie. You didn't come to the barbecue on Saturday. Were you ill?

**Sophie:** No, I went to see my cousin. She's just had a baby. She's got an apartment near the football stadium. Was the barbecue fun?

**Abby:** Yes, but a few people couldn't come.

**Sophie:** I suppose Alice was at work.

**Abby:** Actually, she had to go and buy a present for her older brother. He's getting married next week.

**Sophie:** Wow! Was Meg at the barbecue?

**Abby:** No, she phoned me to say she was feeling sick. She didn't get up at all on Saturday. I hope she's better soon – she starts her new job as a games designer in two weeks.

**Sophie:** Oh dear. Did you see Ben? **Abby:** No. He was at home. He had some important homework to do and he didn't even have time to play his favourite video game.

Sophie: Really?

**Abby:** And James was missing too. He went to see his favourite team play – he just loves football. But it was a shame I didn't see him. I want to ask him which is the best sports shop in town.

**Sophie:** Send him a text.

## Page 43

## GRAMMAR

## Exercise 1

- 2 -ed
- 4 didn't, did

## Exercise 2

- 1 saw
- 2 got up
- 3 came
- 4 went
- 5 said
- 6 had

## Exercise 3

- 1 She said 'good morning' when she saw us.
- 2 I didn't see her there.
- 3 They had a really good time.
- 4 Did she stay with you last week?
- 5 No she didn't.
- 6 He played video games until midnight.

- 1 visited
- 2 didn't stay
- 3 got
- 4 worked

- 5 helped
- 6 didn't stop
- 7 came
- 8 made
- 9 cleaned
- 10 didn't finish
- 10 dian'i linisi

Students' own answers.

## Track 029

- 1 I phoned my friend. We loved the film.
- 2 She cooked lunch. I helped my grandmother.
- 3 She invited my cousins. We downloaded a film.

#### Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

## Track 030

- 1 I uploaded lots of photos.
- 2 We cooked lunch.
- 3 They started early.
- 4 He streamed some music.
- 5 I liked the film.
- 6 We enjoyed the party.

#### Exercise 7

- 1 What did you do last weekend?
- 2 Where did you go on your last holiday?
- 3 How did you come to class today?
- 4 What was the last really good film you saw?

## Page 44

## **VOCABULARY**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 When was the last time you downloaded a great song?
- 2 When was the last time you phoned a friend?
- 3 When was the last time you watched a film that made you cry?
- 4 When was the last time you walked more than 5 km?

## Exercise 2

- 1 a new song by a Turkish singer.
- 2 She wanted to speak to him because it's his birthday and birthdays are special.
- 3 sad films
- 4 walk

## Exercise 3

- 2 five minutes ago
- 3 two years ago
- 3 last year

## **Exercise 4**

- 1 yesterday afternoon
- 2 an hour ago
- 3 last year

- 4 last month
- 5 the day before yesterday

## Exercises 5 & 6

Students' own answers.

## Page 45

## **READING PART 3: TRAINING**

#### Exercises 1 & 2

Students' own answers

#### Exercise 3

**a competition** – a situation in which someone is trying to win something or be more successful than someone else

**prize** – something valuable, such as an amount of money, that is given to someone who succeeds in a competition or game or that is given to someone as a reward for doing very good work

**professional** – used to describe someone who does something as their job **win** – to achieve first position and/or get first prize in a competition, election, fight, etc.

## **Exercise 4**

World of Warcraft, Hearthstone

### **Exercise 5**

2 (

**3** B

## Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

## Page 46

## WRITING

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## **Exercise 2**

The characters because they are like real people.

## Exercise 3

- a plot
- **b** dialogue
- c character
- d scene
- e setting

## **Exercise 4**

- 1 The Originals
- 2 Madrid
- 3 science students
- 4 science fiction comedy
- 5 Valeria she's clever and funny but does silly things
- 6 when valeria finds out that she can fly
- 7 It's funny and exciting.
- 8 The characters say interesting things that make the writer think and laugh at the same time.

#### Exercise 5

		Key words (possible answers)
paragraph 1	setting genre plot	Madrid in the future science-fiction comedy-drama students studying science experiment, something strange happens, special powers.
paragraph 2	characters favourite scene	Out a window, special powers, can fly
paragraph 3	why the writer likes it	unusual difficult funny exciting characters like real people

### Exercises 6 & 7

Students' own answers.

## Page 47

## **SPEAKING**

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## **Exercise 2**

Sara had a fun weekend.

#### Track 031

Sara: Hi, Iman! How are you?

**Iman:** Hi, Sara, I'm fine. How are you? Did you have a nice weekend? Did you go to the cinema to see that new film?

**Sara:** No, I didn't, but my weekend was still really good, thanks. I went shopping on Saturday and I got a really nice new top, then, well, do you remember Sam who was at school with us? Well, he's started his own restaurant, so I went there for dinner.

**Iman:** Of course I remember Sam! Do you often see him?

**Sara:** No, but I'm friends with some of his friends and he invited us all for food at his new place. We had a party till late. It was great! What about you? How was your weekend?

Iman: Well it wasn't great, to be honest. It was really quiet on Saturday. I stayed at home and finished some work. I didn't really want to work this weekend, but it was good to finish it! After that I cleaned the apartment and watched TV.

**Sara:** And what about Sunday? What did you get up to on Sunday?

Iman: Not much. I was really tired.
I went for a run in the park. I tried to call you, but you were out! What did you do on Sunday?

**Sara:** This and that. It was quite busy. A group of us went for a bike ride. The weather was great and we had a picnic. Then we watched films at mine.

Iman: Your weekend sounds great. Mine was so boring! I'm coming home next month, little sister, so I hope you take me out at the weekend with you then!

#### Exercise 3

- 1 Did you have a nice weekend?
- 2 How was your weekend?
- 3 What did you get up to on Sunday?
- 4 What did you do at the weekend?

#### **Exercise 4**

S = really good, quite busy, this and that I = not great, really quiet, not much

## **Exercise 5**

1	С	3	а	5	b
2	d	4	f	6	е

#### Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

## Page 48

## EXAM FOCUS READING PART 3

1	В	3 A	5 A
2	C	<b>4</b> B	

## Page 49

## **LISTENING PART 5**

1	E	3 H	<b>5</b> G
2	Α	4 C	

## Track 032

**Narrator:** For each question choose the correct answer.

You will hear Luis talking to his friend about a weekend trip to the city. What activity is each person going to do?

**Woman:** Hi, Luis. Are you ready for your weekend trip with your friends? What activity are you going to do on Saturday morning – visit a museum?

**Luis:** That's what I usually do, isn't it! Actually, I'm seeing a friend who I met on holiday.

**Woman:** Great! And Stella's going with you, isn't she?

**Luis:** Yes. She's going to do a bus tour, because it's her first time in the city. She said that's more important than concerts or shopping!

**Woman:** Is that what Marco's going to do – shopping?

**Luis:** That's his plan. He wants to go to the music shops in the area where the theatres are.

Woman: Who else is going?

**Luis:** Lili. She wanted to take a river trip, but it's too cold, so she's going to do a walking tour with a guide. She wants to see the museums, concert halls and other famous buildings from the outside.

Woman: And Richard?

**Luis:** He has a friend who's in a play, so he's going to see that.

**Woman:** What's Clara going to do? **Luis:** There's a new art museum near the river that she's decided to go to.

**Luis:** Well I hope you're all going to eat together in the evenings!

## Page 50

## **REAL WORLD**

#### Exercise 1

## Suggested answers

at the theatre, acting/performing, queueing for tickets

## Exercise 2

- 1 What to see
- 2 Where to get tickets
- 3 Where to sit
- 4 Where to eat before the show
- 5 What to buy

## Page 51

## **Exercise 3**

- 1 T
- 2 F It's more expensive to watch a show in the evening.
- 3 F Sometimes you want to be further away to get a bigger picture of what's happening.
- 4 F Restaurants around Times Square are usually expensive.
- 5 T

#### **Exercise 4**

1	а	<b>3</b> b	5	C
2	b	<b>4</b> b		

## Exercise 5

Speaker	Show	Day	Evening or matinee	Seats
1	Wicked	Thursday	evening	balcony
2	School of Rock	Tuesday	evening	orchestra
3	Charlie and the Chocolate Factory	Saturday	matinee	mezzanine

## Track 033

1

**Tourist:** I'd like to book four tickets for Wicked on Thursday.

Clerk: OK. Matinee or evening?

Tourist: Matinee if possible, please.

Clerk: Let's have a look. Hmm. No, the matinee's sold-out, I'm afraid. I have tickets for the evening.

Tourist: OK, the evening is fine.

**Clerk:** I have tickets in the balcony and the mezzanine.

**Tourist:** OK. Probably the balcony, I think. How much are the tickets?

**Clerk:** For the balcony, they're sixty-nine dollars.

Tourist: Yes, that's fine.

Clerk: OK. How would you like to pay?

Tourist: By card, please.

**Clerk:** OK. The machine's ready for you. If you could put your number in, please.

Tourist: Thanks.

**Clerk:** And here's your receipt and your tickets. Enjoy the show.

2

**Tourist 2:** Do you sell tickets for *School* of *Rock* here?

**Clerk:** Yes, we do. When are you looking to go?

**Tourist 2:** On Tuesday evening, if possible.

Clerk: And how many tickets do you need?

Tourist 2: Four, please.

**Clerk:** OK. I don't have four in a block. Is that a problem?

Tourist 2: What have you got?

**Clerk:** I have two twos in the orchestra, for \$89 each. There's the plan, do you see?

**Tourist 2:** Yes, I think that would be OK. I've got a student card. Is there a discount for students?

**Clerk:** No, sorry. We don't offer any concessions.

**Tourist 2:** OK. No problem. I'll take the four tickets.

**Clerk:** Thank you. That'll be three hundred and fifty-six dollars in total.

3

**Tourist 3:** Can I book tickets for *Charlie* and the Chocolate Factory here?

Clerk: You certainly can. When would you like to go?

**Tourist 3:** Next Saturday, the matinee performance.

Clerk: Let's have a look. It's pretty full. OK, I have some in the mezzanine. Do you mind the back row?

**Tourist 3:** No, that's fine. I need two tickets.

**Clerk:** OK. I have two tickets in the back row at one hundred and twenty dollars each.

**Tourist 3:** That's great. Can I use these vouchers to pay for the tickets?

Clerk: Let me see the date on them. Yes, you can use these. They give you twenty per cent off, so your tickets will come to one hundred and ninety-two dollars in total.

Tourist 3: Thanks.

## Exercise 6

1 I'd like

cing

ee?

OK.

unt

the

- 2 Do you sell
- 3 Is there
- 4 Can I
- 5 these vouchers

## Exercise 7

1	С	3	d	5	b
2	а	4	е		

#### Exercises 8 & 9

1	С	3	а	5	f
2	е	4	b	6	d

## Exercise 10

Students' own answers.

## UNIT 4

Page 52

## READING

## **Exercise 1**

Students' own answers.

#### **Exercise 2**

1	A	3	В	5	E
2	D	4	C	6	F

## Exercise 3

1	a	3	b	5	С
2	С	4	b	6	b

## Track 034

**Man:** The fastest runners can run up to forty-four kilometres per hour.

**Woman:** Professional basketball players and dancers can jump nearly one point three metres.

Man: The fastest cyclists can cycle up to fifty-four kilometres in one hour.

**Woman:** Some divers can stay under water for over 20 minutes.

Man: Some skiers can ski up to two hundred and fifty kilometres per hour.

**Woman:** It's possible for a person to lift two thousand, eight hundred and forty kilos.

#### **Exercise 4**

Students' own answers.

## Page 53

## Exercise 5

- 1 T
- 2 F Only women dancers dance on their toes
- 3 T
- 4 F They can. Small athletes run a lot.
- **5** T
- 6 F He couldn't play for three months.

#### Exercise 6

- 1 their feet
- 2 their knees, necks and shoulders

## **VOCABULARY**

## Exercise 1

- 1 neck
- 2 back
- 3 stomach
- 4 toe
- 5 brain
- 6 finger
- 7 heart
- 8 knee

## **Exercise 2**

- 1 toes
- 2 back
- 3 neck
- 4 stomach
- 5 heart
- 6 fingers
- 7 brain
- 8 knee

## Page 54

## **GRAMMAR**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 can
- 2 could

## Exercise 2

1	b	3	е	5	а
2	f	4	d	6	С

## Exercise 3

- 1 couldn't
- 2 could
- 3 can't
- a LI
- 4 could
- 5 can't
- 6 couldn't
- 7 can

#### Exercise 4

Can and could are unstressed:

- in the second question in each dialogue (Can you? / Could you?)
- in the positive statements in the last line of each dialogue (I can walk on my hands, too / I could write quite well, too)

## Track 035

1

- A: Can you stand on your head?
- B: No, I can't. Can you?
- A: Yes, I can and I can walk on my hands, too!
- 2
- A: Could you read when you were six years old?
- B: Yes, I could, a little. Could you?
- A: Yes, I could and I could write quite well, too.

#### Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

## Page 55

## **VOCABULARY**

## Exercise 1

- 1 C (Jack) has a headache
- 2 G (Alissa) has a broken arm
- 3 H (Mina) has backache.
- 4 D (Luca) hurt his knee
- 5 F (Harry) has a cold
- 6 A (Jenna) has a stomach ache and feels sick
- 7 B (Daniel) has a toothache.
- 8 E Sally hasn't got a health problem

## Track 036

1

**Woman:** Are you OK, Jack? What's the matter?

Jack: I've got a headache. I think it's because of the sun. I was outside without a hat

2

Man: Oh Alissa! How did you break your arm?

**Alissa:** I broke it when I was playing tennis with my friends.

Man: What happened?

down and have a rest.

Alissa: A friend called an ambulance and I went to hospital.

3

**Woman:** What's the matter, Mina? **Mina:** I've got backache. I just need to sit

4

Boy: Hi, Luca. How's your knee?

**Luca:** It's OK. I hurt it when I was playing football last weekend! Luckily, I didn't break it.

5

Woman: Have you got a cold, Harry?

Harry: Yes, I have.

**Woman:** Can I get you some medicine? **Harry:** Oh no, it's OK. I went to the pharmacy and I got some already.

6

Man: Where's Jenna?

**Woman:** She's in bed. She ate some bad fish last night and now she's got a stomach ache and she feels sick.

Man: I'm sorry to hear that. I hope she gets better soon.

7

**Woman:** Have you got a headache, Daniel?

**Daniel:** No, I haven't. I've got toothache. It really hurts!

**Woman:** You should go to the dentist.

Man: How are you, Sally? Are you well? Sally: I'm very well, thank you. I feel great!

#### **Exercise 2**

- 1 head
- 2 arm
- 3 backache
- 4 hurt
- 5 cold
- 6 stomach ache/feels
- 7 ache
- 8 fine

## **Exercise 3**

1 e 3 g 5 a 7 b 2 d 4 f 6 c

## **Exercise 4**

- 1 matter
- 2 well
- 3 hurt
- 4 sorry
- 5 better
- 6 your

## Exercise 5

- 1 1, 2, 3, 6
- 2 4.5

#### **Exercise 6**

Students' own answers.

## Page 56

## GRAMMAR

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- 1 5
- **2** 25g
- 3 1.6
- 4 10

5 9

6 30

#### Exercise 3

- 1 should
- 2 shouldn't
- 3 Should
- 4 shouldn't

## Exercise 4

- 1 should eat
- 2 Should ... exercise, should
- 3 should drink
- 4 shouldn't drive, should walk

## Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

## **SPEAKING**

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## Track 037

1

Woman: First of all, it's great that you are trying to start exercising, but perhaps you should start exercising more slowly! To begin with, what about walking for half an hour every day? Walking is great exercise. Also running isn't the only way to keep fit. Why don't you try some different types of exercise like dancing and swimming as well? It's important to do exercise that you enjoy.

2

**Woman:** Well, it's OK to eat fast food sometimes, but you shouldn't eat it all the time. It's bad for you because it has too much fat, salt and sugar in it. Why don't you try some other types of food? Healthy food tastes good too! And if you really want a burger, how about having a salad with it, or some fruit as a dessert?

## Exercise 2

- 1 you should
- 2 how about
- 3 Why don't you
- 4 you shouldn't
- 5 Why don't you
- 6 how about

## **Exercise 3**

Students' own answers.

### Page 57

## **LISTENING PART 4: TRAINING**

#### **Exercise 1**

Track 038

Narrator: One. Annie is talking to her friend at work. What's the matter with Annie?

Man: Are you OK, Annie? You look unwell.

Annie: I ate something yesterday that made me sick. I didn't sleep at all last night.

Man: Shall I help you with your work? I know you've got loads to do.

**Annie:** No, it's OK. I've finished everything for today. My stomach feels better today but I'm going home now – I just can't keep my eyes open.

#### Exercise 2

2 C

3 C

## Track 039

**Narrator:** Two, You will hear Victor phoning his friend Karen. Why is Victor phoning?

Victor: Hi, Karen. It's Victor.

**Karen:** Hi, Victor. Do you still want to go for a walk after lunch?

**Victor:** I'd really like to, but I've got a problem with my leg. Whenever I try to walk, I'm in so much pain. I've made a doctor's appointment for 3 o'clock.

**Karen:** Oh dear. Then I'll fetch you from your house and drive you there.

Victor: Thanks.

**Narrator:** Three. You will hear Jake talking to his friend Naomi. What's the matter with Jake?

**Naomi:** What's the matter, Jake? Have you got a headache?

**Jake:** Hi, Naomi. No, I was at the dentist yesterday. She took one of my teeth out.

**Naomi:** Ouch! Was it giving you a lot of pain?

Jake: It was, but not anymore. The thing is, I've hurt my neck. Probably my head was in the wrong position when I was lying in the dentist's chair.

Naomi: Poor you!

## PUSH YOURSELF B1

## Exercise 1

No, sports people often injure the parts of the body they use in their sports.

## Exercise 2

- 1 ankles
- 2 lungs
- 3 shoulders
- 4 muscles
- 5 wrists
- 6 Bones
- 7 elbows
- 8 hips

## Page 58

## **VOCABULARY**

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

- 1 A on holiday in the mountains
  - B in the garden

- 2 A last year
  - B one afternoon
- 3 A A man skied in front of her and she bumped into him.
  - **B** He was helping his nephew who was stuck in a tree and he got stuck too.
- 4 A her leg
  - B his arm

- 1 last year, one day, one sunny afternoon
- 2 then, after that, so, when
- 3 suddenly

## **Exercise 4**

- 1 fell over
- 2 hit
- 3 got stuck
- 4 bumped into

## Page 59

## **WRITING PART 7**

#### Exercise 1

1	С	3	a	5	f
2	е	4	d	6	b

#### Exercise 2

Students' own answers.

## **SPEAKING**

### Exercise 1

When/where?	winter holidays, in the mountains
Who with?	cousin Gemma
What did they do?	They went ice- skating.
How did he feel?	worried, frightened
What happened?	A duck landed in front of him and he couldn't stop – he fell and hurt a finger.
What happened after that?	They didn't go skating again – his finger ached for the rest of the holiday.

#### Track 040

Alex: Last winter holidays, I went to visit my cousin Gemma in the mountains. It was very cold and the lake near her house was covered in thick ice so we decided to go ice-skating. I felt a bit worried because I'm not very good at ice-skating, but Gemma said it would be OK. When we got to the lake, I put on my ice-skates and went on to the ice for the first time. I was frightened, but I started skating slowly across the lake. Soon, I began to skate faster and it was actually quite fun! Then suddenly a duck flew down and landed on the ice in front of me. I tried to stop but I couldn't!

I lost control and I fell hard onto the ice! I didn't hit the duck, because it flew away, but I did hit my hand and I hurt one of my fingers. I didn't break anything, but my finger ached for the rest of the holiday and we didn't go skating again.

#### Exercises 2 & 3

Students' own answers.

## Page 60

## EXAM FOCUS LISTENING PART 4

1	A	3	C	<b>5</b> C
2		4	В	

## Track 041

**Narrator:** For each question, choose the correct answer.

One. You will hear two friends talking about doing exercise. What does the man say about it?

**Woman:** I swam three kilometres yesterday!

Man: Wow, that's incredible! I can't swim that far. But don't you ever find swimming boring?

**Woman:** No, I love it. I like having time alone to think.

Man: I work harder when I do exercise with friends. That's why I like football or tennis

**Narrator:** Two. You will hear a woman leaving a message for a doctor's receptionist. Why did the woman call?

Woman: Hello, this is Lily Williams. I called yesterday, and made an appointment to see the doctor next Monday. Now my boss says I have to work that day, so I was wondering if I could come on Tuesday instead. The time you gave me was 4 pm. Can I come at that time on Tuesday? Call me back, please.

Narrator: Three. You will hear a woman called Lara talking to a friend about going shopping. What does Lara want her friend to do?

**Man:** I'm looking forward to going to the new shopping centre, Lara. Is there plenty of parking there?

**Woman:** Yes, but my car's broken down. Can we go in yours? I'll pay you for the petrol.

Man: No problem and don't worry about the money! I'll pick you up at ten.

**Woman:** Thanks! I'm going to get a dress for Helena's wedding. I've seen the perfect one!

**Narrator:** Four. You will hear a man talking about his new job. How does the man feel about his new job?

**Man:** Pretty good. At first I wasn't sure, because the boss shouts, and he's always talking about how much money the

company is or isn't earning. But I guess that's his job – he's the boss! And there's no real end time. When we finish the day's work, we just go, so my days are shorter now, which is great.

**Narrator:** Five. You will hear two friends talking about an exhibition of photographs. Where will the exhibition be?

**Woman:** Lucy's chosen a great place for her photography exhibition!

Man: I know! A few of the photos will be behind the reception desk, so people will see them when they arrive, or as they're paying. There'll be others in the restaurant, too.

**Woman:** What about in the guest's rooms?

Man: No, but there'll be some on the walls between the lifts and the rooms.

## Page 61

## **WRITING PART 7**

#### Model answer

A man had toothache, so his wife phoned the dentist to make an appointment. He didn't want to see the dentist, so she pushed him into the room. She waited for him. When the man came out, he was smiling and didn't have toothache anymore. (45 words)

## Page 62

## **REAL WORLD**

### Exercise 1

## Suggested answer

to get help with health problems/if they are sick.

**3** B

#### Exercise 2

Page 63		
Exercise 3	3	
<b>1</b> c	4 h	<b>7</b> e
<b>2</b> f	<b>5</b> g	<b>8</b> b
3 a	6 d	

2 A

## **Exercise 4**

- 1 from a supermarket, small shop or petrol station
- 2 from a supermarket, small shop or petrol station
- 3 from a pharmacy
- 4 find your nearest GP and phone to book an appointment
- 5 find out which doctor is on call and go to the medical centre
- **6** go to the A and E department of a hospital, or call 112 or 999 and ask for an ambulance

with the		
1 b	<b>2</b> d	<b>3</b> a

Track 042

Assistant: Hello. Can I help you? Tourist: Yes. I have a prescription from

the doctor

Assistant: OK. Let me see ... Yes, we can do this for you. Are you taking any other medicines?

Tourist: No, I'm not taking any medicines at the moment.

Assistant: Any other medical conditions?

Tourist: No.

Assistant: And have you taken this medicine before?

Tourist: Yes. In my own country.

Assistant: And you didn't have any side effects?

Tourist: No.

Assistant: That's good. Well, take a seat. It'll be about five minutes.

Tourist: Thank you.

Assistant: Here's your prescription. Take one tablet three times a day, with food. And you must finish the whole course.

Tourist: OK. Thank you.

Nurse: Maria Baldini, please. Could you come this way?

Nurse: OK. Just take a seat for me. Can I check your name first?

Maria: Yes, it's Maria Baldini.

Nurse: And what's your date of birth, Maria?

Maria: The tenth of December, 1999. Nurse: So, can you tell me what's

happened?

Maria: Yes. I was getting off a bus and I fell, and I've hurt my arm.

Nurse: And when was this? Maria: About an hour ago. Nurse: OK. Can I take a look?

Maria: Yes, of course.

Nurse: OK. Does this hurt here?

Maria: Ah, yes.

Nurse: Sorry. And what about this? Maria: Yes, but that's not so bad. Nurse: Can you move your fingers?

Maria: No, not really.

Nurse: OK, well I think we need to get it X-rayed. Any other medical problems?

Maria: No.

Nurse: Do you take any medicines regularly?

Maria: Yes, I take tablets for headaches. Nurse: OK. Do you know the name?

Maria: I have it here.

Nurse: OK. Thanks. And where are you from, Maria?

Maria: I'm from Italy.

Nurse: Do you have your EHIC card with

Maria: Yes, it's in my bag. Here it is. Nurse: Thanks. Are you in pain at the

Maria: No, I'm OK, thanks.

Nurse: That's great. If you could wait back in the waiting area, you'll see a doctor within an hour, and they'll do an X-ray to see if anything's broken. Then they'll decide what to do next. There will be a charge for the emergency consultation, but you can probably claim that back when you get home.

Maria: OK. thanks.

Receptionist: Hi. How are you doing? Tourist: OK, thanks, but I have a really bad sore throat and I need to get something for it.

Receptionist: OK. Do you think you need to see a doctor?

Tourist: No, I think it's OK. I just need some painkillers.

Receptionist: OK. Well, it's best to try the pharmacy on Argyle Street. It's only a five-minute walk from here, if you go out of the hotel and turn right, then first left, that's Argyle Street.

Tourist: OK. Thank you.

#### Exercise 6

1 prescription

2 medicines

3 tablets

4 sore

5 painkillers

## Exercise 7

1 c 3 a 4 b

## Exercises 8 & 9

the city: the capital of the Republic of Ireland, and also the biggest city; on the east coast of Ireland; has many old buildings and also modern buildings pharmacies: have a green cross outside; you can buy medicines such as painkillers and also collect medicines when you have a prescription

medical centres: usually need to make an appointment to see a doctor, but at some medical centres you can go without an appointment. You will see a GP, a general

doctors on call: medical centres all open during the day; at night only one or two doctors are on call. Ask at your hotel to find out which doctors are on call.

hospital emergency departments: hospitals open 24 hours a day; you can go to the emergency department at any time, or dial 999 to call an ambulance if you are seriously ill or there is an emergency. Specialist doctors and nurses will look after you.

Exercises 10 & 11

Students' own answers.

## UNIT 5

Page 64

## VOCABULARY

Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

1 B 3 C 2 A 4 D

#### Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

## Page 65

## LISTENING

#### Exercise 1

1 Loli - the beach

2 Chloe and Lisa – the mountains

3 Jamie - the city

## Track 043

Loli: I love the beach but I'm a student and don't have much money at the moment, so I always try to find cheap destinations. If the weather is sunny and I can go swimming in the sea, I'm happy! My friends and I look for cheap flights and places to stay online. Some of them dream about staying in expensive hotels, but for me, staying with local people in their houses is the best kind of holiday accommodation.

Chloe: Well, for Lisa and me, a true holiday is when we are outside in nature. We like going to places where there aren't many tourists - or even any other people at all. We often go walking and camping in the mountains. We don't take much luggage - just a tent to sleep in and a backpack with food and water.

Lisa: Yes, that's right. Chloe loves camping like this and I do too, but I'm also happy when we can stay in a campsite where there are toilets and showers. I like meeting the local people and trying to talk to them. We enjoy going to places where we can't speak the language, but we do try to learn some important words before we go!

Jamie: An interesting city with lots of museums and restaurants is always a good destination for me! I work long hours in a bank and I like to pack a small suitcase on Friday night and fly to a city for the weekend. I always stay in the best hotels because I want to be really comfortable. When I visit a city for the first time, I take a proper city tour with a tour guide, so I can learn all about its history. In the evenings, I enjoy going to music concerts and I think that asking at the tourist information centre is a good way to find out about what's on. They can tell you about the best plays and concerts and book tickets for you.

- 1 F She likes swimming.
- 2 1
- 3 F She's happy when they can stay in a campsite where there are toilets and showers.
- 4 F They often go to places where they can't speak the language, but they try to learn some important words before they go.
- 5 T
- **6** F He goes to the tourist information centre to find out about concerts.

#### **Exercise 3**

- 1 accommodation
- 2 miss, delay
- 3 luggage, tent, backpack
- 4 destination
- 5 suitcase
- 6 tour guide
- 7 tourist information centre

#### **Exercise 4**

1	d	3 f	<b>5</b> c
2	е	<b>4</b> a	6 b

## Page 66

## READING

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### **Exercise 2**

- 1 He wanted something exciting to do. No.
- 2 He started to feel sick/was feeling bad.

## **Exercise 3**

- Camels are very friendly and they love their owners.
- 2 The camel didn't look friendly and made strange, loud noises.
- 3 She was saying hello to Jon.
- 4 so that people can get onto them
- 5 because riding a camel was like being in a boat
- 6 She was a nice animal.

## **GRAMMAR**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 an action in progress at a time in the past
- 2 at the same time

#### **Exercise 2**

- 1 were ... doing
- 2 wasn't raining, was snowing
- 3 were lying, watching
- 4 was packing, was doing
- 5 wasn't living, was studying
- 6 Was ... looking for, wasn't

## Page 67

## Exercise 3

1 Where were you going yesterday afternoon?

- 2 The children weren't playing on the beach this morning.
- 3 Was she trying to take a photo?
- 4 Your friend wasn't staying at this hotel.
- 5 'Was he looking at her?' 'No, he wasn't.'
- 6 Which city were they visiting?

#### **Exercise 4**

- A: Where were you last night? Were you at the party?
- B: Yes, we were.
- A: Was it good?
- B: Yes, it was great! Weren't you invited?
- A: Yes, we were. But we couldn't go because my mum was cooking us dinner.

#### Exercise 5

- 1 A unstressed, B stressed
- 2 A unstressed, B stressed
- 3 unstressed

## Track 045

1

A: Was it hot that day?

B: No, it wasn't.

2

A: Was the exam really three hours long?

B: Yes, it was.

3

The actors in the play were really funny.

## Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

## LISTENING

## Exercise 1

- 1 Mongolia and China
- 2 Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

Cold

## Track 046

Man: Benedict Allen began to cross the Gobi Desert in Mongolia and China in August 1997. It was a journey of 1,600 kilometres and he was alone and on foot. He took three camels with him to carry his things and he decided not to use any modern technology to help him. He preferred to use a map.

He only had three months to make the journey because the Gobi Desert can be very cold and he needed to cross it before the beginning of winter. Many people thought that it was an impossible journey and one of Benedict Allen's camels did too. As they were doing the most difficult part of the journey, the camel decided that it didn't want to continue and it ran away. So Benedict Allen had to continue his journey with only two camels.

He never got lost but sometimes he didn't meet or speak to other people for weeks.

During his journey, one of Benedict Allen's biggest problems was the cold. Sometimes his food turned to ice before he finished eating it. On the 12th of October 1998, he reached the end of his journey and became one of the few people to cross the Gobi on foot.

## **Exercise 3**

1	b	<b>3</b> c	<b>5</b> c
2	b	4 b	6 b

#### Exercise 4

Students' own answers.

## Page 68

## GRAMMAR

## Exercise 1

- 1 in the middle of
- 2 after each other

#### Exercise 2

- 1 the dog ran out of the house
- 2 I realised I didn't have my passport

#### Exercise 3

- 1 were visiting, lost
- 2 stopped, got off
- 3 was having, reading
- 4 met, was walking

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 were ... going
- 2 were sailing, started
- 3 were driving, ran
- 4 was shining, came out

## **PUSH YOURSELF B1**

## Exercise 1

- 1 at the same time
- 2 after

## **Exercise 2**

1	d	3	е	5	b
2	f	4	С	6	a

## Page 69

## **VOCABULARY**

#### Exercise 1

She works for a hotel company. She doesn't enjoy cruises.

## Exercise 2

1	е	3	d	5	a
2	b	4	f	6	C

- 1 journey
- 2 trip
- 3 travel
- 4 cruise
- 5 flight
- **6** crossing

## **READING PART 4: TRAINING**

Exercise 2

1 B 3 A 5 C 2 C 4 B

Page 70

## **SPEAKING PART 2: TRAINING**

Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

Pablo – picture C Julia – picture D Arturo – picture A Teresa – picture E Picture B isn't mentioned.

## Track 047

Pablo: My last holiday was in my country, in Mexico. I went to the beach with my family and some of our friends for a week and we had a great time. The weather was fantastic – really warm and sunny so there were lots of other people there. Sometimes the beach was very crowded but we didn't mind and we went swimming every day. I think that the best holidays are when you are with your friends.

Julia: Well I didn't have a good time on my last holiday. I went walking in the mountains with my boyfriend and it was really tiring. The weather was OK for the first two days and then it rained all the time. It was terrible! I hate being out in the rain.

Arturo: I came back from holiday last week. I went to New York with some friends. I didn't really enjoy it. For me, a holiday is a time to relax but New York is too noisy and crowded for that. My friends just wanted to go shopping and buy clothes but I'm not really interested in walking around shops so I was bored.

**Teresa:** In summer, I went camping for a week in the country. We were on a campsite by a lake. It was lovely – we lay on the grass under the trees all day or went swimming. The place was so quiet – it was really nice.

#### Exercise 3

Pablo and Teresa had a good time. Julia and Arturo didn't enjoy their holiday.

### **Exercise 4**

- 1 I didn't have a good time
- 2 It was lovely.
- 3 For me, a holiday is a time to relax
- 4 The weather was fantastic.
- 5 I think that the best holidays are

## Exercises 5 & 6

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 7

The candidates:
ask each other questions.
give reasons using because.
use phrases like I think, and In my opinion.
They don't give longer answers.

## Track 048

**Examiner:** Now, in this part of the test you are going to talk together.

Here are some pictures that show different things to do on holiday. Do you like these different things to do on holiday? Say why or why not. I'll say that again. Do you like these different things to do on holiday? Say why or why not. All right? Now, talk together.

**Elena:** Let's talk about the first holiday, Ricardo – the people spending their holiday by the hotel swimming pool. Do you like doing this on holiday?

**Ricardo:** I like swimming – in the pool or in the sea – but I don't enjoy doing this every day on holiday. It's a bit boring for me.

**Elena:** I think swimming and sunbathing are very relaxing.

**Ricardo:** And what about the next picture? The people walking in the mountains.

**Elena:** Oh I think it's fantastic to enjoy nature on holiday. It could be tiring to climb a mountain.

**Ricardo:** Yes but you can see interesting things.

**Elena:** In my opinion, you can see more interesting things when you visit old cities on holiday, like in this picture. Do you agree?

**Ricardo:** Yes but I don't enjoy visiting cities when they're crowded. It's terrible.

Elena: That's true.

**Ricardo:** Do you enjoy visiting amusement parks on holiday?

Elena: Yes, why not?

**Ricardo:** I think amusement parks are noisy. I don't want to spend a whole day there.

**Examiner:** Do you think walking in the mountains is good for you, Ricardo?

**Ricardo:** Yes, the air is clean and you can stay fit.

**Examiner:** Do you think going to an amusement park is exciting, Elena?

**Elena:** Yes, because the rides are scary. **Examiner:** So, Elena, which of these things to do on holiday do you like best?

Elena: I like going sightseeing.

**Examiner:** And you, Ricardo, which of these things to do on holiday do you like best?

**Ricardo:** Probably, walking in the mountains.

**Examiner:** Thank you. Now, do you prefer to go on holiday with your friends or your family, Ricardo?

**Ricardo:** With my friends, because it's more fun.

**Examiner:** What about you, Elena? **Elena:** I like going on holiday with my family. My mum always goes shopping with me and buys me lots of things!

**Examiner:** What will you do on your next holiday, Elena?

**Elena:** I don't know. I'll probably visit my grandparents' house. I'll go swimming and windsurfing because they live by the beach.

Examiner: And you, Ricardo?

Ricardo: Sorry?

**Examiner:** What will you do on your next holiday?

**Ricardo:** I'll probably go sailing on a lake and ride my bike in the countryside.

**Examiner:** Thank you. That is the end of the test.

## Page 71

## WRITING

## Exercise 1

- 1 on holiday in the mountains; camping
- 2 with her friends Thomas and Jo
- 3 No, she hates it.

## Track 049

Lily: Hi, Carla, it's Lily here.

Carla: Lily! Where are you? You sound far away.

**Lily:** I am! We're in the mountains with my friends Thomas and Jo and I can't phone or text any of my friends most of the time – there's no signal. It's terrible. I have to sleep in a tent and it's really cold and uncomfortable.

**Carla:** Oh dear ... So you don't enjoy camping then?

**Lily:** No, I hate it! I hate not having an indoor bathroom and I don't like walking or climbing up mountains like Thomas and Jo do. I prefer shopping and going to see interesting places when I'm on holiday.

**Carla:** What's the weather like, there? Can't you go swimming? Or at least do some sunbathing?

**Lily:** Well it's sunny but it's not warm enough for sunbathing. And the water in the lake is REALLY cold.

## Exercise 2

It's now cold and raining. She isn't camping any more, she's staying in a hotel. She's enjoying her holiday.

1	С	<b>3</b> d	<b>5</b> e
2	а	4 b	6 f

- 1 In the evening
- 2 yesterday
- right now
- 4 This morning
- 5 After that
- 6 Today

#### Exercises 5 & 6

Students' own answers

## Page 72

## **EXAM FOCUS READING PART 4**

**5** B 1 C 3 C 6 B 2 A 4 A

## Page 73

## **SPEAKING PART 2**

Students' own answers.

## Page 74

## **REAL WORLD**

#### Exercise 1

- A a hop on / hop off bus tour
- B a walking tour
- C a bike tour
- D a Trabi safari

## Page 75

## Exercise 2

- F You can get on and off when you
- 2 F You can buy tickets for more than one day.
- 3 T
- 4 T

the

g nd 5 F You can drive the car yourself.

#### Exercise 3

1	е	3	f	<b>5</b> a
2	b	4	С	<b>6</b> d

Ex	cercise 4					
1	d	2	С	3	а	

## Track 050

Receptionist: Hi. Can I help you? Tourist: Yes, I'd like some information about the City Circle sightseeing tour.

Receptionist: OK. What would you like to know?

Tourist: How long does the tour take? Receptionist: The whole tour takes about two hours from start to finish, but of course you can hop on and hop off as often as you like, and the ticket is valid all day, from ten till six.

Tourist: Great. And where does it go? Receptionist: It takes in all the main sights - the Brandenburg Gate, Checkpoint Charlie, Potsdamer Platz, everywhere you want to see.

Tourist: That sounds good. How much are the tickets?

Receptionist: Tickets are 22 euros per person, but you can save 25% with the Welcome Card. Do you have one of those?

Tourist: Yes, I do.

Receptionist: OK. So with a Welcome Card it's 16 euros 50.

Tourist: Great. I'd like to buy two tickets for that, please.

Tourist: Hello. Do you sell Berlin Welcome Cards here?

Assistant: Yes, we do.

Tourist: Can you give me some information about the card? What do you get with it?

Assistant: There's free admission to the most popular tourist places, like the Berlin TV Tower, and also free admission to all museums, including the Berlin Wall Museum. You get one free tour, which can be bus, bike or on foot, and up to 30% discounts in some restaurants and theatres, plus a free information leaflet about travel in the city, and tourist map. There's also free public transport anywhere in the city. It's very popular, and most people find it really good value for money.

Tourist: OK. How much does it cost? Assistant: Would you like 48 hours, 72 hours or 4 days?

Tourist: 48 hours.

Assistant: So, for 48 hours it's 19 Euros 90.

Tourist: OK. I'll buy one.

Tourist: Hello. Can we hire some bikes

Receptionist: Of course. Is it for a bike tour, or just for you?

Tourist: No. Not a bike tour. We just want to cycle round the city on our own.

Receptionist: That's fine. So, it's 10 euros per day per bike and you have to pay this before you take the bike. A helmet is included in the price if you want one. There's also a returnable deposit of 200 euros per bike, which must be paid straight away and we need some formal ID.

Tourist: OK. That's no problem. Receptionist: And if you decide to extend the hire, it's one euro for each additional day.

Tourist: OK. that sounds good.

Receptionist: Great. So, do you want to hire one?

Tourist: Yes, please.

## Exercise 5

- 1 some information
- 2 How long
- 3 How much
- 4 Do you sell
- 5 Can we hire

## Exercise 6

1	С	3	а	5 b
2	е	4	f	<b>6</b> d

#### Exercises 7 & 8

the Berlin Wall: built in 1961 to separate East Berlin from West Berlin; had guards to stop people crossing the city; came down in 1989; some sections still standing, tourists visit it.

the Brandenburg gate: built in 1700s, a major tourist attraction; important because it shows the city is now free and not divided.

Checkpoint Charlie: one of the official places where people could cross from East to West Berlin if they had the correct documents; now popular with tourists. ahost stations: old East German train stations under Berlin that closed because of divided Berlin; people couldn't get off at them; now tourists can visit them.

Potsdamer Platz: public square that was divided by the Berlin Wall; now modern buildings and great place for shopping and eating.

## Exercise 9

Students' own answers.

## Page 76

## PROGRESS CHECK 2

## Exercise 1

1	В	<b>3</b> C	<b>5</b> E
2	F	4 A	6

## Exercise 2

- 1 brain
- 2 fingers
- 3 neck
- 4 toes
- 5 knees
- 6 stomach
- 7 heart
- 8 back

#### Exercise 3

- 1 couldn't sleep
- 2 can speak
- 3 couldn't play
- 4 can't swim
- 5 could ride

- 1
- 1 matter
- 2 ill
- 3 should
- pharmacy
- 2
  - 1 get up
  - 2 much
  - 3 streamed
- 4 shouldn't

- 3
- 1 How about
- 2 horror
- 3 comedy
- 4 Shall
- 4
- 1 trip
- 2 crowded
- 3 should
- 4 relaxina
- 5
- 1 ache
- 2 Why don't you
- 3 problem
- 4 rest

## Page 77

## **Exercise 5**

- 1 news
- 2 quiz shows
- 3 science fiction
- 4 crime drama
- 5 comedy
- 6 documentaries

#### **Exercise 6**

- 1 backpack
- 2 campsite
- 3 crossings
- 4 suitcase
- 5 journey
- 6 delay
- 7 cruise
- 8 tourist information centre

## Exercise 7

- 1 Last night I went to a disco on the beach.
- 2 We **enjoyed** it when the country's team won.
- 3 Did you go anywhere for your summer vacation?
- 4 We played volleyball at the lake last summer.
- 5 The weather was warm and cloudy.
- 6 The T-shirt only cost me £5.

## **Exercise 8**

- 1 called, didn't answer
- 2 was playing, hurt
- 3 went, was
- 4 didn't hear, was listening
- 5 were you doing, phoned
- 6 was, read

## **Exercise 9**

- 1 was
- 2 found
- 3 Did
- 4 called / contacted
- 5 have
- 6 went
- 7 could

## **UNIT 6**

## Page 78

## Exercise 1

- A Someone is taking a photo with their phone.
- **B** Someone is watching a cooking programme.
- C Two men are cooking. Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

taking photos of their food and posting them on social media

#### Exercise 3

- 1 F Many people don't want to cook and they say that they don't have time to cook.
- 2 T
- 3 T
- 4 F 70% take photos to share online.
- **5** F Some chefs don't want customers to take photos in their restaurants.

## **Exercise 4**

Students' own answers.

## Page 79

## **VOCABULARY**

## Exercise 1

- 1 Beef, chicken
- 2 Broccoli
- 3 Chillies, curry
- 4 yoghurt
- 5 cereal
- 6 mushroom
- 7 mango
- 8 omelette

## Exercise 2

Students' own answers.

## **PUSH YOURSELF B1**

## Exercise 1

Speaker 1: fried potatoes (B) Speaker 2: steak sandwich (C) Speaker 3: sweet coconut rice (A)

## Track 051

1

**Woman:** First I peel the skin off the potatoes and then I use a sharp knife to chop them into small rectangular pieces. After that I put some oil in a frying pan. When the oil is very hot, I put the potatoes in the pan and fry them until they are brown. I eat them with lots of salt. I love them!

#### 2

Man: The best way to cook the meat is to grill it. I usually cook the steak for about 3–5 minutes on each side. You can cook it for longer if you want to but be careful not to burn it! When it's ready, I put the steak between two pieces of bread with some salad and then it's ready to eat. It's my favourite sandwich.

#### 3

Woman: First, I steam the rice for 15 minutes above a saucepan of boiling water until it's soft. Then I put some coconut milk in another saucepan and add sugar or honey to make it sweet. I put the rice and the sweet coconut milk together and cook them gently for three minutes. I make sure that I stir the rice and coconut milk every few seconds. When the rice is ready, I eat it with fresh mango. Delicious!

## Exercise 2

- 1 peel
- 2 chop
- 3 fry
- 4 grill
- 5 burn
- 6 steam
  7 add
- 8 stir

## Page 80

## GRAMMAR

## Exercise 1

1 One

#### **Exercise 2**

- 1 yoghurt U
- 2 bread U
- 3 apple C
- 4 mushroom C

## Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

## Track 052

Man: cakes

Woman: sandwiches

Man: bananas

Woman: pieces

Man: mangos

Woman: apples

Man: snacks

Woman: cups
Man: fridges

/s/	/z/	/IZ/
eat <b>s</b> cakes	egg <b>s</b> bananas	slic <b>es</b> sandwiches
snacks	mangos	pieces
cups	apples	fridges

s to < it

not

ak

ilk nd ok re eat

ater

Exercise 5 1 countable

2 some

3 any 4 any

## Exercise 6

1 any

2 Are, are

3 some

4 Is, isn't, are

5 some

## Exercise 7

1 some

2 any

3 a

4 some

5 some

6 some

7 a

8 any

#### Exercise 8

Students' own answers.

## Page 81

## **READING PART 1: TRAINING**

Exercise 1

Students' own answers

#### Exercise 2

#### Exercise 3

1 C

2 B

3 C

## Page 82

## GRAMMAR

Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## **Exercise 2**

1 a 2 b **5** a

## Track 053

hes

Vanessa: That smells delicious, Rob. What is it?

3 a

4 b

Rob: It's a vegetable chilli for tonight. For dinner with your friends.

Vanessa: What's in it?

Rob: All the vegetables I found in your fridge - onions, carrots, potatoes, mushrooms and tomatoes.

Vanessa: Is there a lot of chilli in it?

Rob: No, not much. I know you and your friends don't like hot and spicy food.

Vanessa: That's not true! I do! ... I love spicy food. But some people don't. Can I taste it? Mmm, delicious ... I don't like food that has a lot of salt in it, but this is just perfect! I'm going shopping now. Do you need anything?

Rob: I'm not sure. How much rice do we have in the cupboard?

Vanessa: Let's see. Not much. There's half a packet of rice.

Rob: OK, well can you get another two packets of rice, please? And do we have any lemons? I need a lot of lemons to make the dessert with.

Vanessa: Yes, we do, but not many. Just two.

Rob: Can you get me six lemons and a little cream. Oh, and also a few oranges, not many, just one or two.

Vanessa: OK, that's two packets of rice, six lemons, a little cream and a few oranges. OK, I'll get them. See you later!

#### Exercise 3

1 many, many

2 much, much

3 few

4 little

5 lot of

## **Exercise 4**

1 a little

2 a few

3 much, much

4 How many

5 a few, a little

6 much

## Exercise 5

1 many

2 any

some

4 much

5 much

many

7 an

an

9 some

10 a little

11 many

12 a lot of

**13** a few

14 a few

## Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

## Page 83

## **LISTENING PART 3: TRAINING**

Exercises 1 & 2

Students' own answers.

#### Track 054

Ben: Hi, Katie, how are you?

Katie: Hi, Ben. I'm fine. I went to dinner at Maria's house last night. You know, Maria, my Italian friend.

Ben: Yes, I remember Maria. I met her once at your mum's house. She's very nice! Is she a good cook?

Katie: I don't know. Maria's husband Dan did the cooking. It was delicious!

#### Exercise 3

2 B

3 A

4 B

## Track 055

Ben: Hi, Katie, how are you?

Katie: Hi, Ben. I'm fine. I went to dinner at Maria's house last night. You know, Maria, my Italian friend.

Ben: Yes, I remember Maria. I met her once at your mum's house. She's very nice! Is she a good cook?

Katie: I don't know. Maria's husband Dan did the cooking. It was delicious!

Ben: What did you eat?

Katie: We had spicy chicken with fresh mango and rice. The rice had lots of salt in it – I couldn't eat it. But the mango was sweet and juicy and the chicken was delicious. I don't usually like spicy food but this was excellent.

Ben: What was for dessert?

Katie: Strawberries and a cake made with oranges. We didn't have coffee after the meal. We had a drink made with yoghurt instead. It was delicious after the sweet dessert.

Ben: Interesting! I made chocolate cake yesterday. Not from the book I got for my birthday - those recipes need too much chocolate - I found it online. The cake was delicious. I ate some while watching TV.

Katie: Mmmm.

## Page 84

## SPEAKING

Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

- 1 Hi Izzy, Would you like to meet for lunch today? I'm free after 12.00. What about you?
- 2 Hi Henry, I'd love to. I have some things to do this morning, but I'm free at 12.30. Where shall we meet?
- 3 Shall we meet in front of the art museum? There are lots of restaurants near there.
- 4 OK. Great. I'll see you in front of the art museum at 12.30.

#### Exercise 3

1 cheese

2 the sushi restaurant

## Track 056

Izzy: Hi, Henry. Sorry I'm late!

Henry: Hi, Izzy. That's OK. It's only just after half past twelve. We've got lots of time. Are you hungry?

Izzy: Yes, I am. I didn't have any breakfast!

**Henry:** Let's find somewhere to eat straight away then. Where shall we go?

**Izzy:** I don't mind. Do you like pizza? How about that pizza restaurant over there? My sister says it's very good.

**Henry:** I'm afraid I don't eat cheese. I don't like it.

**Izzy:** OK. How about going for an Indian meal? I know you like curry.

**Henry:** You're right. I love curry, but we ate it at Paul's house yesterday. Do you feel like eating fish? What about having some sushi? There's a sushi place over there.

**Izzy:** That's a great idea. Let's go to the sushi restaurant. Shall we sit outside?

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 Izzy
- 2 Henry
- 3 Izzy
- 4 Henry
- 5 Izzy
- 6 Henry

#### **Exercise 5**

- 1 Let's
- 2 shall
- 3 mind
- 4 says
- 5 afraid
- 6 about
- 7 feel
- 8 What
- 9 idea
- 10 sit

#### **Exercise 6**

- 1 expressions 1, 2, 4, 6, 7, 8 and 10
- 2 expressions 3, 5 and 9

## Exercises 7 & 8

Students' own answers.

## Page 85

## WRITING

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

curry

## Track 057

**Sunita:** OK. So this is a really easy meal to make ... and really lovely. First peel the garlic and ginger and chop them into small pieces. Then chop the onions and other vegetables. Fry the garlic, ginger and chopped onion lightly in some oil. When they are soft, add the curry powder. After that, add the other chopped vegetables and mix everything together. Cook for 15–20 minutes until the vegetables are soft. While the curry is cooking, wash the rice and put it into a saucepan. Add water and a pinch of salt. Cook for 20 minutes. Finally, serve the curry with the rice and enjoy!

#### Exercise 3

- 1 peel, chop
- 2 chop
- 3 Fry, add
- 4 add, mix
- 5 Cook
- 6 wash, put
- 7 Add
- 8 serve

#### Exercise 4

- 1 Peel
- 2 fry
- 3 serve
- 4 Mix
- 5 Chop

#### Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

## Page 86

## EXAM FOCUS READING PART 1

1	Α	3	C	5	A
2	В	4	В	6	C

## Page 87

## **LISTENING PART 3**

1	В	3	В	5	Α
2	C	4	Α		

## Track 058

**Narrator:** For each question, choose the correct answer. You have 20 seconds to look at Part 3.

You will hear Lewis talking to his friend Laura about a cooking course.

Now listen to the conversation.

**Lewis:** Why didn't you come to our first cooking lesson yesterday, Laura?

Laura: Sorry, Lewis! I didn't forget, but my college teacher needed to speak to me after class, so I missed the bus. But I'll come next week!

**Lewis:** Well, it doesn't matter. You're such a good cook already.

Laura: You only think that because I always make the same things. I make so many omelettes, I should open an omelette restaurant! I need to learn to prepare new dishes. What did you make yesterday?

**Lewis:** The teacher said we could make soup or a dessert. I chose ice cream. Next week it's curry. I'll send you the list of things you'll need.

Laura: So what's the teacher like?

**Lewis:** She's okay. She explains things quite well, and shows people how to do things. But what I didn't like was that she shouted, and wasn't very nice about what someone cooked.

**Laura:** Oh dear! Can we go together next week?

**Lewis:** Sure. The class starts at 7 pm, but I like being early. I'll come to your college at 6.30, so we can arrive at 6.45. Okay? **Laura:** Yes, thanks.

## Page 88

## **REAL WORLD**

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- 1 T
- 2 T
- 3 F Water is always served with the coffee.
- 4 F Guests should feel welcome and shouldn't feel that they have to leave quickly.

#### Exercise 3

- 1 Café 100
- 2 Café Schokolade
- 3 Café 100
- 4 Café Vienna

## Page 89

## **Exercise 4**

1	а	3	b	5	a
2	а	4	a	6	a

## Exercise 5

1 c	<b>2</b> d	<b>3</b> a

## Track 059

1

Waiter: Hello. Are you ready to order?
Customer 1: Yes. I'd like a Viennese coffee, please.

**Customer 2:** And a black coffee for me, please.

Waiter: Anything to eat?

Customer 1: Yes, What's a

Kardinalschnitte?

**Waiter:** It's a traditional Viennese cake. It has layers of vanilla sponge on the outside, then a layer of strawberry jam and a fresh cream filling.

**Customer 2:** Mmm. That sounds nice. Does it have nuts in it?

**Waiter:** No. There are no nuts, but it does have gluten. We do also have gluten-free options if you like.

**Customer 2:** That's OK. I'm allergic to nuts, but nothing else. So can we have one *Kardinalschnitte*, with two forks, please?

**Waiter:** Of course. Any whipped cream with that?

**Customer:** No, thank you. **Waiter:** OK. That's fine.

2

**Server:** Who's next, please? **Customer:** Hi, can I have a cheeseburger, please?

Server: Eat in or take away?

Customer: To eat in.
Server: Any fries with that?
Customer: Yes, please.
Server: And a drink?
Customer: A cola, please.

Server: Regular or large?
Customer: Regular, please.

**Server:** OK. One cheeseburger with fries, and a regular cola. Thank you.

3

Server: Hi. Can I help you?

Customer: Yes. Can I have a chicken

sandwich, please?

**Server:** Sorry, we're out of chicken sandwiches at the moment. I've got a chicken wrap.

**Customer:** OK. Can I have a chicken wrap, please? And do you do decaf coffee?

Server: Yes, we do.

**Customer:** OK. I'd like a small decaf latte, please.

**Server:** No problem. Have you seen our combos? For 10 euros you can have any wrap or roll, plus a coffee and a cookie or muffin.

**Customer:** Oh. OK. What muffins do you have?

**Server:** Chocolate, lemon, or blueberry. **Customer:** I'll have a chocolate muffin, please.

**Server:** Coming up! If you take a seat, someone will bring you your food.

Customer: Thank you.

#### Exercise 6

- 1 What's a
- 2 Does it have
- 3 allergic to
- 4 with two forks
- 5 Do you do
- 6 What muffins

## **Exercise 7**

1 b 3 a 5 a 2 b 4 a 6 b

## Exercises 8 & 9

the city: capital of Austria and the largest city; busy modern city, famous for old coffee shops

coffee shops and cafés: great place to relax and chat with friends, often have piano music; cakes, sandwiches, salads, sausages

types of desserts: Apfelstrudel, Kardinalschnitte

Wiener Schnitzel: flat steak of veal or pork, dipped in flour, eggs and breadcrumbs, fried in oil, served with chips and lemon three famous cafés: Café Central, popular with writers and artists; Café Mozart, named after the musician and composer; Café Sacher, where *Sachertorte* was first made, a chocolate cake with smooth chocolate icing

## Exercise 10

Students' own answers.

## UNIT 7

Page 90

## **VOCABULARY**

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- A photography
- B doing nothing
- C board games
- D doing Massaoke
- E baking
- F doing exercise
- **G** gigs
- H going to the gym

#### Exercise 3

- 1 photography
- 2 gig
- 3 doing nothing
- 4 baking
- 5 board games
- 6 exercise
- 7 gym
- 8 does Massaoke

## **Exercise 4**

Students' own answers.

## Page 91

## LISTENING

## Exercise 1

- 1 photography
- 2 Massaoke

## Track 060

1

**Interviewer:** Thanks for talking to me, Declan. Can I ask how old you are and where you are from?

**Declan:** I'm 22 and I come from Dublin in Ireland.

**Interviewer:** Thank you. And your hobby is photography, isn't it? So when did you start taking photos?

**Declan:** I started when I was at secondary school. I was doing a project and I needed some photos for it. I borrowed my dad's camera and I haven't stopped taking photos since then.

**Interviewer:** Does it take a long time to learn to take good photos?

**Declan:** Yes, and no. A person can always take good photos and it's a very personal thing. But photography is a big subject and you can spend your whole life learning about it. In fact, I've just been on a weekend course to learn some new techniques.

**Interviewer:** And do you use lots of special equipment? Is photography an expensive hobby?

**Declan:** Yes, I've got quite a lot of different cameras. But I bought them over a long time. You don't need an expensive camera to begin with. You can start with your phone and share photos with friends online.

**Interviewer:** And how good are you at photography now?

**Declan:** I don't know. Look at my photos and you decide! The important thing is that I love it.

**Interviewer:** So why do you like it? How does taking photos make you feel?

**Declan:** Taking photos makes me forget my problems. I look at the world through my camera and I see new things I have never noticed before.

2

Interviewer: I'm talking to Kimberley from Manchester, who is 19 years old, and Kimberley has done Massaoke for a year. Thank you for talking to us Kimberley. So how did you start singing and can you explain what massaoke is?

Kimberley: Well, I started singing because I've got two big sisters who sang a lot at home, and when my sisters started going to Massaoke clubs, I wanted to go along as well. Massaoke is a really fantastic night out. There's a brilliant live band, which plays the biggest pop or rock songs, and the crowd sings along. The words to the songs are on a big screen at the front, so everyone can join in. Have you ever been to a Massaoke club?

**Interviewer:** No, I haven't tried Massaoke, but it sounds great. So, how does singing Massaoke make you feel?

Kimberley: Singing along with hundreds of other people makes me feel really happy and full of energy! It's a great way to relax and have fun with my friends, so we try to do it every Saturday night if we can.

Interviewer: And where do you go to do it?

**Kimberley:** Well, it's becoming really popular. There are now two or three clubs in Manchester where you can do Massaoke, as a new club has just opened in the city centre.

## Interview 1

Name: Declan

Age: 22

Where from: Dublin, Ireland

Hobby: photography

## Interview 2

Name: Kimberley

Age: 19

Where from? Manchester

Hobby: Massaoke

## **Exercise 3**

1 D 2 D 3 K 4 D 5 D 6 K

## Exercise 4

Students' own answers.

## Exercise 5

- 1 When did you start taking photos?
- 2 Do you use lots of special equipment?
- 3 How good are you at photography?
- 4 Why do you like it?
- 5 How does singing Massaoke make you feel?
- 6 How often do you do it?

#### **Exercise 6**

Students' own answers.

## Page 92

## **GRAMMAR**

## **Exercise 1**

- 2 have
- 3 ed

## **Exercise 2**

- 1 take/taken
- 2 win/won
- 3 be/been
- 4 eat/eaten
- 5 sing/sung
- # 1/ 1
- 6 speak/spoken
- 7 swim/swum
- 8 get/got

#### **Exercise 3**

- 2 Have ... ever watched
- 3 have never been
- 4 has always enjoyed
- 5 Has ... ever swum
- 6 have always lived

#### **Exercise 4**

/w/ sound before you (have you/w/ever)
/j/ sound before I and they (I/j/ever,
they/j/ever)

## Track 061

Man: Have you ever eaten sushi?

Woman: Yes, I have.

Man: Have they ever swum in a lake?

Woman: Yes, they have.

Man: Have I ever asked you to help me before?

Woman: No, you haven't.

#### **Exercise 5**

Students' own answers.

## Exercise 6

- 1 a short time ago
- 2 after, before

#### Exercise 7

- 2 've/have just seen
- 3 have just painted
- 4 've/have just bought

## **Exercise 8**

Students' own answers.

## Page 93

## **READING PART 3: TRAINING**

Exercise 1

## Suggested answer

acting

#### Exercise 2

**2** B

3 C

## **VOCABULARY**

#### **Exercise 1**

- The audience are the people who watch a performance.
- 2 A performance is acting, playing music or dancing in front of people.
- 3 An actor's costume is the set of clothes he or she wears during the performance.
- A rehearsal is when the actors practise the play.
- 5 The stage is the place where the actors perform.

#### **Exercise 2**

- 1 audience
- 2 stage
- 3 performance
- 4 rehearsal
- 5 costumes

### Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

## Page 94

## LISTENING

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- 1 They are children. They are from the city of Asunción in Paraguay.
- 2 They are made of recycled rubbish.

#### Exercise 3

- 1 rubbish
- 2 recycled

#### **Exercise 4**

Because he didn't have any money to buy them.

## Track 062

Woman: In 2006, Favio Chavez began working in Asunción in Paraguay on a recycling project. He was also a musician and he started to give music lessons to some of the children in the local area in his free time. The problem was that he didn't have any money to buy instruments for the children to use. So he asked Cola, a local man who was very good at making things, if he could make some instruments out of old things. Cola made some drums and flutes and then violins and guitars. They sounded great and they cost nothing! It was also better for the children to have instruments like this and not expensive 'real' instruments that people would want to steal. Chavez formed an orchestra with his students and they started to give concerts in Asunción. They made beautiful music with their recycled instruments. They played classical music - Mozart, Beethoven and Bach - and they sounded fantastic. In 2012, a Paraguayan film director made a film about the orchestra and put it online and they started to become famous all over the world. They now get invited to play in different countries. One of the first countries they went to was Brazil. The young musicians were very excited to visit Rio de Janeiro, not just because it was a famous city in a different country but because they saw the ocean for the first time.

## Exercise 5

1 b 3 c 2 b 4 c

## **Exercise 6**

Students' own answers.

## Page 95

## **VOCABULARY**

### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

- 1 Valeria and Diego perform music; Alex listens to music.
- 2 Valeria plays the guitar and the drums.

- 1 a mix of pop and soul
- 2 They both write it.
- 3 female solo artist
- 4 the drums

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 guitarist
- 2 solo artists
- 3 Songwriters
- 4 drummer
- 5 lead singer
- 6 musician

#### Exercise 5

- 1 lead singer
- 2 drummer
- 3 guitarist
- 4 songwriters
- 5 musicians
- 6 solo artists

#### Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

## Page 96

## WRITING

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- 1 26-29 July, Charlsbury Park, Kent
- 2 an international music festival
- 3 four days
- 4 £185
- 5 yes, £70
- 6 £40 per tent
- 7 You can watch music and dance performances, buy things to eat and drink, do art and painting, learn music and dance styles.

#### Exercise 3

- 1 international, favourite
- 2 amazing, world famous
- 3 pleasant
- 4 excellent
- 5 fun
- 6 international
- 7 delicious

## Exercises 4 & 5

Students' own answers.

#### Page 97

## **SPEAKING PART 1: TRAINING**

#### Exercise 1

	Yannis	Carmen
Work or studies	student	works as a shop assistant
Age	17	19
Nationality	Greek	Spanish
City	Athens	Madrid

## Track 063

**Examiner:** Good morning. What's your

Carmen: I'm Carmen.

**Examiner:** And what's your name?

Yannis: Yannis.

**Examiner:** Yannis, do you work or are

you a student?

Yannis: Erm, erm ... Student. Examiner: How old are you?

Yannis: Seventeen.

**Examiner:** Where do you come from?

Yannis: Greece.

Examiner: Where do you live?

Yannis: What?

**Examiner:** Do you live in Athens? **Yannis:** Yes, near the centre of Athens.

**Examiner:** Thank you. Carmen, do you

work or are you a student?

**Carmen:** I'm working at the moment. I have a job as a shop assistant. But after the summer, I'm planning to go to university.

**Examiner:** How old are you? **Carmen:** I'm nineteen years old.

**Examiner:** Where do you come from?

Carmen: I'm from Spain.

Examiner: Where do you live?

Carmen: I live in Madrid.

Examiner: Thank you.

#### **Exercise 2**

Carmen gives better answers because they are longer and have more information in them.

#### **Exercise 3**

- 1 Yannis: he plays sports in the evenings; he enjoys going to the cinema and sailing with his father at weekends.
- 2 Carmen: she likes watching and playing tennis; she'd like to try painting; she had a birthday party last weekend.

## Track 064

**Examiner:** Now, let's talk about hobbies. Carmen, what's your favourite hobby?

Carmen: I love tennis. I like watching it, I like reading about tennis players, and best of all I love playing it.

**Examiner:** Yannis, how much time do you have for doing hobbies?

**Yannis:** Quite a lot of time. After school I play different sports, usually for one or two hours in the evening.

**Examiner:** Now, Carmen, please tell me something about a new hobby you would like to try.

**Carmen:** I'd like to try painting. I don't know if I could do it very well. But I'd like to paint some pictures, for example of my city. I could give them to my friends.

**Examiner:** Now, let's talk about weekends. Yannis, where do you enjoy going at weekends?

**Yannis:** I enjoy going to the cinema with my friends, and I enjoy going sailing with my father.

**Examiner:** Carmen, what was the best thing about last weekend?

Carmen: Oh, that's easy! It was my birthday, and I had a party on Saturday night

**Examiner:** Now, Yannis, please tell me something about your plans for next

Yannis: I don't have any plans at the moment. I might have to do some homework, but I hope there's time to see my friends. I'll probably watch TV as well.

#### Exercise 4

- 1 favourite
- 2 much time
- 3 something about
- 4 enjoy going
- **5** was ... best
- 6 Please tell me

## Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

## **PUSH YOURSELF B1**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 Lotti
- 2 Michael

#### **Exercise 2**

- 1 because
- 2 so that
- **3** so

- 1 so that
- 2 because of
- **3** so
- 4 Because

#### Page 98

## EXAM FOCUS READING PART 3

### Exercise 1

- 1 one long text
- 2 five
- 3 three
- 4 choose
- 5 title of the text

## Exercise 2

1 A 3 B 5 C 2 B 4 A

## Page 99

## **SPEAKING PART 1**

Exercises 1 & 2

Students' own answers.

## Page 100

## **REAL WORLD**

Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- A Street Art Tour
- **B** Camden Market
- C East End Food Tour

#### **Exercise 3**

- 1 F The tours change all the time.
- 2 F It started as an arts and crafts market.
- 3 T

#### Page 101

#### **Exercise 4**

1 a 3 b 5 b 2 a 4 a 6 b

#### **Exercise 5**

1 d 2 a 3 c

## Track 065

1

**Woman:** Ooh, this is nice. I love cooking, and I love spicy things! Do you like it?

Man: Yes, it's really nice. It's very different. I didn't know that London had all these different kinds of food.

**Woman:** Oh, yes. London's a city with people from all over the world. I love it!

Man: Are you from London?

**Woman:** No, I'm from Cornwall, in the south west, but I've just moved up to London for my job. How about you?

Man: Oh, I'm a tourist. I'm here for two weeks.

**Woman:** Cool. Where are you from? **Man:** I'm from Sevilla, in Spain. Spanish food is quite different.

Woman: Yeah. I love Spanish food, too.

Man: I really like this tour. You see a different side of the city when you think about its food.

Man: Yes, that's true.

**Woman:** Oh, it looks like we're on the move again!

**Guide:** Right, everyone, are you ready to go and ...?

2

Man: I'm sorry I haven't got the colour you wanted. You could try again next week? Are you local?

**Woman:** No, I'm a tourist. I'm only here for one week.

Man: Oh, that's a shame. Is this your first time at the market?

**Woman:** Yes. I really like it. I collect vintage clothes and there are some really interesting clothes here. But it's very busy.

Man: Yeah. It's crazy some days! It's best to get here early. It's OK till lunch time, then it goes mad!

**Woman:** Yes, there are so many visitors. it's my first time in London, but I hope I'll be back next year.

Man: Well, if you are, nip down here again, and we'll see if we've got anything you like.

Woman: OK. Thank you.

Man: See you. Bye.

3

Man: Wow! That's amazing!

**Woman:** I know. I can't believe the city has so many artists!

Man: Where are you from?

Woman: I'm from the US.

Man: Really? Is street art a big thing where you come from?

**Woman:** In the big cities, yes. I'm from New York, and there's a lot of street art. But I've never seen a tour like this in my city. Are you from London?

Man: No. I'm from Manchester, and we don't have anything like this. I think it's great. I mean, you can always walk around and just look at the works yourself, but it's worth the few pounds to get the tour. You learn so much, and they know where the best pieces are. It'd be difficult to find them on your own.

**Woman:** That's true. And they take you to some really interesting places.

Man: Yeah. You get off the tourist track, that's for sure.

#### **Exercise 6**

- 1 Are you
- 2 I'm here
- 3 very busy
- 4 first time
- 5 never seen
- 6 true.

You can say 'That's true' to agree with someone.

#### Exercise 7

1 b 3 a 2 a 4 b

## Exercises 8 & 9

- 1 a big wheel
- 2 30 minutes
- 3 a hop-on, hop-off ticket
- 4 Big Ben
- 5 to take photos on the famous crossing from a Beatles album
- 6 1,000 years; traditional British food and food from many different countries

#### Exercise 10

Students' own answers.

## **UNIT 8**

Page 102

## READING

Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## Exercise 2

- 1 villa E
- 2 houseboat C
- 3 cottage D
- 4 townhouse B
- 5 studio apartment/flat A

## Exercise 3

Shanghai, China

## Track 066

**Ling:** My name is Ling. I'm 43 years old and I live in Shanghai, a big city in China. I live with my sister in a small house in an old part of the city. It's in the centre of Shanghai, near the river. The house is 100 years old. My sister and I were born in it and we've lived there all our lives!

**Huan:** My name is Huan and I'm 25 years old. I live in an apartment in Shanghai in China. My apartment is very new. I moved into it four weeks ago! The building is modern and my apartment is on the 23rd floor so I have a great view across the whole of the city. It's not near the city centre but that's OK.

## **Exercise 4**

1 c 3 c 5 a 2 b 4 b 6 a

## Page 103

## **Exercise 5**

Ling: Photo B Huan: Photo A

## Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

- 1 because it's modern and has a balcony
- 2 the fantastic view
- 3 in the garage under the apartment building
- 4 three
- 5 on the roof
- 6 pay rent

## **VOCABULARY**

## Exercise 1

- 1 rent
- 2 roof
- 3 garage
- 4 view
- 5 building
- 6 balcony
- 7 furniture
- / lullilliore
- 8 ground floor
- 9 neighbours
- 10 basement

#### Exercise 2

- 1 How old is your home?
- 2 How many floors does it have?
- 3 What's your favourite room?
- 4 Do you have a garden or a balcony?

## Page 104

## LISTENING

#### Exercise 1

- 1 The house is in Beverly Hills, Los Angeles. An actress/singer lives there.
- 2 eight years
- 3 9.5 million dollars

## Exercise 2

indoor swimming pool, gym, kitchen

## Track 067

Reporter: Hello and welcome to Homes of the Rich and Famous. So, here I am standing in the hall of this amazing home. In front of me are the stairs. Let's go up ... There are ten bedrooms in this house and five bathrooms, but the room I want to visit is the famous swimming-pool ... Yes, here it is. A big, indoor swimming pool on the first floor. Wow! Next to the swimming pool is the gym. Let's go inside. Well, this gym has everything so it's the perfect house for fitness fans.

OK, Let's go downstairs now. I'd like to visit the kitchen ... Yes, here it is, between the dining room and the hall. It's so big and everything is white ... and gold. Just look at that big sink with gold taps. And is that really a fridge opposite the window? It's as big as a bus. I love it! There are loads of cupboards and the cooker and the oven are twice as big as normal ones! People who love cooking will be very happy here.

I think if we look out of the window, we can see the recording studio behind the house. Lots of famous musicians have recorded there. Let's see if we can look inside! There's a small cinema in the basement, under the recording studio, and there's also an amazing games rooms for adults and children.

#### Exercise 3

1	b	<b>3</b> a	<b>5</b> b
2	а	4 b	

## **VOCABULARY**

## Exercise 1

				N=W 4	
1		3	a	5	b
2	d	4	е	6	С

#### Exercise 2

- a in front of
- **b** between
- c opposite
- d under
- e behind
- f next to

#### Exercises 3 & 4

Students' own answers.

## Page 105

## **Exercise 5**

Students' own answers.

## Track 068

Under the sink
Opposite the fridge
Behind the oven

Next to the tap

Between the cooker and the fridge In front of the oven

## **GRAMMAR**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 8 years ago / yes
- 2 last year / yes

## **Exercise 2**

- 1 for
- 2 since

## Exercise 3

- 1 for
- 2 since
- 3 for
- 4 since
- 5 since
- 6 for

## **Exercise 4**

Students' own answers.

## Page 106

## **SPEAKING**

## Exercise 1

- 1 Portugal
- 2 an apartment

## Track 069

Woman: OK, Luzia, so where do you live?

**Luzia:** I live in Porto. It's a large city in the north-west of Portugal. It's on the Atlantic Ocean. It's a very old city and it's very beautiful.

**Woman:** And where do you live in the city? Who do you live with?

**Luzia:** I live in the centre, near the cathedral. I live in a big apartment with my parents, my sister, and my two brothers. It's on the third floor and it's old and big. There are eight rooms.

**Woman:** How long have you lived there? **Luzia:** I've lived there all my life. I was born there.

**Woman:** Do you like your apartment? What's your favourite room?

**Luzia:** Yes, I like my apartment very much. The apartment building is old and the lift is broken, so we often have to climb lots of stairs, but it's still beautiful. My favourite room is the kitchen because it's where we eat and where the family spends time together.

**Woman:** Is there anything you don't like about your apartment?

**Luzia:** Yes, it's a bit noisy. I can often hear the noise from the street.

**Woman:** Do you have your own room? **Luzia:** No, I don't. I share a room with my sister.

Woman: Can you describe your room? Luzia: Yes, it's quite big. The walls are white. There isn't a carpet on the floor; there are wooden floorboards. The curtains are blue and in front of the window is a big desk where we do our homework. On the wall next to the door there are shelves with some books on them.

## **Exercise 2**

- 1 And where do you live in the city?
- 2 Who do you live with?
- 3 How long have you lived there?
- 4 Do you like your apartment?
- 5 What's your favourite room?
- 6 Is there anything you don't like about your apartment?
- 7 Can you describe your room?

## Exercise 3

noisy – quiet, old – modern, ugly – beautiful, big – small, cheap – expensive

#### Exercises 4 & 5

Students' own answers.

## **PUSH YOURSELF B1**

## Exercise 1

- 1 At the back of
- 2 In front of
- 3 In the middle of
- 4 On the left
- 5 on the wall

## Track 070

Man: This is a photo of a living room. The walls are white and there's a grey rug on the floor. At the back of the room there are three big windows, but there aren't any curtains. In front of the window there's a round table with a white chair on each side of it. The part of the chair that we sit on -I don't know the name in English - is red. In the middle of the room there's a big glass table and on the table there are some pink flowers in ... I don't know what it's called in English but it's a kind of pot for flowers. On the left there's a grey sofa and above the sofa, on the wall, there's a big picture. On the right of the table there are two black chairs and there's a dog standing in front of them.

#### Exercise 2

The part of the chair that we sit on – I don't know the name in English ...

I don't know what it's called in English but it's a kind of ...

## Exercise 3

- 1 seat
- 2 vase
- 3 rug
- 4 lamp
- 5 bookshelf

#### Page 107

## GRAMMAR

## **Exercise 1**

Students' own answers.

## **Exercise 2**

- 1 because he's got a new job
- 2 on the internet

#### Track 071

**Anthony:** Hi, Laura, it's Anthony. You know that job in Helsinki I told you about? Well, I got it! And I'm moving to Finland in ten days.

**Laura:** Wow! Congratulations about the job, but that doesn't give you much time to do everything! Have you found anywhere to live yet?

**Anthony:** Yes, I have actually. I've already found my new apartment.

Laura: That was quick! How did you do it?

**Anthony:** I found it online. I looked on the internet for apartments in Helsinki and I found it there.

Laura: So you've only seen photos of it online then? You haven't actually visited it yet?

Anthony: Yes, I have. I went to Helsinki last week to see it and I really like it. It's quite old but it's big – well big for me. It's got two bedrooms! It's near the centre and I've already paid the first month's rent and bought a new sofa. You must come and visit me. Helsinki is a great city.

Laura: I'd love to ... But tell me about the job. Have you met your new boss yet?

**Anthony:** Yes, I've already met my boss. He offered me the job! I haven't visited the office yet. I haven't had time! Anyway, I must go now. There are some other people I need to phone. But come and visit me soon!

## Exercise 3

- 1 found ... yet
- 2 already found
- 3 visited ... yet
- 4 already paid
- 5 yet
- 6 already met

#### Rule

- 1 already
- 2 yet

## Exercise 4

- 1 Have you finished packing yet?
- 2 already said goodbye
- 3 have you texted your friends
- 4 haven't booked a taxi yet

#### Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

#### Page 108

## GRAMMAR

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

Yes, she's met her neighbours and some girls from her exercise class.

## Exercise 3

- 1 unfinished
- 2 for
- 3 finished4 ago

## Exercise 4

- 1 moved
- 2 's/has lived
- 3 haven't finished

- 4 bought
- 5 has been
- 6 put
- 7 found
- 8 has ... been

#### **Exercise 5**

Students' own answers.

## **READING PART 5: TRAINING**

- 1 on
- 2 is
- 3 the
- **4** go

## Page 109

## **WRITING PART 6: TRAINING**

## Exercise 1

It's a party you have when you have just moved into/bought a new place to live.

#### Exercise 2

- 1 They go to the same language school.
- 2 She has just moved house.
- 3 7.30 pm on Saturday at 21, Lake Street
- 4 It's on the ground floor, is large, and has a beautiful modern kitchen and a garden. It's near the station on Lake Street.
- 5 other students from the language school and her brother Harry

## Exercise 3

- 1 Hi + name
- 2 How are you?
- 3 I'm writing to ...
- 4 Best wishes

## **Exercise 4**

- 1 Dear + name; Hello + name
- 2 How are things?; I hope you're well.
- **3** I wanted to ask you; So, I wanted to know if ...
- 4 See you soon!; All the best

## Exercise 5

How are you getting to the party? Can we go together? Where shall/can we meet? What about the bus stop?

#### Exercises 6 & 7

Students' own answers.

## Page 110

# EXAM FOCUS READING PART 5

- 1 it
- 2 of
- 3 Do / Would
- 4 to
- 5 your / the
- 6 the

Page 111

## **WRITING PART 6**

3 E

4 B

Exercise 1

1 D

5 C

2 A

## Exercise 2

## Model answer

Dear Jamie, would you like to come and stay at my house next weekend? We can watch films and you can meet some of my friends. Bring some computer games too. Andres. (32 words)

Page 112

## **REAL WORLD**

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- 1 F They can come all year round.
- 2 T
- 3 F Adult classes are for all levels.
- 4 T
- 5 T

eet

a

hool

6 F There are different prices for the self-catering apartments.

## Page 113

## Exercise 3

1	а	3	b	5	b
2	а	4	b	6	а

Exercise 4		
1 c	<b>2</b> d	<b>3</b> b

## Track 072

Receptionist: Hello. International English College.

Rafael: Hello. My name's Rafael Lopez. I'm coming to your school in the summer with my family, and I'd like to book some accommodation.

Receptionist: OK. What was your name again?

Rafael: Rafael Lopez.

Receptionist: OK. Yes, I've got you here. Can you just give me the dates please?

Rafael: We're arriving on the twenty fifth of July, and we're leaving on the eighth of August.

Receptionist: Well, there are a couple of options available - you can go for a hotel or a self-catering apartment.

Rafael: We'd like an apartment, please.

Receptionist: That's fine. And how many of you are there?

Rafael: There are four people in my family.

Receptionist: That's great. So, I've got a lovely apartment here. It's quite new, so it's nice and fresh. Shall I send you the details? I've got your email address. And then if you want to go ahead, just send me an email and I can book it for you. Or we can have another look if this one's no good.

Rafael: Yes, thank you. That's perfect.

Teacher: Hi. Come in. You're a bit early, but that's OK. Are you Maria?

Maria: Yes.

Teacher: Well, welcome to Malta. When did you get here?

Maria: I arrived last night.

Teacher: And where are you from?

Maria: I'm from Slovakia.

Teacher: Lovely. I think you're with a host family, aren't you? Have you settled in OK?

Student: Yes, thank you. I've met my host family, they're really nice.

Teacher: Oh, that's good. Are you here with friends, or just on your own?

Student: I've come with two friends from Slovakia, but they're in different classes.

Teacher: OK. Well, you'll see this is a really friendly class and there are plenty of other students your age, so you'll soon feel at home. Have you dealt with all the formalities?

Student: Yes. I filled in all the forms and I've got my student card. And they told me to come to this class.

Teacher: That's perfect. Ah, here come the others. I'll introduce you, and then we can get started. Come in, everyone! This is Maria, ...

3

Woman: Hello. You must be Jakob. Come on in. Here, let me take your bag.

Jakob: Thank you.

Woman: How was your flight?

Jakob: Yes, it was fine. The plane was on time.

Woman: Well, I'm Anna, and you'll be staying with us while you're here. You'll meet the rest of the family later when they get back. Shall I show you to your room first and we can get rid of these bags?

Jakob: OK. Thanks.

Woman: So, this is you in here. I'm sure you'll want to use the internet, so I've left the code for the Wi-Fi on the desk for you, so you can get that up and running.

Jakob: OK. Thanks.

Woman: So, just let me know if there's anything else you need. Now, with food, do you have any allergies?

Jakob: No. I don't have any allergies. I eat everything.

Woman: Well, that's nice and easy. And is there anything you don't like? Any particular preferences?

Jakob: I'm not very keen on spicy food. And I don't like fish very much. But I love pasta, and pizza.

Woman: OK. That's fine. I'm sure we can find things you'll like.

## Exercise 5

- 1 like to book
- 2 There are
- 3 I've met
- 4 I've got
- 5 don't have
- 6 not very keen

## Exercise 6

1	С	3	d	5	е
	f	4	a	6	b

#### Exercises 7 & 8

towns and cities: largest city is Valletta, the capital, small streets and lovely buildings; Mdina is over 2,500 years old with narrow streets; St. Julian's is a more modern town, with lots of shops and restaurants and a great beach

history and culture: English is one of the official languages, many examples of British culture, such as telephone boxes and post boxes, double-decker buses language schools: more than 40 language schools on the island

free-time activities: boat trips, sailing, scuba diving and horse-riding, relaxing on the beach.

#### Exercises 9 & 10

Students' own answers.

## Page 114

## PROGRESS CHECK 3

#### Exercise 1

- **1** in
- 2 between
- 3 in front of
- 4 behind
- 5 under
- 6 next to

#### Exercise 2

- 1 solo artist
- 2 drummer
- 3 musicians
- 4 band

- 1 broccoli
- 2 beef
- 3 chicken
- 4 omelette
- 5 mushroom
- 6 mango/melon
- 7 yoghurt

- 1 some
- 2 a little
- 3 much
- 4 some
- 5 many
- 6 a few
- 7 a

## Page 115

## Exercise 5

- 1 going to the gym
- 2 baking, photography
- 3 going to gigs
- 4 playing board games
- 5 doing nothing, doing exercise

#### **Exercise 6**

- 1 A: Have you **ever** travelled somewhere by plane?
  - **B:** Actually, I've **just** come back from New York. It was fantastic!
- 2 A: Have you finished that book yet?
  - **B:** Of course! In fact, I've **already** started a new one.
- **3 A:** What game is that you're playing? I have **never** seen it before.
  - **B:** Oh, we've had this **for** years. My Dad bought it in China.

#### Exercise 7

- I bought some jeans and some beautiful trainers.
- 2 It was good weather.
- 3 My favourite meal is pasta.
- 4 At the park no-one sells any food.
- 5 Don't forget to buy some juice.
- 6 We took many photos.

## **Exercise 8**

- 1 bought
- 2 Has ... had
- 3 left
- 4 haven't seen
- 5 haven't put
- 6 met

## **Exercise 9**

1	Α	4	C	7 /	1
2	В	5	A		
-	_		-		

## UNIT 9

Page 116

## READING

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## **Exercise 2**

1	E	4	В
2	Α	5	C
3	D		

#### Exercise 3

- 1 busy
- 2 confident
- 3 shy
- 4 friendly5 generous
- 6 reliable

## Exercises 4 & 5

	Friends	Where they met	When they met	Why they like their friend
1	Chris and John	at art school	20 years ago	He's friendly and generous with his time.
2	Emma and Sonia	at a birthday party	25 years ago	She's reliable and always there for her.
3	Enrique and Juan	at a tennis club	(about) 10 years ago	He's clever, funny makes him laugh, and he's never bored with him.
4	Helena and Jasmine	at a restaurant	last year	She's generous, gives people things and helps people.

## Track 073

**Chris:** I met my best friend John when we were students at art school. That's 20 years ago now! We were both 18 and both very bad artists! I liked him immediately because he was so friendly but he's also generous with his time. He's always willing to help people.

**Emma:** My best friend's Sonia. I've known her all my life. That's 25 years now! We lived in the same street. We met at a friend's birthday party and we played together when we were small. She's like my sister. I love her because she's so reliable. I know she will always be there for me

Enrique: Juan is probably my best friend. He's my tennis partner. We're professional tennis players, so it's an important relationship. I met him at the tennis club about 10 years ago. I get on so well with Juan because he's clever and funny. He makes me laugh and he's always telling me about something new he's read about. We spend a lot of time together but I'm never bored when I'm with him.

Helena: I met Jasmine last year in the restaurant where we both work after school. We haven't known each other very long but she's my best friend and I'm hers. I think she's the most generous person I've ever met. She's always giving people things and helping them.

## Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

## Page 117

#### Exercises 7 & 8

They met in Grace's restaurant in London when Matteo asked for a job 10 years ago. Grace is friendly and generous. She never gets angry with Matteo.

Matteo is always calm. He's a quiet person, but people never argue with him. They work in Grace's restaurant.

#### Exercise 9

- 1 her smile
- 2 ten years
- 3 Because she thought he was too young.
- 4 Because he's very calm. He's a quiet person but people listen to him and do what he says.

## **VOCABULARY**

## Exercise 1

1	Ь	<b>3</b> e	<b>5</b> d
2	f	<b>4</b> a	<b>6</b> c

## **Exercise 2**

- 1 get on well
- 2 worried
- 3 bad mood
- 4 argue
- 5 stressed
- 6 angry

## Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

#### Page 118

## GRAMMAR

#### Exercise 1

infinitive

#### Exercise 2

- 1 It was interesting to find out about life in a different country.
- 2 We were excited to hear that there's a trip to America next year.
- 3 They were sad to say goodbye to their friends.
- 4 She promised to help him in the evening.
- 5 I tried to learn how to ski but it was too difficult.

## Exercise 3

- 1 easy to
- 2 learned to
- 3 want to
- 4 decided to
- 5 happy to
- 6 exciting to

## **Exercise 4**

/tə/

## Track 074

It's easy to get stressed. I needed to get a job.

I didn't really want to give Matteo a job. He's happy to pay for the drinks.

## Exercises 5 & 6

Students' own answers

## Page 119

## **READING PART 2: TRAINING**

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

2 C

4 C

3 A

5 A

## **Exercise 3**

Students' own answers.

## Page 120

## **GRAMMAR**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 Paola
- 2 Tima
- 3 Monica
- 4 Fahad

## Track 075

1

**Paola:** When I'm sad, I try to find something that will make me laugh. I love watching funny films, so I stream some of my favourite comedies – and before sitting down on the sofa to watch, I make some hot chocolate. This always cheers me up.

#### 2

**Tima:** If I feel stressed, I try to find some friends to play a game of football with. I always enjoy running around, and thinking about the game helps me to forget my problems.

#### 3

**Monica:** When I want to cheer myself up, I phone a friend. I soon stop thinking about sad things when we're talking and laughing. I have two or three good friends I can always call and I always feel better after talking to them.

#### 4

**Fahad:** I clean my apartment when I'm feeling stressed. It always cheers me up! I hate being in a dirty, untidy place so washing up and making everything clean and tidy makes me happy.

#### Exercise 2

- 1 watching, sitting
- 2 running
- 3 thinking, talking
- 4 being

## Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

## Exercise 4

- 1 After
- 2 prepositions

## Exercise 5

- 1 visiting
- 2 being
- 3 reading
- 4 going
- going
- 5 playing
- 6 revising

## **Exercise 6**

- 1 going, watching
- 2 to learn, taking
- 3 to help, to carry

#### Exercise 7

Students' own answers.

## Page 121

## **LISTENING PART 4: TRAINING**

## Exercise 1

Conversation 1: angry

Conversation 2: worried

Conversation 3: excited

Conversation 4: sad

## Track 076

**Narrator:** One. You will hear two friends talking. Why is Lisa angry with Alfrie?

**Alfie:** What's the matter, Lisa? **Lisa:** Don't you know, Alfie?

**Alfie:** I know I lost your tablet, but I got you a new one.

**Lisa:** It's not the tablet. You didn't come to my birthday party. I don't care about not getting a present, but how could you forget my party?! I'm so disappointed.

**Narrator:** Two. You will hear a mum and a dad talking about their daughter, Alison. Where's Alison now?

Dad: It's late. Why isn't Alison home?

**Mum:** She's with her friends. They went for a pizza. I expect she'll be back soon.

**Dad:** It's almost 10 o'clock. I rang her mobile just now and she didn't answer. I'm afraid something's happened.

**Mum:** Oh, they were planning to see a crime film called The Party after the pizza. She'll be at the cinema. That's why she didn't answer.

**Narrator:** Three. You will hear Jill and Lenny talking about Jill's holiday. What has Jill never done before?

**Lenny:** Are you ready for your holiday, Iill?

**Jill:** Yes, my suitcase is packed. I can't wait to get on the plane tomorrow.

**Lenny:** Is it your first holiday abroad? **Jill:** No, I've been to Spain and France a couple of times, but I've never flown anywhere. My cousins are coming too, so there'll be 5 of us including my parents.

**Lenny:** Have fun. **Narrator:** Four. You will hear Lara saying goodbye to her friend Tom.

What's Tom going to do?

**Lara:** Bye, Tom, I'm so sorry you're leaving the company.

**Tom:** I'm not going far, Lara. I'm not leaving town! You know where I live. I'm staying in the same house. We'll still be friends. There'll be lots of chances to keep in touch

**Lara:** But we won't see you so much, now you're moving to a different place of work. It won't be the same here.

## Exercise 2

2 A 3

3 C

4 B

## PUSH YOURSELF B1

- 1 going to the park, getting wet and cold
- 2 coming to the beach, move
- 3 study computing, getting a good job
- 4 visiting Paris, go up the Eiffel Tower

1 to + infinitive - can't be bothered to, plan to, hope to -ing form - don't mind, can't stand, feel like, be keen on, excited about

#### Exercise 3

1	d	<b>4</b> c	<b>7</b> a
2		<b>5</b> b	<b>8</b> e
3	g	6 h	

#### **Exercise 4**

Students' own answers.

## Page 122

## **SPEAKING**

## **Exercise 1**

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

1 Sara

2 Tom

3 Mike

## Track 077

1

Man: What's the matter, Sara?

**Sara:** My friend isn't speaking to me and I don't know why. It started a week ago. She doesn't say 'hello' to me when I arrive in the morning and she doesn't wait for me after classes, but she won't say why she's angry with me. She says I should know, but I don't! I'm really stressed about it.

2

**Woman:** You look tired, Mike. Are you OK?

Mike: Not really. I just can't sleep at the moment. I'm worried about my exams and my future and I can't get to sleep. Every night, I study until very late and I feel very tired, but when I go to bed I can't stop thinking. In the morning, I'm even more tired.

3

Man: You seem worried, Tom. Do you want to talk about it?

**Tom:** I'm having a bad time at work. My problem is that I don't get on with my boss – she's not a nice person. She never says 'good morning' or 'please' or 'thank you' and she often gets angry and talks to me in a rude way. When she does this, I feel really stressed! I like my job and the other people I work with but I can't stand her! Should I leave my job?

## **Exercise 3**

- 1 She isn't speaking to her. She doesn't say 'hello' to her in the morning or wait for her after classes.
- 2 Because he's worried about his exams and his future and he can't sleep.
- 3 His boss. When she gets angry she speaks to him in a rude way.

#### **Exercise 4**

1 B 2 C 3 A

## Track 078

A

Man: If this girl is really a friend, she should tell you why she's angry with you. Tell her that you're sorry that you upset her but there's nothing more you can do. Then stop worrying about it. A person like this is not a good friend. Try to spend time with other friends and forget about her.

B

Woman: You should stop studying so much and take some time to relax before you go to bed. It's not a good idea to work on a computer just before you sleep; try to do something different. Take a bath or read an interesting book. If you are worried about the future, why don't you talk to a friend about it? Talking about a problem makes most people feel better.

.

Man: You shouldn't leave your job if you enjoy it! Why don't you ask some other people if they feel the same? What about asking your boss very politely to change the way she speaks to you? If you're polite to her, it's more difficult for her to be rude to you.

#### **Exercise 5**

#### A

Tell her, stop worrying

B

You should, It's not a good idea to, try to, Why don't you

C

You shouldn't, Why don't you, What about

## Exercises 6 & 7

Students' own answers.

## Page 123

## WRITING

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## **Exercise 2**

He wants some advice because he has a problem.

## **Exercise 3**

- His English course is very difficult.
   The teachers talk very fast. He doesn't understand when people speak to him.
- 2 He doesn't want to spend time with students from his own country because they don't speak English. He is shy and not confident about his English.

## **Exercise 4**

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 5

- 1 say thank you for an email: Thanks very much for your email; Thanks for getting in touch
- 2 say they are happy about receiving an email: It was great to hear from you; Good to hear from you
- 3 ask for advice (Felix): I'd like to ask you for some advice; What do you think I should do? agree to give advice (Alice): Here's what I'd do
- 4 end an email: Hope to hear from you soon; Write soon and good luck!

## Exercises 6 & 7

Students' own answers.

## Page 124

# EXAM FOCUS READING PART 2

#### Exercise 1

1 T

2 F You answer seven questions.

3 T

4 F The questions come before the texts.

5 T

## Exercise 2

1	В	4	С	<b>7</b> C
2	A	5	В	
3	В	6	Α	

## Page 125

## LISTENING PART 4

## Exercise 1

1	5	3	1	5	3
2	2	4	1		
-					

#### Exercise 2

1	В	3 A	5 E
2	C	4 C	

## Track 079

**Narrator:** For each question, choose the correct answer.

One. You will hear two friends talking about a restaurant they've been to. What did they like about it?

**Woman:** What did you think of that restaurant? My steak wasn't really cooked enough.

Man: A bit raw, was it? Well you don't pay much there, so you can't expect the best food in town.

**Woman:** Yeah. The waiters did a good job, but they weren't very friendly. But you're right about the bill – it wasn't much at all.

Man: And that made the evening better!
Narrator: Two. You will hear a woman telling a friend about her new colleague.
What's her new colleague like?

Man: What's your new colleague like?
Woman: Well, the important thing for me is that he does everything I ask – not like some of the others who do almost nothing! And he's happy to talk to anyone. His jokes are terrible though! I'm sure he'll be promoted soon!

ery

ing

an

OU

**Narrator:** Three. You will hear a woman leaving a message for her husband. What does she want him to do?

**Woman:** Leo, on my way home from work I'm going to stop at the supermarket and do some shopping, so I'll be a little late. We can have roast chicken for dinner. Can you start getting it ready when you get in? You won't have to go to the shops – everything you need is in the fridge. Thanks!

**Narrator:** Four. You will hear two friends talking about an exhibition. How does the man know about it?

**Man:** There's an interesting art exhibition on at the moment.

**Woman:** Is that the one with paintings of flowers? There are posters all over town.

Man: Are there? I haven't noticed any posters. But yes, it is the flower paintings, at the museum near the station. My brother's a guide there, and he keeps talking about the artist. He knows her quite well.

Woman: Wow!

**Narrator:** Five. You will hear a man giving a message to passengers at a train station. Why is he giving them the message?

Man: This is a message for all passengers. Because of the bad weather, I'm afraid there were delays to some journeys at the weekend. If you experienced problems, please visit our website and click on 'refunds'. If your delay was more than 30 minutes, Central Trains will return the price that you paid for your ticket. Have a good journey!

Page 126

the

d

## **REAL WORLD**

Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

Page 127

Exercise 2

- 1 F You should only accept invitations from people you know.
- 2
- 3 F It's often easier because people who are travelling are more interested in meeting new people.
- 4 F It takes time to meet people and become friends.

## Exercise 3

- 1 make
- 2 enrol
- 3 have a lot
- 4 take up
- 5 get to
- 6 get on well

## **Exercise 4**

1 b

2 1

**3** a

Track 080

1

**Receptionist:** Hello, Melbourne Animal Rescue. How can I help you?

**Student:** Hello. My name's Maria and I've just moved to Melbourne. I love working with animals and I'd like to do some volunteering work. Is it possible to work here as a volunteer?

Receptionist: Yes, we do run a volunteer programme. I should warn you that our volunteers don't usually work with the animals. But we do use volunteers to help with collecting money. We have teams out on the streets most weekends, collecting money and giving out leaflets.

**Student:** That's great. Can I become a volunteer, please?

**Receptionist:** Yeah sure. You need to drop in here and fill out some forms, and you can meet the other members of our team. Then we can take it from there.

**Student:** OK. Thank you. Is it OK if I come to the centre this afternoon?

**Receptionist:** This afternoon would be great. We're open till six.

**Student:** OK. See you later. Bye.

Receptionist: Bye.

2

**Receptionist:** Hi. Can I help you? **Student:** Yes. I'm interested in the photography course. Can you give me some information about it, please?

**Receptionist:** Sure. What would you like to know?

**Student:** Do I need an expensive camera to do the course?

**Receptionist:** No, not at all. As long as you have your own camera, that's fine, but it doesn't need to be a top of the range one and you can also use some of the cameras we have here at the college.

**Student:** That's great. And how many people will be on the course?

**Receptionist:** There are about ten people, so you'll get to know all the other students quite well.

**Student:** That's good. OK. I'd like to enrol on the course, please.

**Receptionist:** Sure. Have you done any courses here before?

Student: No. It's my first time.

**Receptionist:** OK. So, I'll just have to take some details from you, and I'll need to see your visa.

Student: Yes, I have my visa here.

**Receptionist:** OK, that's all in order. So, can you tell me your name and your date of birth?

3

**Receptionist:** Hi there. How can I help you?

**Student:** Hi. Is it possible to hire tennis courts here?

Receptionist: It certainly is.

**Student:** Oh, good. And do you have to be a member of the club, or can anyone use the courts?

Receptionist: Anyone can hire a court, but there are different rates for members and non-members. So, in the evenings, it's \$24 per hour for non-members, and \$12 an hour for members. If you think you'll play more than twice a week, you'd be better off joining, but if you're only going to play once a week, it's probably better just to pay each time you play.

**Student:** OK. I think I'll play maybe once a week.

**Receptionist:** OK, so it probably doesn't make sense for you to pay to become a member.

**Student:** So, how can I book a court? **Receptionist:** You can call us, or you can do it online on the club website.

**Student:** OK. Thank you for your help. **Receptionist:** You're welcome. Have a nice day!

## Exercise 5

- 1 as a volunteer
- 2 OK if
- 3 interested in, give me
- 4 to enrol
- 5 have to be
- 6 book

## **Exercise 6**

1	f	3	b	5	d
2	a	4	е	6	С

#### Exercises 7 & 8

the city: it's the capital of Victoria, on south-east coast of Australia, vibrant modern city, a good way

to see the city is on a sightseeing bus, or a boat on the river.

beaches and surfing: some amazing beaches near the city; Brighton Beach is famous for its beach huts used for changing; surfing is popular; there are lifeguards on most beaches to keep people safe.

sport: cricket is popular; Australia has one of the best cricket teams in the world, important games played at Melbourne Stadium.

Phillip Island: close to Melbourne, you can get there by boat; can see koalas and kangaroos, and in the evening you can watch the penguin parade, when penguins come out of the sea and walk along the beach to sleep in their burrows.

## Exercise 9

Students' own answers.

## **UNIT 10**

Page 128

## **VOCABULARY**

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

1 0 3 B

#### Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

## Page 129

## **LISTENING PART 1: TRAINING**

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## Track 081

Narrator: One. What time does the play begin tonight?

Anna: What time's the play tonight,

Emma: 7.00 I think, I'll look at the ticket. I'm wrong, it starts at 7.30, but we should get there early.

Anna: Shall we meet in front of the theatre at 7.15 - that gives us 15 minutes before the play begins.

Emma: I think we need more time, Anna. Shall we say 7 o'clock?

4 C

Anna: OK.

## Exercise 2

2 A

3 C

## Track 082

Narrator: Two. How far away is the best sports centre?

Man: Is there a sports centre near here? Woman: Well there's a really good one in Yorkton. That's got everything. But that's 20km away.

Man: Isn't there one nearer?

Woman: Well, Barton, which is 15 km from here has one, but it's not very good. There is a small one in Linton, but that doesn't have a swimming pool. It's only 5 km away, so it depends what you want to do there I suppose.

Man: OK, thanks.

Narrator: Three. What are Carl and Jack going to see at the stadium?

Jack: Are you coming to rugby practice on Saturday, Carl?

Carl: No, I can't. I've got tickets for a big hockey match. The Rovers are playing! Do you want to come with me, Jack?

Jack: Thanks, I'd love to. Where's the

Carl: It's at the football stadium.

Narrator: Four. Where will the friends

Man: So where shall we meet this evening? How about the bridge as usual?

Woman: Oh, my bus doesn't go that way anymore. What about meeting at the statue?

Man: It'll take me a long time to get there. The town square is better for me.

Man: No problem, I'll see you there at 7.

## Page 130

## READING

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## Exercise 2

- 1 Manhattan
- 2 The High Line is a park. It is above the city. The Lowline is a project for a future park. It will be underground.

#### Exercise 3

- 1 a railway line
- 2 The line closed.
- 3 2.33 kilometres long
- 4 a great view of the city
- 5 a big, empty space under the city
- 6 They will use special technology to bring sunlight underground.

## **Exercise 4**

- 1 railway line
- 2 benches
- 3 district
- 4 fresh air
- 5 path
- 6 middle
- 7 space
- 8 sunlight

## **Exercise 5**

Students' own answers.

## Page 131

#### GRAMMAR

## Exercise 1

- 1 the future
- 2 sure
- 3 not sure
- 4 infinitive

#### Exercise 2

- 1 might
- 2 will
- 3 may
- 4 won't

#### Exercise 3

- 1 might/may come
- 2 won't grow
- 3 might/may turn
- 4 might/may not be

#### Exercise 4

- 1 It was a shoe factory.
- 2 It's a green space.
- 3 Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 6

- 1 Mr Jones will offer the city €1 million euros for the land / to try to buy the land.
  - He might turn the land into a car park. He may build some apartments.
- 2 Mrs Greene says the city won't sell the land because it's a great space in the middle of the city. They might make it into a public park. They may build a new swimming pool.

## Track 083

Mr Jones: I'll offer the city €1 million euros for the old factory and I might build a car park on the land. There's a lot of traffic in the city centre and not enough parking. I'll make a LOT of money from a car park without having to spend very much. I may also build some expensive apartments there to sell.

Mrs Greene: The city won't sell the land. We'll definitely keep it because it's a great space in the middle of the city. I think we might make it into a public park. We may also build a new swimming pool on it, if that's what the community wants.

## Exercise 7

Students' own answers.

## Page 132

## **VOCABULARY**

## **Exercise 1**

1 E 4 D 7 C 8 F 2 A 5 B 3 G 6 H

- 1 Come out of the library and turn right.
- 2 Go straight on down the main street.
- 3 Turn right at the traffic lights into Chester Road

- 4 Go over the bridge and go straight on
- 5 Take the first turning on the right into New Road.
- 6 You'll see it on your left.

## Track 084

**Woman:** Come out of the library and turn right. Go straight on down the main street. Turn right at the traffic lights into Chester Road. Go over the bridge and go straight on. Take the first turning on the right into New Road. You'll see it on your left.

#### Exercise 3

the cinema

## **Exercise 4**

- 1 supermarket
- 2 theatre



Man: Excuse me. Do you know where the [beep] is?

**Woman:** Yes. Come out of the station and turn left. Then turn left into Main Street. Then take the first left and go straight over the roundabout. You'll see it on the right.

2

**Man:** Excuse me, where's the [beep] **Woman:** Come out of the station and turn left. Then turn left into Main Street.
Go straight on and turn left at the traffic lights into Chester road. It's on the right.

## Exercise 5

- 1 c 3 b
- 2 d 4 a

## Track 086

- 1 Excuse me. Do you know where the station is?
- 2 Can you tell me how to get to the library?
- 3 Excuse me. Could you give me directions to the town square?
- 4 Could you tell me where the museum is?

#### Exercise 6

- 1 a rising ₹, then falling ≥ intonation
- 2 a falling intonation \
- 3 a rising ✓, then falling ≥ intonation
- 4 a falling intonation

## Exercises 7 & 8

Students' own answers.

## Page 133

## **SPEAKING PART 1: TRAINING**

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## **Exercise 2**

1 d 3 a 5 b 2 f 4 e 6 c

#### Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

## **Exercise 4**

1 B 2 C 3 A

## Track 087

## Narrator: A

**Student:** One week ago I met two of my classmates at the bus station. We went to the cinema and afterwards we bought burgers and ate them in the park. It was good fun.

## Narrator: B

**Student:** I don't want to stay in my home town because it's quite boring. I'd like to move to a big city because I could go shopping and go to restaurants and the theatre in the evenings.

## Narrator: C

**Student:** There are houses and an apartment building but there aren't many cars. The houses have nice gardens and it's quiet. I've always lived there, and I like it very much.

## **Exercise 5**

Students' own answers.

## **PUSH YOURSELF B1**

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers

#### **Exercise 2**

- 1 public transport
- 2 polluted
- 3 traffic free
- 4 skyscraper
- 5 traffic jam
- 6 pedestrian
- 7 pavement
- 8 historic

## Page 134

## GRAMMAR

## **Exercise 1**

- A bank
- **B** restaurant
- C police station
- **D** post office

#### Exercise 2

- 1 bank
- 2 restaurant
- 3 post office

## Track 088

1

**Woman:** Hello, I'd like to change some money, please. Can I change €150 into American dollars?

Man: Yes. No problem. I'll check how much that will be in dollars. One euro is one point one seven American dollars. So €150 will give \$174 American. Is that OK?

Woman: Yes, that's fine.

Man: Shall I put the money in an envelope for you?

Woman: Thank you.

2

Man: Have you finished?

**Woman:** Yes, thank you. It was delicious. **Man:** OK, I'll take your plates. ... Would you like anything else? Shall I bring the dessert menu?

**Woman:** No, thank you. No dessert. But could I have a cup of coffee, please? Black, no sugar.

3

Man: I'd like to send this letter to France. Woman: Certainly. That will be €1.75 for an ordinary letter or €2.50 if you send it express.

Man: How long will it take for an ordinary letter to arrive?

Woman: Two to three days.

Man: No that's too long ... I need it to get there as soon as possible.

**Woman:** Shall I send the letter express then?

Man: Yes, please.

**Woman:** OK. Can you sign here and I'll put the letter straight in the post bag.

## Exercise 3

- **1** €150
- 2 no, coffee
- 3 France

## Exercise 4

- 1 will
- 2 shall

#### Exercise 5

- 1 Shall
- 2 1
- 3 Shall
- 4 1

## **Exercise 6**

- 1 shall we have
- 2 'll tell
- 3 Shall ... give?
- 4 'll phone

## Exercise 7

Students' own answers.

#### Page 135

## WRITING

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- 1 to thank Julie for taking her to visit Paris
- 2 She visited the Louvre, went up the Eiffel Tower, went on a boat trip on the Seine
- 3 Her favourite moment was when they went up the Eiffel Tower because she has wanted to visit it for so long.
- 4 that she can come and visit her in Istanbul soon.
- **5** She is looking forward to showing Julie her favourite places.
- 6 Julie's friends, Marie and Lilou

#### Exercise 3

I had a great time!, I loved visiting ..., it's the biggest ... I've ever visited, I also really enjoyed ..., my favourite moment was ..., I'll never forget seeing ..., It was great to meet them.

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 great to meet
- 2 also really enjoyed
- 3 favourite moment
- 4 I've ever visited
- 5 never forget
- 6 had a great time
- 7 loved visiting

#### Exercises 5 & 6

Students' own answers.

#### Page 136

## EXAM FOCUS LISTENING PART 1

#### Exercise 1

- 1 F You hear five short recordings.
- 2 F You choose from 3 options.
- 3 T
- 4 T
- 5 F They're all dialogues.

#### **Exercise 2**

1 A 3 A 5 C 2 B 4 B

Track 089

**Narrator:** For each question, choose the correct answer.

Now we are ready to start. Look at question one. One. Where did Chris go yesterday?

**Woman:** Did you have a good day with your cousin, yesterday, Chris?

Man: Yes, thanks.

Woman: What did you do?

Man: Well, he really wanted to go to the theatre, but we couldn't get tickets. So we thought about the castle or the museum. We chose the castle because my cousin always goes to museums and he liked the idea of doing something different.

**Narrator:** Two. What is the woman looking for?

Man: Are you lost?

**Woman:** Yes! A man in the supermarket told me the station was around this corner, but I think he gave me the wrong information.

Man: Mm. Maybe you turned the wrong way when you came out. Just go back up this street, and turn right at the top. It's opposite the bank.

**Woman:** Turn right, opposite the bank. Thanks!

**Narrator:** Three. What is broken in the woman's house?

Man: Good afternoon, Mrs. Philips. I hope your cooker isn't broken again!

**Woman:** Hello. Come in. Don't worry, the cooker's worked well since you repaired it! It's something else I want you to look at – a door. It doesn't open very easily.

Man: No problem. Can you move that lamp before I start? I don't want to break it.

Woman: Yes, of course.

**Narrator:** Four. Why will the man stay at home this evening?

**Woman:** Why can't you come out this evening? Are you still ill with that cold?

Man: It's better now, thanks. I'm really upset I can't come.

Woman: Yes, it's such a shame.

Man: And I even finished work early, but then my sister called to say she can't come round to look after the children, so I have to stay at home. Helen will come without me.

**Narrator:** Five. How did the woman find out about the job?

Man: Your new job sounds great. Did you read about it in a magazine?

**Woman:** I don't think most companies do that type of advertising anymore. They just use the internet.

Man: So is that how you found your job?
Woman: Actually, my friend told me
about it when I was out with her last week.
That was before the company did any
online advertising.

## Page 137

## **SPEAKING PART 1**

## Exercise 1

- 1 live
- 2 two
- 3 tell
- 4 understand
- 5 three

## Exercises 2, 3, 4 & 5

Students' own answers.

## Page 138

## **REAL WORLD**

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

## Suggested answers

- 1 People fought wild animals or other fighters in front of crowds.
- 2 money
- 3 flying machines

#### Exercise 3

- 1 b 3 b
- **2** a **4** a

## **Exercise 4**

- 1 T
- **2** T
- 3 F It's often hot.
- 4 F It's also open at night.
- 5 T

## Page 139

## **Exercise 5**

- 1 your tickets
- 2 early
- 3 queues
- 4 video guide
- **5** Take
- 6 Visit

## Exercise 6

1 c 2 d 3 a

## Track 090

1

**Guide:** So, now you can see how big the building really was and you can imagine what it was like for people to come here to watch the plays and fights. Are there any questions?

Tourist: Yes. How old is it?

Guide: It's nearly 2,000 years old.

**Tourist:** Wow! It's really big. How many seats were there?

**Guide:** We don't know for sure, but they reckon between 50,000 and 80,000.

That's a lot of people!

Tourist: Yes. Wow!

Guide: Anything else?

Tourist: Yes. How long did it take to build?

**Guide:** It was actually quite fast. It took less than ten years to build, which is pretty amazing when you think that they had no machines and everything was done by hand.

**Tourist 1:** Yes. Oh, what's that hole in the ground?

**Guide:** That was one of the entrances they used to send gladiators and animals into the arena. There was a wooden door over the hole. The door opened, and animals or gladiators appeared. And in fact, that's where we're going now, so shall we move on?

2

Boy: This is lovely, isn't it?

**Girl:** Yes. It's so peaceful. I see you have a backpack. Are you travelling?

**Boy:** Yes. I'm travelling around Europe. **Girl:** Me too! Have you been to any other cities in Italy?

**Boy:** Yes. I was in Florence last week. That was amazing!

**Girl:** Yes, everyone says it's beautiful. Maybe I'll go there next.

**Boy:** What other countries have you been to?

**Girl:** Lots! I was in Spain last week, and before that I was in France. But I love Italy!

**Boy:** Yes. Rome is an amazing city. But it's very hot. It's nice to be here, next to the water.

**Girl:** I agree. And the fountain's beautiful, isn't it?

**Boy:** Yes. Shall we throw some money in? They say that if you throw money in the Trevi Fountain, you'll come back to Rome one day.

Girl: Yes, good idea. Here we go.

3

Official: Next, please.

**Tourist:** Hello. Can I have two tickets, please? Is there a discount for students?

**Official:** Yes, there is. Do you have your student cards?

Tourist: Yes, here you are.

**Official:** OK. Thank you. That's 30 Euros, please.

**Tourist:** Thank you. Is it OK to take photos in the museum?

Official: Normal photos are fine, but there's no flash photography. And we also ask you not to spend too long taking

photos, if you're holding other people up. **Tourist:** OK. And what time does the museum close?

**Official:** It closes at 6.30 this evening. There'll be a bell 20 minutes before closing time, and we ask you to leave promptly.

**Tourist:** OK. And is there a gift shop? **Official:** Yes. If you follow the audio guide tour through the museum, you'll end up in the gift shop. You can't miss it.

Tourist: Thank you.

Official: You're welcome. Enjoy your visit.

## Exercise 7

- 1 Are you
- 2 Everyone says
- 3 Is there
- 4 Is it OK
- 5 What time

### **Exercise 8**

1 a 3 b 5 b 2 a 4 a

#### Exercises 9 & 10

the Colloseum: theatre and gladiator fights during the Roman Empire

the Circus Maximus: horse and chariot races, up to 250,000 people watching, can't see much these days

the Trevi Fountain: 26m high, biggest fountain in Rome; statues of horses and people; built from same stone as the Colloseum

the Piazza Navona: large square, three fountains, live music and art

#### **Exercise 11**

Students' own answers.

## UNIT 11

Page 140

## READING

#### Exercise 1

1 B 3 C 2 A 4 D

## Exercise 2

- 1 Carola
- 2 Rani
- 3 David

#### Exercise 3

- 1 Rani saves money by buying reduced items and items with a discount when she is shopping and never borrowing or lending money.
- 2 Carola likes upcycling things from fleamarkets.
- 3 He never keeps receipts.

## Page 141

## **VOCABULARY**

## **Exercise 1**

- 1 salary
- 2 discount
- 3 receipt
- 4 sales
- 5 bill
- 6 reduced items

#### Exercise 2

- 1 costs
- 2 saving
- 3 waste
- 4 spent
- 5 lend
- 6 earn

## Exercise 3

- 1 borrow
- 2 sales
- 3 discount
- 4 lend
- 5 cost
- 6 bill
- 7 paid
- 8 earn
- 9 salary
- 10 save

#### **Exercise 4**

Students' own answers.

## Page 142

## LISTENING

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## Exercise 2

- Marta department store, garden centre
  - Josh supermarket, music shop
- 2 Marta summer clothes, birthday present for mum
  - Josh food and drink for a party
- 3 Marta plans to go for dinner in a restaurant.
  Josh plans to go to a party.

## Exercise 3

- 1 to find something for her mum's birthday present. Her mum loves plants.
- 2 a surprise party

## Track 091

Marta: I'm going shopping with my sister this Saturday. We're meeting in front of Darby's, the big department store, at 11.30 and we're going to go shopping for summer clothes. I saw a dress online that I liked and I'm going to try it on in the shop if they have it in my size. I hope so! I don't like the changing room there because it's always busy, but the shop assistants are really helpful. We're also going to look for a birthday present for my mum. She loves plants, so we're going to go to the garden centre to see if we can find something. In the evening, we're having dinner at a new restaurant called Milo's by the river. It opens at 7.00 pm and we've booked a table. I'm really looking forward to it!

Josh: Jez and I are going shopping for the food and drink for Alfie's surprise party on Saturday afternoon. The bus to town leaves at 2.00 pm and we're meeting outside the supermarket at 2.30. I'm going to pay for everything by card and I mustn't forget to ask for a receipt at the till. Alfie's friends want to share the cost of the food and drink, so we need to have something to show how much we spend. After the food shopping, we're going to the music shop. Alfie's parents have bought him some drums as a birthday present and they asked us to collect them. Alfie's dad gave me £50 in cash to pay for a taxi, but it's not going to cost that much, so I must remember to give him the change. The party is starting at 7.00 so we're going to take everything straight to Alfie's house by taxi.

#### **Exercise 4**

1	b	3	а	5	b
2	b	4	a	6	a

## **VOCABULARY**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 try it on, size
- 2 changing rooms, shop assistants
- 3 by card, till
- 4 in cash
- 5 change

## **Exercise 2**

- 1 try on
- 2 size
- 3 changing room
- 4 shop assistant
- 5 by card
- 6 in cash
- 7 change
- 8 till

## Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

## Page 143

## GRAMMAR

## Exercise 1

the future

## Rule

fixed plans

## Exercise 2

- 1 are going
- 2 're visiting
- 3 're travelling
- 4 're staying
- 5 are ... leaving
- 6 're flying
- 7 're coming
- 8 're not/aren't staying

- 9 's/is meeting
- 10 're going
- 11 're taking

## Exercise 3

## Suggested answers

- 1 On Tuesday, he's playing football at the leisure centre at 7.00 pm.
- 2 On Wednesday he's going to the dentist's at 9.00 am.
- 3 On Thursday, he's having a guitar lesson at 6.30 pm.
- 4 On Friday, he isn't working/going to work. He's going running in the park with Liz in the morning.
- 5 On Saturday afternoon, he's going shopping with Jez.

## **Exercise 4**

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 5

a schedule or timetable

#### **Exercise 6**

- 1 closes
- 2 is having
- 3 leaves
- 4 is visiting
- 5 're meeting, starts

## Exercise 7

- 1 leaves
- 2 're/are going
- 3 ends
- 4 's/is meeting

## Page 144

## **LISTENING PART 5: TRAIN**

## Exercises 1 & 2

Students' own answers.

## Track 092

Paula: Maria, I'm going to buy some new clothes for my holiday. Has the supermarket got lots of summer clothes at

Maria: Not lots, Paula. I looked for a sun hat there last week. They didn't have any. You could get a swimsuit there they've got a lot of them. I'm going to get one for myself.

#### **Exercise 3**

1 F 3 C 4 D

## Track 093

Paula: Maria, I'm going to buy some new clothes for my holiday. Has the supermarket got lots of summer clothes at the moment?

Maria: Not lots, Paula. I looked for a sun hat there last week. They didn't have any. You could get a swimsuit there they've got a lot of them. I'm going to get one for myself.

Paula: Great. ... I could try the clothes shop near your college.

Maria: They've got some T-shirts you'd love - there's one that's perfect for you but the dresses are expensive!

Paula: OK. What about the department store?

Maria: I think that's good for buying trainers, but not shirts and dresses. They have so many pairs to choose from.

Paula: Do you go shopping at the market?

Maria: I bought a sun hat there last year. but it didn't last long. The market's a good place for buying socks - you can get six pairs for a pound.

Paula: And I suppose I could get things

Maria: But you need to see swimsuits and shorts before buying them. I've just remembered. There are half-price sun hats on the Love-Clothes site.

Paula: Great.

## GRAMMAR

#### Exercise 1

the future

## Rule

our intentions

## Exercise 2

- 1 is/'s going to go shopping
- 2 is she going to learn
- 3 are ... going to get
- 4 'm/am not going to walk
- 5 Are ... going to buy

## Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

## **Exercise 4**

/gəʊntə/ The 'g' at the end of going to is not pronounced and to is pronounced with the weak form /tə/.

## Track 094

Man: What are you going to do this weekend? Do you have any plans?

Woman: Not really. I'm going to stay at home and watch TV this evening.

Man: Yes, so am !! And I'm going to go to bed early for once.

## **Exercise 5**

Students' own answers.

- 1 'm working
- 2 's going
- 3 starts
- 4 're going to watch
- 5 leaves
- 6 's taking

## Page 145

## **READING PART 1: TRAINING**

**2** B

3 C

4 A

## **PUSH YOURSELF B1**

#### Exercise 1

1	d	4 b	7	g
2	е	<b>5</b> c		а
3	f	6 h		

#### **Exercise 2**

Students' own answers.

## Page 146

## WRITING

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- 1 the clothes department because of the on-trend clothes and the stylish changing rooms
- 2 They were friendly but there weren't many of them.
- 3 The reviewer had to wait a long time to pay and the prices were high.
- 4 good the reviewer says 'I would recommend Bryson's'.

#### Exercise 3

## Talking about good points

One of the best things about it is ... For me, the high point of Bryson's is ...

## Talking about bad points

The worst thing about Bryson's is ... Another negative point for me is ... Don't go there if ...

## Giving a final opinion

Overall ...

## Exercises 4, 5 & 6

Students' own answers.

## Page 147

## **SPEAKING**

## **Exercise 1**

- 1 Do you enjoy shopping?
- 2 What sort of things do you like buying?
- 3 Where do you go shopping?
- 4 What's your favourite shop?
- 5 Have you bought anything recently?
- 6 Where and when did you buy them?

## Track 095

1

**Woman:** So today I'm on the streets of London, interviewing people about their shopping habits. The first person I'm talking to is Ines. Hello, Ines! So, can you tell me – do you enjoy shopping?

Ines: No. I don't.

**Woman:** OK, but when you have to go shopping where do you go?

**Ines:** The supermarket near my house and online.

**Woman:** What's your favourite shop? **Ines:** Well, I really don't have a favourite shop.

**Woman:** And other than food – have you bought anything recently? Something like new clothes or a new computer?

**Ines:** Yes, last month I bought a new bike. **Woman:** OK! So tell me about it. Where did you buy it? What kind of bike is it?

**Ines:** I bought it in a sports shop. It's a road bike and it's very good. But I still don't like shopping.

#### 2

**Woman:** And next up is Luca. So what about you, Luca? Do you enjoy shopping? **Luca:** Yes, I do. I like shopping a lot. I especially like clothes shopping. That's why I love going to cities on holiday.

**Woman:** And what sort of things do you like buying? Where do you go shopping? **Luca:** I really like wearing fashionable things, so when I have money, I like buying clothes and shoes a lot. There's a big

clothes and shoes a lot. There's a big shopping centre in my town and I go there. It's very crowded, but I really like it because it has a lot of shops!

Woman: And what's your favourite shop? Luca: I don't know, there are so many. There's a clothes shop called *Place* that I like a lot. That's probably my favourite shop as the shop assistants are really helpful and I always see things I want to buy.

**Woman:** Have you bought anything recently?

**Luca:** Umm ... Yes, I bought some boots – some really nice black boots – from a department store in London last weekend. Unfortunately, they weren't in the sale, so they were quite expensive, but they look great.

#### Exercise 2

	Ines	Luca
Enjoy shopping?	no	yes
Where shop?	supermarket, online	shopping centre
Favourite shop?	doesn't have a favourite shop	Place – a clothes shop
Bought recently?	a new road bike	black boots
When and where?	bought in a sports shop last month	bought in a department store in London at the weekend

## **Exercise 3**

## Suggested answers

Luca gives better answers than Ines because he gives more detail, including giving examples.

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 That's why
- **2** so
- 3 because
- **4** as
- **5** so

## Track 096

Woman: And next up, is Luca. So what about you, Luca? Do you enjoy shopping? Luca: Yes, I do. I like shopping a lot. I especially like clothes shopping. That's why I love going to cities on holiday.

Woman: And what sort of things do you like buying? Where do you go shopping?
Luca: I really like wearing fashionable things, so when I have money, I like buying clothes and shoes a lot. There's a big shopping centre in my town and I go there. It's very crowded, but I really like it because it has a lot ofshops!

Woman: And what's your favourite shop?
Luca: I don't know, there are so many.
There's a clothes shop called *Place* that I like a lot. That's probably my favourite shop as the shop assistants are really helpful and I always see things I want to buy.

**Woman:** Have you bought anything recently?

**Luca:** Umm ... Yes, I bought some boots – some really nice black boots – from a department store in London last weekend. Unfortunately, they weren't in the sale, so they were quite expensive, but they look great.

A

## Exercises 6 & 7

Students' own answers.

### Page 148

## EXAM FOCUS READING PART 1

#### Exercise 1

Shorter texts – label on a product, sign on a wall, shop notice

Longer texts – email, text message, post-it note, web message, notice on a work/ school/club noticeboard

#### Exercise 2

1	C	<b>3</b> C	<b>5</b> B
	Α	4 A	<b>6</b> B

## Page 149

## **LISTENING PART 5**

#### **Exercise 1**

- 1 a conversation between two people
- 2 five
- 3 You hear these in the order you read them.
- 4 eight
- 5 will not

#### Exercise 2

1	Α	3	G	<b>5</b> D
2	Н	4	В	

## Track 097

**Narrator:** For each question, choose the correct answer.

You will hear Alicia talking to a friend about her party. What job will Alicia do each day?

Man: Hi, Alicia. Are you ready for your party?

Alicia: Nearly. I've decided to do one job each day, starting on Monday, when I'm going to get some new plates and glasses. I haven't got enough.

Man: Right. And what about Tuesday? Don't you have an appointment at the hairdresser's?

**Alicia:** I decided I don't need to do that. I'm going shopping for a new dress that day instead.

Man: And on Wednesday?
Alicia: I don't know yet.

Man: Have you remembered to ask everyone to the party? The people who live near you, for example?

**Alicia:** I forgot about them! I'll do that on Wednesday. And on Thursday I'm planning to clean the house.

Man: It'll get dirty again before the party!

**Alicia:** You're right. I'll download the music that day, instead.

Man: Good idea. What are you going to do on Friday?

**Alicia:** Get the snacks. I'm not going to cook anything. It's too much work.

Man: And on Saturday?

**Alicia:** In the morning I'll clean the house. So I'll have lots of time to put my dress on and do my make up before the party.

Man: Great! See you there!

## Page 150

## **REAL WORLD**

## Exercise 1

1	Α	3	D
	C	4	В

#### Exercise 2

They use cards or smartphones.

## Page 151

## **Exercise 3**

- 1 F Most shops only accept kronor.
- 2 T
- **3** F You can pay by credit card for most things.
- 4 T
- **5** F There are cash machines all over the city.
- 6 F You need to use your pin.

## **Exercise 4**

1	b	4	d	7	а
2	h	5	f	8	С
3	е	6	g		

## **Exercise 5**

1 d	<b>2</b> a	<b>3</b> c

## Track 098

1

Tourist: Can I have two tickets please?

Official: Certainly. Full price?

Tourist: Is there a student discount?

**Official:** Yes, there is. The full price is 130 kronor, but it's 110 kronor with the student discount. Do you have your student ID card?

Tourist: Yes, here it is.

**Official:** That's fine. So two tickets will be 220 kronor, please.

Tourist: Here you are.

**Official:** Oh, I'm sorry. We don't take cash. Only cards and smartphone payments.

**Tourist:** Oh, OK. I've got my card. Can I use contactless?

**Official:** Yes, of course. There you go. **Official:** Yes, that's gone through. So, here are your tickets. Enjoy your visit.

Tourist: Thank you.

#### 2

**Tourist:** Excuse me. Is there a cash machine near here?

Man: A Bankomat? Yes, let me think. There's one near the Royal Palace. I'm just trying to think of the best way for you to get there. It's quicker to use the back streets, but you might get lost. So, I think maybe it's best to go straight along this road until you see the Nobel Museum on your right. Then take a right turn, any one will do, and you'll see the Royal Palace. There's a Bankomat just on the right there, opposite the palace. You can't miss it.

**Tourist:** OK. Thanks. How far is it? **Man:** Oh, it's only a five-minute walk. Not too far.

Tourist: OK. Thank you.

3

**Tourist:** Hello. Can I have these things, please?

**Shopkeeper:** Of course. That's 175 kronor, please.

Tourist: Do you take cards?

**Shopkeeper:** Oh, no. I'm sorry. We don't take credit cards. We're only a small shop and it's expensive for us to process the payments.

**Tourist:** Oh. This isn't a credit card. It's a debit card.

**Shopkeeper:** Oh, OK. Problem solved. Is it contactless?

**Tourist:** No. I need to use my pin number.

**Shopkeeper:** OK, no problem. That's ready for you now. No. The other way round. Thank you. Now, if you can just put in your pin number. That's fine. If you could take your card? And here's your receipt. Thank you. Have a nice day.

Tourist: Thank you. Bye.

## Exercise 6

- 1 discount
- 2 use
- 3 cash machine
- 4 far
- 5 take
- 6 pin number

## Exercise 7

1	b	3	a	5	a
2	а	4	b		

## Exercises 8 & 9

old town: called Gamla Stan; it's on an island, you have too cross a bridge to get there; Royal Palace, home of the Swedish Royal Family; Nobel Museum has information about the Nobel Prize. currency: the krona, most common banknotes are 20, 50, 100, 200, 500; there are 1, 2, 5 and 10 kronor coins; bankomats all over the city, always the same colour.

paying for things: use your credit or debit card to take out money; some small shops don't accept credit cards; some shops still have chip and pin machines, but many now accept contactless and smartphones; new ways of paying for things are becoming popular, e.g. using your eyes to recognise you and using fingerprints.

#### Exercises 10 & 11

Students' own answers.

## **Page 152**

## **PROGRESS CHECK 4**

#### Exercise 1

1	D	3	В	5	Α
2	F	4	C	6	Е

#### Exercise 2

- 1 earn 2 lend
- 3 cost
- 4 save
- 5 pay
- 6 waste

#### Exercise 3

1	h	<b>4</b> a	<b>7</b> d
2	е	<b>5</b> b	<b>8</b> c
3		<b>6</b> a	

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 happy to
- 2 learned to
- 3 prefer to
- 4 ask

## Page 153

#### Exercise 5

- 1 size, changing room
- 2 by card, change
- 3 receipt, till

## Exercise 6

- 1 corner
- 2 roundabout
- 3 main square
- 4 district

## Exercise 7

- 1 ... because I don't like cooking.
- 2 I want to invite you ...
- 3 You need to buy some food ...
- 4 ... it stopped raining ...
- 5 ... have to study hard ...
- 6 I'd like to know which ...

## **Exercise 8**

- 1 I'm going
- 2 leaves
- 3 I have
- 4 will be

- 5 I'm going to buy
- 6 Are you going
- 7 might
- 8 may

## **Exercise 9**

- 1 Are
- 2 'll / will / might
- 3 can / shall
- 4 Do
- 5 am / 'm
- 6 be / get

## **UNIT 12**

## Page 154

## VOCABULARY

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- 1 maths
- 2 modern languages
- 3 history
- 4 biology
- 5 geography
- 6 chemistry
- 7 physics
- 8 drama

## Exercise 3

- 1 write (an) essay
- 2 do (some) research
- 3 do equations
- 4 do (an) experiment
- 5 take part (in a) performance
- 6 find out

## Exercise 4

Students' own answers.

## Page 155

## READING

## Exercise 1

Fung - wants to go to university. We don't know what job she wants to do.

Angeles - wants to be an engineer. Massimo - wants to be an accountant. Massimo already has a job.

## Exercise 2

- 1 so she could study in the city
- 2 the gaokao. She hopes that she will get a place at university.
- 3 because it's one of the best universities for studying her subject
- 4 a physics exam
- 5 to become an accountant
- 6 when he has a qualification and can change jobs

#### Exercise 3

1	f	3	b	5	d
2	е	4	С	6	а

#### Exercise 4

1 revise for, take, pass, study for, fail

## Exercise 5

- 1 revised for
- 2 fail
- 3 pass
- 4 studying for
- 5 taken

#### Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

#### Page 156

## GRAMMAR

## Exercise 1

- 1 facts that are generally true
- 2 present

## Exercise 2

- 2 doesn't understand, asks
- 3 feel, is
- 4 take, fail

## Exercise 3

- 1 in the future
- 2 present, future

## **Exercise 4**

- 2 will be, don't pass
- 3 get, won't give
- 4 'll fail, doesn't work

## Exercise 5

- 1 What will happen if I don't pass the
- 2 If students arrive late for the class, the teacher never lets them in.
- 3 If he studies late tonight, he'll be tired in the morning.
- 4 What will you give me if I help you with your essay tomorrow?

## **PUSH YOURSELF B1**

## Exercise 1

- 1 not sure
- 2 sure
- 3 unless

- 1 unless
- 2 If
- 3 unless 4 when
- 5 unless

## Page 157

## **READING PART 4: TRAINING**

Exercises 1 & 2

Students' own answers.

### Exercise 3

2 B 4 A 3 C 5 B

Page 158

## **GRAMMAR**

#### Exercise 1

1 No, No, Yes

#### Rule

1 don't know, not important

2 to be

**3** by

## Exercise 2

1 c 3 a 5 b 2 e 4 d

#### Exercise 3

1 was asked

2 isn't taught

3 was taken

4 are collected

5 was given

## LISTENING

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## Exercise 2

1 farmer

2 receptionist

3 dentist

4 engineer

5 businesswoman

6 journalist

## Track 099

1

Farmer: Everyone knows that farmers don't earn much money, but that's not the most important thing to me. I really enjoy my work. I love being outside all day in the fresh air. The problem is that I never have any holidays or days off – it's too difficult to find someone to look after the animals.

Receptionist: I enjoy my work because I like talking to people and helping them. The receptionist knows everything that's happening in the hotel. It's a very interesting job! The only problem is that there are only two receptionists, so we don't get many breaks during the day. One of us has to be at the front desk all the time.

3

**Dentist:** In my country it takes eight years to study to be a dentist. I have a couple of degrees and diplomas! I earn a good salary, but I don't really enjoy my work. Nobody likes coming to the dentist and I often work with people who think I am going to hurt them.

4

**Engineer:** The good thing about my job as an engineer is that it is always interesting. I love working on big international projects with people from all over the world. The only difficult thing is that I often need to give instructions to people in English, so I really need to improve it.

5

Businesswoman: I have my own company with a staff of 500 people. I work long hours and my diary is full every week. I'm in the office by 7.00 in the morning every day and I often don't get home before 9 pm. But I love my job. It's very exciting to have your own business.

6

Journalist: I love doing research and finding exciting new stories. I always try to give true information – as a journalist that's my job. The only thing I don't like about my job is my boss. I hate people telling me what to do! Luckily, we don't see each very much.

#### Exercise 3

1 a 3 a 5 b 2 a 4 a 6 b

#### Page 159

## VOCABULARY

#### Exercise 1

1 e 3 d 5 c 2 b 4 a 6 f

## Exercise 2

1 time off

2 breaks

3 diplomas

4 staff

5 long hours

6 boss

## **Exercise 3**

Students' own answers.

## **LISTENING PART 3: TRAINING**

C 3 C 4 A

Track 100

**Mick:** Hi, Annie. I hear you left your computer programming job.

**Annie:** Yes, Mick. I had to spend so much time away from home. Staying in hotels every week was lonely and boring. So I decided to change my life completely. I've started my own business and I'm working at home.

**Mick:** How exciting! So what's your new business?

**Annie:** I was never very interested in computer programming and I wanted to do something completely different. I'm making and selling cakes.

Mick: Wow! That's amazing. I mean, I knew you didn't enjoy computer programming, but I didn't know that you liked baking! It's great you can work at home.

Annie: Exactly.

**Mick:** How do you sell the cakes? Where do your customers come from?

Annie: I have several customers who order cakes through my website and I sell a few in the baker's shop in town, but nearly all of my cakes are sold at the market.

Mick: And do you like having your own business?

Annie: Well, I earned a lot more in my old job and was always going on holiday, but I don't really care about money.

The hardest thing now is I have to decide everything by myself. When I had a job, I could talk to the people I worked with.

## Page 160

## WRITING

Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## Exercise 2

A 1

**B** 2

	Job 1	Job 2
Place of work	with a circus which will travel in Europe	at the Sea World Aquarium
Tasks	perform as a trapeze artist in a new show	clean the shark tank
Salary	€25–€35,000 per year	€40-€45,000 per year
Hours	6-8 performances a week	35 hours a week
Qualifications	no formal qualifications	degree in marine biology
Things to send	photos and videos of performances	CV and letter

#### **Exercise 4**

a	2	<b>d</b> 3	<b>g</b> 8
b	5	<b>e</b> 6	h 7
c	4	f 1	

## **Exercise 5**

- 1 I am writing to apply for the job of English teacher as advertised on your website.
- 2 I am attaching my CV and a copy of my teaching diploma.
- 3 I am a patient, friendly teacher.
- 4 As you will see from my CV, I have worked for several schools in Granada.
- 5 I look forward to hearing from you.

#### Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

## Page 161

## **SPEAKING**

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

## Exercise 2

- 1 21
- 2 Circus Arts
- 3 a year and a half

## Track 101

**Billy:** Hello, Talia. I'm Billy Cain. Please take a seat.

Talia: Thank you.

**Billy:** So, you're 21 years old, is that

rights

Talia: Yes, I am.

**Billy:** We liked your videos of your performances. Can you tell us about your qualifications and experience? It says on your CV that you have a Diploma in Circus Arts.

**Talia:** Yes, I studied for two years at the National Centre for Circus Arts in London and at the end of the course I got a diploma.

**Billy:** OK, that's interesting but for us, experience of performing is more important, so how many years' experience of trapeze work do you have?

**Talia:** I started when I was 16, but I didn't perform all the time. I have a year's experience at the Melodia Variety Theatre and six months with Smith's Circus – so in total I have a year and a half's experience.

**Billy:** Can you tell us something about your other skills? Can you drive?

**Talia:** Yes I can. I've got my driving licence.

**Billy:** Good. And we'll be travelling through a lot of different European countries. Which other languages do you speak?

**Talia:** Well my mother is Russian, so I speak Russian, English and a little Italian.

## Exercise 3

1	е	3	а	5	С
2	d	4	b		

## **Exercise 4**

- 1 What salary are you offering?
- 2 Are the costumes provided?
- 3 Will I get my own hotel room?
- 4 Am I going to perform with other people?
- 5 Who will be my boss?
- 6 How many hours will we practise?
- 7 How much time off will I get per week?

## Exercise 5

1	b	4	а	7	е
2	g	5	С		
2	f	6	d		

#### Exercise 6

1 c 2 a

## Track 102

Man: What time do we start in the mornings?

Woman: Where is the photocopier?

Man: Can I park here?
Woman: Is this my chair?

## Exercises 7, 8 & 9

Students' own answers.

## Page 162

# EXAM FOCUS READING PART 4

#### **Exercise 1**

- **1** e
- 2 d
- **3** c
- 4 a 5 b

#### Exercise 2

- 1 C
- 2 B
- 3 A
- 4 A
- 5 C
- . .
- **6** B

## Page 163

## **LISTENING PART 3**

## Exercise 1

- 1 two
- 2 five
- **3** no
- 4 three
- 5 yes

## Exercise 2

- 1 A
- **2** B
- **3** C
- 4 A
- **5** B

## Track 103

**Narrator:** For each question, choose the correct answer.

You will hear Lena and Max talking about a course which Max has done. Now listen to the conversation.

**Lena:** Max, that course on working in a team – is it good?

Max: It's not bad. When my boss sent me I was worried – I thought he was angry with me for being bad at working in a team!

Lena: What's the teacher like?

Max: Some people thought she needed to help them more – she often seemed to explain things to only a few students. But she included lots of good examples. And it was interesting. We did lots of different things.

**Lena:** Was there anything that you didn't like?

Max: Getting to that college in the morning is hard – there's so much traffic. One day, most students didn't arrive until the coffee break! They should start later. Why, are you going to do the course?

**Lena:** Well, my job's different now from when I first got it. Before, I worked alone – now I'm part of a group. It's like having a completely new job – but without any extra money!

Max: So are you going to do it soon?
Lena: Well, next week's course is full.
And so was next month's. But then
someone decided not to go next month,
so I can do it then. Better than waiting until
next year!

Max: Enjoy it!

## Page 164

## **REAL WORLD**

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

1 C 3 A 2 D 4 B

#### Exercise 3

1 T

2 F You can study any subject.

3 F You can go skiing in the winter.

4 F It's quite small.

## Page 165

## **Exercise 4**

1 d 3 e 5 f 2 c 4 a 6 b

## **Exercise 5**

1 d 2 a 3 c

## Track 104

1

**Receptionist:** Hello. Can I help you? **Student:** Yes. I'm a new student. Can you give me some information about the welcome event, please?

**Receptionist:** Of course. What would you like to know?

**Student:** What time does it start?

**Receptionist:** It starts at 7 o'clock this evening. You might want to get there nice and early. It can get quite crowded.

**Student:** OK, thanks. And which room is it in?

**Receptionist:** It's in the main hall. That's just by the main entrance to the building. You can't miss it. There are signs up all over the place.

**Student:** Thank you. Do I need to take anything with me?

**Receptionist:** Just your student card. I think that's it.

**Student:** Is there food at the event? **Receptionist:** There are a few snacks, but not a full meal. And drinks, of course.

**Student:** OK. Thank you. Bye. **Receptionist:** Bye. Enjoy the event.

#### 2

**Woman:** Oh, hi, Xavier. How are things? **Man:** Hi. I'm OK, thanks. There's a lot to do when you first arrive in a new place.

**Woman:** That's true. And it's quite hard to find your way around, too.

Man: Yes. And you don't want to ask for help all the time!

**Woman:** Yeah. Are you going to the welcome event later today?

Man: Yes, I want to go. How about you?
Woman: Yeah, I'm definitely going.
It should be good, and hopefully we'll meet lots of people, too.

Man: Shall we go together?

**Woman:** That's a good idea. Where shall we meet?

Man: Let's meet in the student café near the main entrance at 6.30. We can have a coffee, then go to the event.

**Woman:** That sounds great. See you later.

Man: See you.

3

Man: Hi. Are you a new student?
Woman: Yes. My name's Maria.
Man: Nice to meet you. I'm Bartek,

Woman: Where are you from?
Man: I'm from Poland. And you?

Woman: From Italy.

Man: Oh, nice. I went to Rome last year. I really liked it. When did you arrive?

**Woman:** Last week, on Wednesday. **Man:** Oh. I just arrived yesterday.

What are you studying?

**Woman:** International Business. It's a one-year course, and I hope I can get some work experience in the holidays. What about you?

Man: I'm studying Biology.

**Woman:** Oh, that's interesting. Shall we go and find some food? I think there's some over there.

Man: Good idea. I think there are some

## Exercise 6

1 Can you give me

2 What time

3 Which room

4 Do I need to

5 Is there

6 about you

## Exercise 7

1 a 3 a 2 b 4 b

## Exercises 8 & 9

the city: Switzerland, close to the Alps, high mountains all around it, old and modern and lots of young people study there. One of the most famous sights in the city is the Water Jet, the water goes up to 140 metres into the air.

organisations in the city: a lot of well-known organisations have their main buildings in Geneva, such as the United Nations and the Red Cross. Also a lot of big companies have offices there, so a great place to study and get work experience.

the university: one of the best universities in the world, attracts students from all over the world, nearly 40% of the students from other countries; has a lot of modern scientific equipment, great place to study science; halls of residence all over the city, and most students choose to live in these, but some choose to live in apartments. life in the city: quite expensive, but clean and safe; good public transport, lots of cafés and restaurants, and in the winter you can try skiing

## Exercises 10 & 11

Students' own answers.

## UNIT 13

Page 166

## READING

## Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

A Aidan

**B** Jasmine

## Exercise 3

1 She hasn't got any.

2 how to draw and paint

3 She's getting married.

4 six

5 younger

6 move to/get his own flat

## Exercise 4

1 only child

2 single

3 engaged, fiancé

4 stepfather

5 stepsister

6 relatives

7 important person in my life

## **Exercise 5**

Students' own answers.

# VOCABULARY

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

A Harry

B Leo

# Track 105

Jane: Oh, let me see that photo ... are those little girls your stepsisters?

**Aidan:** Yes, that's Minnie on the right and Lulu on the left. Aren't they sweet? **Jane:** Yes, they are! I wish I had little

sisters like that. But what about your brothers? They aren't in the photo? What do they look like?

**Aidan:** Well Harry is the oldest and he's very tall already. He's taller than me – and thinner. He goes running and to the gym a lot so he's quite thin and very fit. He's got straight brown hair and brown eyes and he wears glasses. He looks a lot like me – you can see that we are brothers.

However, he's much cleverer than I am – he's really brilliant! He's studying maths at university and he's really good at it – he gets great marks in all his exams. Leo's the youngest. He's got very fair curly hair and blue eyes. He's not very tall, but he's quite good-looking – much better-looking than and me and Harry! And he's funnier. He's always making people laugh. All the girls like him. But Leo and I don't get on very well. He's not my favourite brother.

Jane: Really, why's that. What's he like?

Aidan: He's just very annoying! To start with he's a bit lazy. He doesn't help around the house and I often do his jobs for him.

And he's also not very kind to Harry. Leo's younger than Harry but he's much more confident and sociable. He has lots of friends and goes out a lot, but Harry is quiet and shy. Leo makes jokes about Harry and laughs at him in front of his friends.

**Jane:** No, that isn't very kind – poor Harry! Does he get upset?

**Aidan:** No, I don't think he notices. He's thinking about other things, but I notice – and I don't like it.

# **Exercise 3**

- 1 sweet
- 2 brilliant
- 3 annoying, lazy
- 4 kind
- 5 confident, sociable
- 6 quiet

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 brilliant
- 2 sweet
- 3 Sociable
- 4 quiet

#### Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

# **Exercise 6**

1 A 3 A 4 B

# Exercise 7

1 B 3 A 5 A 2 B 4 B

#### Exercise 8

Students' own answers.

# Page 168

# **GRAMMAR**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 -er
- 2 more
- 3 than
- 4 better

# **Exercise 2**

- 1 older
- 2 taller
- 3 more successful
- 4 stronger
- 5 faster
- 6 quicker

# Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

# **PUSH YOURSELF B1**

# Exercise 1

- a the same
- **b** different

# Exercise 2

- 1 not as shy as
- 2 as good as
- 3 not as expensive as
- 4 not as dangerous as
- 5 as boring as
- 6 as long as

# Page 169

# LISTENING PART 2: TRAINING

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 2

- 1 D casual
- 2 C sporty
- 3 B smart
- 4 E fashionable
- 5 A cool

# Exercise 3

- 1 1st October
- 2 teenagers
- 3 7.30
- 4 Derrick

# Track 106

Woman: A fantastic new shop is opening in town. It's called Lily's Fashion Boutique and it's going to open in the town centre. You'll need to know the address; it's 149 High Street. There will be an opening party on September 30th and the store will open on the first of October. As you know, there are already many shops here selling ladies' and men's clothes but Lily's Fashion Boutique will be the only store where you can buy things for teenagers to wear. The store will open at 9.30 in the morning and shut at 7.30 in the evening. This is later than most shops in town, which close at 7 o'clock. If you're looking for work in the new shop, contact the manager. His name's Mr Derrick. I'll spell that for you - D-Edouble-R-I-C-K. He'll be happy to give more information.

# **READING PART 5: TRAINING**

- 1 went/was
- 2 than
- 3 to
- 4 lot
- 5 more

#### Page 170

# READING

### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

### Exercise 2

1 B 2 C 3

#### Exercise 3

- 1 Rihanna
- 2 Eddie Redmayne
- 3 Lupita Nyong'o
- 4 Rihanna
- 5 Eddie Redmayne

# **Exercise 4**

- 1 jewellery
- 2 brands
- 3 suits, ties
- 4 fashions
- 5 trainers
- 6 handbag
- 7 sunglasses
- 8 sandals

# Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

# **GRAMMAR**

# Exercise 1

- 1 -est
- 2 most
- 3 the
- 4 best

#### **Exercise 2**

- 1 the most boring
- 2 the cheapest
- 3 the ugliest
- 4 the most famous
- 5 the best, the most expensive
- 6 the hottest

#### Exercise 3

- 1 more important
- 2 the most interesting
- 3 more difficult
- 4 more expensive
- 5 happier

### **Exercise 4**

/ist/

# Track 107

hottest, biggest, thinnest, prettiest, funniest, ugliest

# Exercises 5, 6 & 7

Students' own answers.

# Page 172

# WRITING

# Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

# **Exercise 2**

- 1 People can buy the trainers now, online and in sports shops.
- 2 He likes the colours; they are light and comfortable to wear; they are so cool they will make all your other clothes look good.
- 3 They are expensive, not good value for money, not strong or practical; his feet got wet when he went out in the rain.
- 4 You shouldn't buy them if you want trainers to wear every day. You should buy them if you want trainers that look great.

# **Exercise 3**

- 1 I fell in love with... They are the bestlooking trainers I've seen for a long time ... for me, the best thing about them is...
- 2 On the less postive side...
- 3 So do I recommend... It depends on what you want... (aren't) a good buy...

#### Exercise 4

'sell out' means that the shops/websites will sell all the trainers and none will be left to buy.

#### Exercise 5

# Paragraph 1

**d** introduction where/when you can buy the product

# Paragraph 2

c the good things about the product

# Paragraph 3

a the bad things about the product

# Paragraph 4

**b** conclusion: overall opinion of the product / recommendation

#### Exercise 6

- 1 Paragraph 2
- 2 Paragraph 4
- 3 Paragraph 3
- 4 Paragraph 2
- 5 Paragraph 4
- 6 Paragraph 3

# Exercises 7 & 8

Students' own answers.

# Page 173

# **SPEAKING**

#### Exercises 1 & 2

Students' own answers.

# Exercise 3

- 1 A
- 2 A & B
- 3 A & B
- 4 B
- **5** B
- 6 B

# **Exercise 4**

B 2 A

# Track 108

1

Man: Well, I think the people in the middle of the photo are friends. I'm sure they're having a really good time because they look very happy. They are wearing casual clothes like jeans and shirts and the tall man with the dark hair is wearing sunglasses too. One of the young women has got long red hair and she's got something on her face - it might be face paint. Perhaps they are at a music festival or gig. The women are holding some fruity drinks, but the men haven't got any. It's a sunny day, but I don't think it's very hot because I can see some people with jackets in the background. There are trees with lots of green, so I think it's probably summer. It could be in Britain.

#### 2

Woman: So, I can see a little café in a street. It's really quiet there because there are only two people walking along the street. I think it's probably in a town or city because there are lots of parked cars, but maybe it's early in the morning. In the middle of the photo I can see two people sitting at a small round table. There are some coffee or tea cups, so maybe they're having breakfast. The people are young, maybe 25 to 30 years old and I think they are going to work because they are wearing smart clothes. They look quite serious - maybe they're thinking about work. The woman has got red hair and is wearing a dark jacket and skirt and the man has got short dark hair and is wearing jeans and a jacket. The woman is holding something, but I can't see what it is. I think one of them goes to work by bike because I can see a bike and a bike helmet behind them.

# Exercise 5

- 1 I think
- 2 I'm sure
- 3 it might be
- 4 Perhaps
- 5 I don't think
- 6 probably
- 7 could be
- 8 maybe

# **Exercise 6**

Students' own answers.

## Page 174

# EXAM FOCUS READING PART 5

# Exercise 1

- 1 F It tests your grammar.
- 2 F There are no options.
- 3 F There may be two shorter texts.
- 4 T
- 5 T

- 1 than
- 2 of 3 Did
- 4 Was
- 5 there
- 6 Would

# **LISTENING PART 2**

Exercise 1

	С	<b>3</b> e	<b>5</b> a
2	d	4 b	

#### Exercise 2

- 1 9.15 / quarter past nine
- 2 Tuesday
- 3 Wralstone
- 4 smartphone
- 5 dress

# Track 109

**Narrator:** For each question, write the correct answer in the gap. Write one word or a number or a date or a time.

You will hear a woman talking at the start of a course on fashion.

Woman: Welcome to this short summer course on fashion. When I've finished speaking, your teacher will take you to the North room for your classes. Thank you for being here at quarter to eight. The early start was because there's so much information to give you. Classes begin at nine fifteen today, and every other day. There's been a change to the timetable: on the one we sent you, it says Wednesday for the lesson on drawing, but it's actually going to be on Tuesday. Then on Thursday a famous fashion photographer is coming to talk to you.

that W-R-A-L-S-T-O-N-E.

We'll give you most of the things you need for the course – a pen, notepad, etc., but please make sure you have your smartphone to take photos – you'll use that every day. On the last day, you'll make something. I'm sure you've all made a skirt at least once already, so it'll be a dress. That's a little more difficult!

His name is Peter Wralstone - you spell

**Page 176** 

# **REAL WORLD**

# Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

# **Exercise 2**

prices are lower

# Exercise 3

1 B

2 A

3 C

# Exercise 4

- 1 F There are lots of malls.
- 2 F Mornings are a good time because it's quieter.
- 3 T
- 4 F The prices aren't fixed so they can change.
- 5
- 6 T

# Page 177

# Exercise 5

1	а	<b>3</b> a	5 b
2	а	<b>4</b> b	<b>6</b> a

# Exercise 6

1 d 2 c 3 b

Track 110

1

Assistant: Hello. Can I help you?

**Customer:** Yes. I really like this dress, but it's too small. Do you have a bigger size? I'm not sure what size this one is.

Assistant: Let me see. This is a size 36. With designer clothes like this, the sizes are all international, so we use the same sizes here as in most countries in Europe. We usually have all sizes in stock, so let me see if we've got a size 38. Do you want the same colour?

**Customer:** Yes, I like this colour. But do you have it in other colours? Maybe I could see those, too?

**Assistant:** No problem. Ah, yes. Here we are. This is a 38. We've got it in red or green. Would you like to try it on?

**Customer:** Yes, please. Can I try them both?

**Assistant:** Of course. There you go. The changing rooms are just over there, on your left.

Customer: Thank you.

2

Assistant: Hello. Can I help you?

**Customer:** Yes, please. Are these shoes in the sale?

**Assistant:** I'm afraid not. They're full price.

**Customer:** Oh. So, how much are they? **Assistant:** They're 450 Dirham.

**Customer:** Oh, OK. Is there a discount for students?

Assistant: No, I'm sorry, we don't offer any discounts. But there are plenty of other shoes in the sales. If you come this way, I can show you our special offers. Here you are. These are all the sale items. There are some very good price reductions at the moment. Everything on this shelf is half price, so it's worth taking a look.

**Customer:** OK, thanks for your help.

**Customer 3:** So, what do you think? How do they look?

**Customer 4:** They're lovely jeans and they look great on you. That colour really suits you. Do you like them?

**Customer 3:** I'm not sure about them. They're a bit loose. What do you think?

Customer 4: Hmm. I can see what you mean. What about these jeans?

**Customer 3:** I'll go and try them on. Back in a minute!

Customer 3: Right. How do they look?

**Customer 4:** Wow! They look amazing! Do you like them?

**Customer 3:** Yes, I really like these ones. They fit me perfectly and they're really comfortable to wear, too.

**Customer 4:** Yes. And the colour's nicer than the other one. How much are they?

**Customer 3:** That's the other good thing about them. They're on special offer for the shopping festival, so they've got 30% off.

Customer 4: A bargain!

Customer 3: Yeah. I think I'll get them!

# Exercise 7

- 1 bigger
- 2 colours
- 3 sale
- 4 How much
- 5 discount
- 6 look
- 7 suits
- 8 fit

### Exercise 8

I	b	3	k
•	2	А	

# Exercise 9

the city: in the United Arab Emirates; a big, modern city important for business; lots of interesting modern buildings and some of the tallest buildings in the world; on the coast, popular with tourists, lots of beaches, some on islands built especially for tourism; gets very hot in summer, sometimes 50 degrees.

shopping malls: more than 70 shopping malls; Dubai Mall is the biggest shopping mall in the world; designer clothes are often cheaper than in other countries; malls also have other interesting things, like an aquarium and an indoor ski slope! the souks: the place to go if you want cheaper clothes, colourful scarves, carpets, gold jewellery, tasty spices for cooking with, and foods grown in the country, like dates.

the shopping festival: started in 1995, now takes place for one month every year; entertainment in the streets, people come all over the world to find cheap designer clothes; Dubai Global Village has stalls selling clothes and other things from over 40 different countries; there are fireworks at night.

#### Exercise 10

Students' own answers.

# UNIT 14 VOCABULARY

#### Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

#### **Exercise 2**

#### **Photos:**

A basketball

B rugby

C cricket

**D** athletics

E tennis

F football

#### Quiz:

1 tennis

2 football

3 athletics

4 rugby

5 cricket

6 basketball

#### Exercise 3

Most popular to least popular: football, basketball, cricket, tennis, athletics, rugby

# Track 111

Man: Football is the most popular sport in the world. People play and watch football in every country and on every continent in the world. The second most popular sport is basketball. The game comes from the USA and is very popular in North and South America, but there are also lots of basketball fans in China and Europe. Cricket is the world's third most popular sport. This might be a surprise for some people because cricket is not well known in many countries. But you will find a lot of cricket fans in countries like India, Pakistan, the UK, Australia and New Zealand. Tennis is the world's fourth most popular sport. Both men and women play and enjoy tennis all over the world on indoor or outdoor courts. One of the most popular sports in the summer Olympic Games is athletics and it's the fifth most popular sport in the world. In sixth place is rugby. People mostly play rugby in Europe and English-speaking countries like Australia and New Zealand, but it's also very popular in Argentina.

# **Exercise 4**

Students' own answers

#### **Exercise 5**

1 kick

2 throw, team

3 winning, scored

4 racket

5 races

6 net

7 bat, match

# **Page 179**

# READING

### Exercises 1 & 2

Students' own answers.

# Exercise 3

1 T

2 F It was called football because you played it on foot and not riding on a horse

3 F You couldn't play football in the street or in public places.

4 F Women used the same pitches as men before 1921 and then again after 1971.

5 F It's becoming more popular.

# Exercise 4

1 teams

2 pitch

3 goal

4 score

5 loses

6 match

7 rules

8 referee

9 red card

10 send

11 off

# Page 180

# **GRAMMAR**

# Exercise 1

1 can

2 mustn't

3 have to

4 don't need to

# Exercise 2

1 c 3 e 5 d 2 f 4 b 6 a

# Exercise 3

1 have to/need to, can't

2 don't have to/don't need to, can

3 Can, can't

4 must/have to/need to

5 don't have to/don't need to

6 must/need to/have to

7 must/need to/have to, must/needs to/ has to

8 Do ... have to/need to

#### Exercise 4

Students' own answers.

# Page 181

#### LISTENING

# Exercise 1

Students' own answers.

# Exercise 2

1 long-distance races

2 the mountains above the Rift Valley

#### Exercise 3

Because they run all the time as they are poor and don't have transport.
For example, they have to run to school every day because their families don't have cars and there aren't any buses.

Because they live in the mountains, they often have to run up and down hills. This makes their legs strong and is good for their breathing.

# Track 112

Interviewer: I'm here in the Rift Valley in Kenya, at a school which specialises in training local children to become long-distance runners. With me is Florence Kipoge, a teacher at the school. Florence, I've just watched some of the students from the school running and they all look like future champions to me. What do you think are the reasons there are so many amazing runners here?

Florence: Well, the children you saw today don't come from rich families. This means that all their lives they have to walk – and run – everywhere. For example, they have to run to school every day because their families don't have cars and there aren't any buses. When I was a teenager, I lived five kilometres from school and I ran there and back every day.

**Interviewer:** So people here need to be good at running because there's very little transport?

**Florence:** Yes. Also, because we live in the mountains, we often have to run up and down hills. This makes our legs strong and is good for our breathing.

**Interviewer:** Lots of the children run barefoot, without shoes, don't they? Do you think that helps?

**Florence:** Yes, it's very good for your whole body to run and walk without shoes. It makes your feet strong and you have to use your legs and body in a different way. It gives you a good running style.

Interviewer: But doesn't it hurt your feet?

Florence: You mustn't run long distances on hard, flat roads without shoes – that would hurt your feet. But the roads here are not like city roads. When students from our school start winning competitions and get some money, they often buy running shoes, but sometimes they don't like wearing them! Interviewer: All the students I see seem

very serious and they train very hard. Is this another reason why they do so well?

Florence: Absolutely. This part of Kenya is begutiful but there grap't many jobs.

is beautiful but there aren't many jobs. For the young people here, becoming a professional runner or getting a sports scholarship is a dream. It can change their lives and the lives of their families. So they work very, very hard.

1 b 4 a 7 b 2 a 5 b

3 b 6 a

#### Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

# **VOCABULARY**

#### Exercise 1

1 do

2 play

**3** go

#### **Exercise 2**

Do	Play	Go
aerobics gymnastics judo yoga	handball baseball volleyball	horse riding cycling fishing snowboarding surfing rock climbing skiing sailing windsurfing

#### Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

# Page 182

# **WRITING PART 7: TRAINING**

### Exercise 1

1 B

**2** C

3 A

# **Exercise 2**

Students' own answers.

# **Exercise 3**

Tenses used: past continuous and past simple

# **Exercise 4**

- 1 It's longer because some words have been added. It's more interesting because of the adjectives used.
- 2 adjectives they give you more information to help you imagine and 'see' what is happening in the story.

# Page 183

# Exercise 5

#### Suggested answers

- One day I was sitting in a busy/quiet café when I noticed that there was a big/colourful bag on the round table next to me.
- 2 A beautiful woman was walking through the quiet/big park when suddenly she saw a shiny/strange/big/colourful object on the small path in front of her.

3 One afternoon, as I crossing the busy road to my house, a/an expensive/ new/big car stopped in the street next to me and a/an angry/strange man put his big head out of the window to speak to me.

### **Exercise 6**

### Model answer

Charlotte was playing basketball with her friends. When she threw the ball, the wind carried it away. It landed on a roof. 'Why did you do that, Charlotte?' shouted her friend. Charlotte was upset because everyone was angry. She climbed up and got the ball. Everyone was happy because they could play again. (53 words)

# GRAMMAR

# Exercise 1

- 1 was born
- 2 began
- 3 was ... studying
- 4 won
- 5 has taken part
- 6 has won
- 7 stopped
- 8 works
- 9 is working

### Exercise 2

Past simple is used in gaps 1, 2, 4 and 7 as they are referring to finished actions or events in the past.

Past continuous is used in gap 3 as it describes a background event.

Present perfect is used in gaps 5 and 6 as they are referring to experiences in Trischa's life.

Present simple is used in gap 8 as it refers to a present routine.

Present continuous is used in gap 9 because it refers to a temporary action.

# **Exercise 3**

All the words have the same vowel sound.

### Track 113

Woman: bought, thought, taught, saw

# **PUSH YOURSELF B1**

# Exercise 1

- 1 when something happened
- 2 how something happened
- 3 how the speaker or writer feels about something

#### **Exercise 2**

Adverbs of time: Afterwards Adverbs of manner: slowly, carefully, quickly

Sentence adverbs: Surprisingly, Luckily

#### Exercise 3

- 1 afterwards
- 2 fortunately
- 3 suddenly
- 4 before
- 5 Unfortunately

# Page 184

# LISTENING

# Exercise 1

- A Arno
- B Loli
- C Sandra

# **Exercise 2**

- 1 Sandra
- 2 Arno
- **a** 1 l:
- 3 Loli

# Track 114

1

Sandra: I went to my first rugby match when I was living in Cardiff. I was about 18 years old and I wasn't interested in sport at all. I only went because my friends were going, but I loved it! It was cold and raining, but the game was very exciting. The other great thing was the way the fans in the stadium never stopped singing. It was fantastic! Now I'm a serious fan and I have a season ticket to watch the Cardiff Blues, the team I support. I go to all the Blues' home matches and I sometimes follow them to the away matches too.

2

Arno: I started going to race tracks with my father when I was six. He was a big fan all his life so I became one too.

Some people can't understand why I like it. They ask things like: 'Why do you want to watch cars go round and round on a race track? Doesn't it get boring?' The answer is 'No, never!' It's easier to follow what is happening in a race if you watch it on TV but, for me, that isn't as exciting. I prefer to be there. I love the atmosphere, the smell of the petrol and the noise.

3

Loli: I got interested in basketball out of love! I started going to matches at college when I was about 20 because my college boyfriend was a basketball player. For a long time, I was bored. Basketball rules are very complicated, so I didn't know what was happening. But then, slowly, I started to understand the game. Now I like it and find it interesting because it's complicated and because it's a team game. I love watching how the team play together on the court – this is very important in basketball and it changes all the time.

	Sandra	Arno	Loli
Age when he/she started watching the sport	18	6	20
Why he/she started watching the sport	because her friends were going	because his father was a fan – he started going to races as a child	because her boyfriend was a basketball player
Where the sport is played/practised	stadium	race track	(basketball) court
What the person likes about the sport / feels when watching a match	It's exciting – she likes the singing during matches.	He loves the atmosphere, the smell of the petrol and the noise.	It's a complicated, interesting game. She loves watching the team play together.

# **Exercise 4**

**1** c

3 d

2 a

4 b

# Exercise 5

- 1 season ticket
- 2 home matches
- 3 away matches
- 4 live

#### Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

#### Page 185

# **SPEAKING PART 2: TRAINING**

# **Exercise 1**

Students' own answers.

# Exercise 2

	Mei	Luca
basketball	X played a little at school She's not very good very fast game	✓ game popular in his country Olimipia Milano is a good team played in basketball team in college
running	✓ likes running alone it's good to keep fit was in running competitions	x doesn't like running a long way
swimming	✓ lives near the beach – goes often	✓ swims a lot in summer when goes to visit grandfather
tennis	X learned at school difficult to hit the ball makes her arms hurt	✓ goes to a tennis club likes watching tennis – exciting

# Track 115

**Examiner:** Now, in this part of the test you are going to talk together. Here are some pictures that show different sports. Do you like these different sports? Say why or why not. I'll say that again. Do you like these different sports? Say why or why not? All right? Now, talk together.

**Luca:** This is basketball, isn't it? This game is very popular in my country. I like it. I come from Milan and Olimpia Milano is a good team. Do you play basketball?

Mei: I played a little at school, but I don't like it very much. I'm not very good ... It's a very fast game. What about you? Do you play basketball?

**Luca:** Yes, I play basketball sometimes with my friends, when we have time. And I played in the basketball team in my college, but not this year.

Mei: And this one is running. I like running alone. It's good for exercise and to keep fit. In the past I was in running competitions – races. What about you? Do you like running?

**Luca:** No, not very much. I don't like running a long way. I like this sport – swimming. In the summer, I go to stay with my grandfather. His house is near a lake and I swim a lot.

**Mei:** I live near the beach so I go swimming very often. It's great.

**Luca:** And this sport is tennis. I enjoy playing tennis. In the summer I go to a tennis club – and I like watching it too. Do you play tennis?

**Mei:** I learned tennis at school, but I think it's difficult. I'm often too slow to hit the ball and it makes my arms hurt.

# Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

#### **Exercise 4**

Do you think playing basketball is difficult? Do you think swimming is fun? Which of these sports do you like best?

# Track 116

**Examiner:** Do you think playing basketball is difficult, Luca?

**Luca:** I suppose it's not easy to score goals. You have to be very tall to be a good basketball player.

**Examiner:** Do you think swimming is fun, Mei?

**Mei:** In my opinion, swimming is fun but I don't like swimming in cold water. Also, it's a cheap sport to do.

**Examiner:** So, Luca, which of these sports do you like best?

**Luca:** Definitely tennis. I think it's fun to play and exciting to watch.

**Examiner:** And you, Mei, which of these sports do you like best?

**Mei:** From these sports, I like running best. But actually, my favourite sport is football. **Examiner:** Thank you.

Students' own answers

# Exercise 6

Luca would like to try snowboarding. Mei prefers watching sports.

# Track 117

**Examiner:** Now, which new sport would you like to learn, Mei?

Mei: I'm interested in learning how to water-ski.

Examiner: Why?

**Mei:** Because it looks awesome. Some people say it's a dangerous sport, but I think it's amazing.

Examiner: And what about you, Luca?
Luca: I'd like to try snowboarding.
My cousins are very good snowboarders
and I'd like to go snowboarding with them.
I think you need a lot of lessons to stay
safe, and they're quite expensive.

**Examiner:** Which do you prefer, watching sports or playing sports, Luca? **Luca:** I don't know really. It's different for different sports. But probably playing

different sports. But probably playing sports, because it's fun and it's good for you.

**Examiner:** And you, Mei? **Mei:** Definitely watching sports.

My favourite thing is to go to a football match to watch my team.

**Examiner:** Thank you. That is the end of the test.

# Exercise 7

- 1 it looks awesome; I think it's amazing
- 2 I'd like to go
- 3 it's good for you
- 4 My favourite thing is

# Exercise 8

Students' own answers.

# Page 186

# **EXAM FOCUS**WRITING PART 7

#### Exercise 1

- 1 pictures
- 2 tell
- 3 decide
- 4 write
- 5 words

# Exercise 2

# Model answer

The women were playing football in the park. One player kicked the ball into the lake. The players were sad because they couldn't play anymore, but the people in the boat picked up the ball and returned it to the players. The players were happy. (45 words)

# Page 187

# **SPEAKING PART 2**

### Exercise 1

1 b 3 d 5 c 2 e 4 a

Exercises 2, 3, 4 & 5

Students' own answers.

# **Page 188**

# **REAL WORLD**

# Exercises 1 & 2

Students' own answers

# Exercise 3

1 a 3 d 5 e 2 f 4 b 6 c

# Page 189

Exercise 4

KizziGrand

# **Exercise 5**

- 1 KizziGrand
- 2 ClareM
- 3 TomR44
- 4 KizziGrand
- **5** TomR44
- 6 ClareM

# Exercise 6

1 b 2 c 3 d

# Track 118

1

**Customer:** Hello. I'd like to buy two tickets for the match next Saturday.

**Official:** OK. Let's see what we've got. Yes, I've got tickets available at most prices. Which part of the stadium did you have in mind?

Customer: Well, where are the cheapest

**Official:** They're at both ends, behind the goals. There are a few seats in the North Stand for 40 Euros each. They're right at the top.

**Customer:** Will I get a good view of the game?

**Official:** Well, it's hard to say. It depends how the game goes. If the action's all at your end, you'll be fine. If the action's all at the other end of the pitch, you won't see so well. There are some tickets in the side stands for 55 euros. You should get a better view from there.

**Customer:** Oh, OK. I'll take those ones. **Official:** OK. No problem.

**Customer:** And what time do the gates open?

**Official:** They open 45 minutes before the game starts. And next Saturday, the game starts at 7.30, so it will be 6.45.

Customer: OK. Thanks.

2

**Guide:** So, this is where the players come out onto the pitch. Can you imagine coming out and seeing the stadium full of people, all cheering for you?

Male: Wow! The stadium's amazing,

Female: Yeah. It's so big!

Male: I can't imagine playing in front of a big crowd like this!

**Female:** No! I'd be really scared! But I don't play football. I only watch it.

Male: Which team do you support?
Female: Well, I'm from Paris, so I

Female: Well, I'm from Paris, so I support Paris St Germain. They're doing quite well this season. What about you?

**Male:** I support Arsenal. I go and watch them play quite a lot, with my uncle.

Female: Cool.

**Guide:** Right, if you'd like to come this way, we'll go and see the changing rooms.

Girl: That was a great game – so exciting!

Boy: Yeah. I'm so glad Real Madrid won.

**Girl:** Me too. They played well. And their first goal was amazing.

**Boy:** Yeah, a brilliant shot. The goalkeeper had no chance!

**Girl:** They were lucky to get a penalty in the second half.

**Boy:** Yeah. I don't think it was really a penalty. I think the referee got that wrong.

Girl: Yes, but that's football.

### Exercise 7

- 1 support
- 2 What
- 3 great
- **4** too
- 5 chance
- 6 referee

### Exercise 8

1	а	<b>3</b> b	5	b
2	b	<b>4</b> a		

# Exercises 9 & 10

Madrid: the capital city of Spain, also the country's biggest city, home to the Spanish royal family; important government buildings; Plaza Mayor, or Main Square, 400 years old, buildings on the square are expensive flats.

football teams in the city: two big teams – Real Madrid and Atlético Madrid, both teams have thousands of fans and are good at winning; Real Madrid has won 64 trophies in Spain and 24 trophies in European and world competitions; one of the most successful clubs in the world; Atlético Madrid has won the Spanish League and Europa Cup recently, used to play at the Vicente Calderón Stadium but now Wanda Metropolitano; Real Madrid plays at the Bernabéu Stadium.

stadium tours: can go on a tour of stadiums in Madrid; the Bernabéu Stadium first opened in 1947 and can hold 81,000 fans; can sometimes see the players practising on the pitch before a game. buying tickets for matches: cheapest tickets are about 40 euros, most expensive are over 400 euros; best to book your tickets in advance.

### **Exercise 11**

Students' own answers.

# Page 190

# **PROGRESS CHECK 5**

#### Exercise 1

1 D 3 C 2 A 4 B

## **Exercise 2**

1 sociable

2 funny

3 quiet

4 kind

5 lazy

6 clever

#### **Exercise 3**

1 relatives

2 small family

3 only child

4 married

5 important person in my life

6 fiancé

# **Exercise 4**

1 have to

2 need to

3 don't have to

4 can

5 must

6 mustn't

#### **Exercise 5**

1 going, train, competition

2 played, catch, bat

3 play, red card, matches

4 team, do, races

5 went, do, rules

# Page 191

# **Exercise 6**

1 bigger

2 more interesting

3 best

4 friendliest

5 worse

6 busier

# Exercise 7

1 better best

2 more fast faster

3 sport more popular most popular sport

4 one of my most favourite games

5 more safer

#### Exercise 8

1 f 3 a 5 c 2 d 4 b 6 e

#### Exercise 9

1 B 3 C 5 A 2 A 4 C 6 B

#### Exercise 10

1 doing - maths

2 taking - drama

3 do - chemistry

4 revising - history

5 doing - journalist

6 qualifications - farmer

#### Exercise 11

1 The dentist pulled my tooth out. / The dentist pulled out my tooth.

2 A really famous engineer built that bridge.

3 Our geography teacher asked us to find out about rivers.

4 My modern languages teacher gave me really good marks.

# **GRAMMAR REFERENCE**

Page 196

# STARTER UNIT

# BE

#### Exercise 1

1 You're

2 isn't

3 I'm not

4 aren't, We're

5 She's

# Exercise 2

1 is/'s

2 am/m

3 are

4 Is, isn't, is/'s

5 Are, am

# HAVE GOT

### **Exercise 3**

1 hasn't

2 have

Z Huve

**3** have

4 Have, haven't

5 have

# Exercise 4

1 've got

2 haven't got

3 has got

4 Have ... got, haven't

5 haven't got

# CAN/CAN'T/LIKE/DON'T LIKE

### **Exercise 5**

1 She can't paint very well.

2 We don't like dogs.

3 Correct

4 Correct

5 I like watching films on TV.

6 Correc

# **WH-QUESTION WORDS**

# Exercise 6

1 Where

2 Who

3 How

4 When 5 Whose

# Exercise 7

1 What

2 Where

3 How

4 Whose

5 When

# THE APOSTROPHE 'S

#### **Exercise 8**

1 This is my best friend's car.

2 Steve Brown's in my class.

3 The children's books are on the teacher's desk.

4 The new pilots' uniforms are dark blue.

5 It's very noisy here.

6 Peter's so friendly, he's always helping me.

# 3<sup>RD</sup> PERSON *S* IN THE PRESENT SIMPLE

# **Exercise 9**

1 like

2 eats

3 loves

4 come 5 walks

# Page 198

# UNIT 1 PRESENT SIMPLE

# Exercise 1

1 plays

2 get up

3 likes

4 live

**5** goes

# Exercise 2

 Paul doesn't play the piano every evening.

2 I don't get up at 6 o'clock every day.

3 My brother doesn't like football.

4 My friends don't live near me.

5 Hannah doesn't go to school by bus.

# Exercise 3

1 My brother works in Moscow.

2 Tom doesn't play the piano.

3 I play football every weekend.

- 4 Does she **start** work at 9 o'clock every morning?
- 5 My parents don't watch TV in the afternoon.

# **ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY**

# Exercise 4

- 1 I never go to work in the evening.
- 2 I sometimes help my brother with his homework.
- 3 My sister and I walk to college every day.
- 4 I am sometimes late for work.
- 5 I always work hard at college.

# Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 6

- 1 He doesn't like to go camping.
- 2 They don't like getting up early.
- 3 He loves to drink iced coffee.
- 4 We don't want to go shopping this morning.
- **6** She wants to wear her new top to the party.

# Page 200

# UNIT 2 PRESENT CONTINUOUS

#### **Exercise 1**

- 1 are not/aren't watching, are/'re listening
- 2 am/m writing
- 3 Are you doing?, 'm not, am/'m playing
- 4 is/'s running
- 5 isn't washing

#### Exercise 2

- 1 reading
- 2 putting
- 3 cooking
- 4 sitting
- 5 dancing

# PRESENT SIMPLE OR PRESENT CONTINUOUS?

# Exercise 3

- 1 go
- 2 's doing
- 3 love
- 4 's starting
- 5 play
- 6 have

#### Exercise 4

- 1 we are usually getting we usually get
- 2 Histen I'm listening
- 3 my family is hating my family hates
- 4 Mateo is having Mateo has
- 5 Jon has Jon is having
- 6 Are you understanding Do you understand

# Page 202

# UNIT 3 PAST SIMPLE

### Exercise 1

- 1 were, broke, walked
- 2 did ... have, ate, drank
- 3 did ... get, got, gave
- 4 Did ... go, did, went
- 5 Did ... watch, didn't, took, was
- 6 came, weren't, was

### Exercise 2

- 1 left
- 2 won, felt
- 3 made
- 4 met, bought
- 5 began

# Page 204

# **UNIT 4**

# CAN/CAN'T, COULD/COULDN'T + INFINITIVE WITHOUT TO

#### Exercise 1

- 1 can't
- 2 can, can
- 3 can't
- 4 couldn't, could
- 5 Can, can't

# Exercise 2

- 2 Could you swim when you were three? Yes, I could. / No, I couldn't.
- 3 Can you speak more than two languages?
  Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
- 4 Can you skateboard? Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
- 5 Can both of your parents drive? Yes, they can. / No, they can't.

# SHOULD/SHOULDN'T

# Exercise 3

You should: go to bed early, ask parents or friends to help you.

You shouldn't: work late the day before, spend too much time alone, worry

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 should drink
- 2 should wear
- 3 shouldn't eat
- 4 shouldn't ride
- 5 should get
- 6 shouldn't arrive

# Page 206

# UNIT 5

# **PAST CONTINUOUS**

# **Exercise 1**

- 1 were listening/listened, were having
- 2 was sleeping, phoned
- 3 was doing

- 4 woke up, was raining
- 5 were you doing

# Exercise 2

- 1 were driving
- 2 were travelling
- 3 were reading
- 4 were listening
- 5 saw
- 6 was standing
- 7 was telling
- 8 passed
- 9 was coming
- 10 was

# PAST CONTINUOUS AND PAST SIMPLE

#### Exercise 3

- 1 was watching
- 2 often phoned
- 3 realised
- 4 was shining, were singing
- 5 won

# Exercise 4

- 1 was tidying, found
- 2 was leaving, realised
- 3 was watching, cooked/was cooking
- 4 heard, stopped, were doing, walked
- 5 crashed, was updating

# Page 208

# UNIT 6 COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

# Exercise 1

Countable nouns: baby, box, child, knife, man, person, school, strawberry, student, teacher

Uncountable nouns: bread, coffee, juice, milk, money, rice, tea, water

# Exercise 2

babies, boxes, children, knives, men, people, schools, strawberries, students, teachers

# Exercise 3

- 1 an
- 2 any
- 3 Some
- 4 some
- **5** any **6** a

# Exercise 4

- 1 How much
- 2 How many
- 3 A lot of
- 4 a few

**6** no

- 5 a lot of
- **7** a little
- 8 a few

# **IMPERATIVES**

#### Exercise 5

- 1 Don't use
- 2 Don't shout, Talk
- 3 Don't run, Walk
- 4 Don't come, Use

### Exercise 6

- 2 Wash them.
- 3 Don't forget to buy her a present.
- 4 Turn it off.
- 5 Go to bed.

# Page 210

# UNIT 7 PRESENT PERFECT

### Exercise 1

- 1 has met
- 2 have/'ve never been
- 3 Have ... travelled
- 4 has/'s won
- 5 has never swum

#### Exercise 2

- 1 didn't see
- 2 Have you ever been
- 3 haven't
- 4 have been
- 5 have been

# PRESENT PERFECT WITH JUST

# **Exercise 3**

- I'm really hot. I've just run home from college.
- 2 We've just finished eating.
- 3 I've just texted my brother.
- 4 He's just told me he passed his exam.
- 5 They've just arrived back from India.

# Page 212

# UNIT 8 PRESENT PERFECT WITH FOR AND SINCE

yesterday

#### Exercise 1

for	since
24 hours	6 o'clock
400 years	last November
ten minutes	my birthday
three weeks	October 12th
12 months	the end of May

# **Exercise 2**

- 1 two weeks
- 2 25 years
- 3 last weekend
- 4 January
- **5** 23 years
- 6 the age of nine

# PRESENT PERFECT WITH YET AND ALREADY

# Exercise 3

- 1 Have you tidied your bedroom yet?
- 2 They've already finished their college project.
- 3 I don't want to watch that programme. I've already seen it twice.
- 4 Tania doesn't want to go to bed yet. She isn't tired.

### **Exercise 4**

- 1 I haven't worn my new shoes yet.
- 2 We've already finished eating.
- 3 I've already texted all my friends. / I've texted my friends already.
- 4 Have you finished reading that book yet?
- 5 I've already phoned my older sister.

# Page 214

# UNIT 9

# -ING OR TO INFINITIVE AFTER VERBS, ADJECTIVES AND PREPOSITIONS

### Exercise 1

- 1 to tell
- 2 to help
- 3 playing
- 4 watching
- 5 playing
- 6 helping

#### **Exercise 2**

- My friends and always enjoy meeting in town on Saturdays.
- 2 I hope to visit Brazil one day.
- 3 I'm sorry to hear you're ill.
- 4 All my friends enjoy watching football.
- 5 Do you mind waiting a little longer?

# Exercise 3

- 1 to visit
- 2 playing
- 3 having
- 4 to finish
- 5 to spend
- 6 to pass
- 10 pas.
- 7 being
- 8 going

# Page 216

# UNIT 10 THE FUTURE WITH WILL

#### Exercise 1

- 1 won't have
- 2 will go
- 3 Will ... be, won't
- 4 won't pass, will be
- 5 will meet

#### Exercise 2

- We'll probably go to Spain for our holiday next year.
- 2 I think it will be colder tomorrow.
- Perhaps we'll have a new teacher next term.
- 4 Are you sure you'll be OK?
- 5 He probably won't come to our party.

# Exercise 3

- 1 Shall
- 2 11
- 3 Will
- 4 won't
- 5 will
- 6 11

# **Exercise 4**

b	3	е	5	f
C	4	a	6	0

# MAY/MIGHT

# Exercise 5

Tom and Julie are going. The others are not sure.

# Exercise 6

1	е	3	а	5	С
2	f	4	b	6	d

# Page 218

# UNIT 11 BE GOING TO

# Exercise 1

- 1 're going to miss
- 2 're going to ride
- 3 'm going to do
- 4 aren't going to need
- 5 are going to visit

# **Exercise 2**

- 2 A: What are you going to do this evening?
  - B: I'm going to play a video game.
- 3 A: Is it going to rain tomorrow?
  - **B:** No, Look at the red sky. It's going to be sunny all day.
- 4 A: What are you going to do when you leave college?
  - B: I'm going to look for a good job.
- **5 A:** Is your team going to win the match?
  - **B:** No, the other team is much better. We're going to lose.

# PRESENT CONTINUOUS FOR THE FUTURE

- 1 going to eat
- 2 catching
- 3 seeing
- 4 going to do, going to phone
- 5 having

# PRESENT SIMPLE TO TALK ABOUT THE FUTURE

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 leaves
- 2 's having
- 3 is coming
- 4 starts
- 5 finish

# Page 220

# UNIT 12

# ZERO AND FIRST CONDITIONAL

### Exercise 1

- 1 d 2 a
- 3 b
- **5** c **6** f

# **Exercise 2**

- 1 see, 'll/will tell
- 2 'll/will hurt, fall
- 3 don't catch, 'll/will have
- 4 'll/will be, don't leave
- 5 is, 'll/will wake

### Exercise 3

- 1 If I get a new job, I'll earn more money.
- 2 I'll buy a car if I have enough money.
- 3 If I buy a car, I'll use it to go to work.
- 4 I'll get fit if I ride my bike to work.
- 5 I won't get fit if I go to work by bus.

# CONJUNCTIONS: WHEN, IF, UNLESS + PRESENT, FUTURE

# **Exercise 4**

- 1 Unless
- 2 unless
- 3 If
- 4 if
- 5 unless
- 6 When/If
- 7 If
- 8 when

# THE PASSIVE

# **Exercise 5**

- 1 is grown
- 2 are sold
- 3 are shown
- 4 is made
- 5 is closed

# **Exercise 6**

- 1 was built
- 2 were told
- 3 was closed
- 4 was given
- 5 were taken
- 6 was sent

# Page 222

# UNIT 13

# COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

#### Exercise 1

- 1 bigger
- 2 more interesting
- 3 heavier
- 4 warmer
- 5 worse
- 6 larger

# Exercise 2

- 1 I am the best footballer at my college.
- 2 Anna is happier than she was this morning.
- 3 I want to be fitter so I do lots of exercise.
- 4 What is the **most expensive** thing you have?
- 5 Ben's apartment is larger than mine.
- 6 Tom is taller than his father.

# TO BE LIKE AND TO LOOK LIKE

### Exercise 3

- 1 What does he look like?
- 2 What are your new neighbours like?
- 3 What is their new baby like?
- 4 What does she look like?

# AS... AS, NOT AS... AS

### Exercise 4

- 1 He is as tall as his father now.
- 2 The climate in England is as pleasant as the climate in Ireland.
- 3 You must play as hard as you can, if you want to win the match.
- 4 This ice cream's not as tasty as the one we bought yesterday.
- 5 I'm making as many mistakes as I did yesterday.

# Page 224

# UNIT 14 MUST/MUSTN'T

# Exercise 1

- 1 mustn't be
- 2 must wear
- 3 mustn't run
- 3 1110511111011
- 4 mustn't talk
- 5 mustn't use
- 6 must finish

# Exercise 2

- 1 You must visit / go to
- 2 You mustn't use
- 3 You must try
- 4 You mustn't lose
- 5 You must see / visit

# HAVE TO

# Exercise 3

- 1 have to help
- 2 do you have to do

- 3 have to tidy
- 4 Does she have to tidy
- 5 she does
- 6 has to wash
- 7 don't have to do

#### Exercise 4

- 1 have to
- 2 don't have to
- 3 don't have to
- 4 have to
- 5 have to

# NEED TO/DON'T NEED TO

#### Exercise 5

- You don't need to finish the project by Friday.
- 2 I need to phone home to check that everything is OK.
- 3 I really need to work harder or I won't get very good marks.
- 4 She needs to buy some food for dinner tonight.

# CAN/CAN'T

# Exercise 6

- 1 Anyone can become rich and famous.
- 2 Learning a foreign language can be very hard.
- 3 A room in a small hotel can't cost more than fifty pounds.
- 4 When you have small children, you can't leave objects around the house.

# **PHRASAL VERB BANK**

Page 227

# **GETTING ABOUT**

# Exercise 1

get back = return

take off = leave the ground (a plane)
come round = visit someone's house
come in = enter a place

pick (someone) up = collect someone from somewhere

# Exercise 2

- 1 takes off
- 2 get back
- 3 picked me up
- 4 come in
- 5 came round

# Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

# IN THE MORNING

### Exercise 1

take something off = stop wearing
wake up = stop sleeping
get up = get out of bed
go out = leave
put something on = start wearing

- 1 wake up
- 2 get up
- 3 take off
- 4 put (my school uniform) on
- 5 go out

#### Exercise 3

Students' own answers.

# PEOPLE AND COMMUNICATION

#### **Exercise 1**

grow up = become an adult call someone back = return a phone call find out = get information about look after = take care of get on with someone = be friendly with someone

# **Exercise 2**

- 1 look after
- 2 get on
- 3 find out
- 4 call (you) back
- 5 grew up

#### **Exercise 3**

Students' own answers.

# **OTHER PHRASAL VERBS**

#### Exercise 1

lie down = usually something you do before you go to sleep

turn off = stop a machine or light from working

fill in = write information on a form give back = give something to the person who gave it to you

try on = put on clothes to see if they fit

#### Exercise 2

- 1 lie down
- 2 turn off
- 3 try (shoes) on
- 4 fill in
- 5 give back

# **Exercise 3**

Students' own answers.

# **WRITING BANK**

Page 229

# HOW TO MAKE YOUR WRITING BETTER: ADJECTIVES

# Exercise 1

- **2b** We had lunch in a <u>small</u>, <u>friendly</u> restaurant.
- 3b A kind woman showed me the way home.
- 4b I knew I had made a big mistake.

#### **Exercise 2**

- 1 true
- 2 false
- 3 true

#### Exercise 3

- 1 heavy
- 2 important
- 3 modern/lovely
- 4 lovely
- 5 expensive

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 exciting, funny
- 2 beautiful, lovely
- 3 brilliant, great
- 4 friendly, kind
- 5 sunny, pleasant
- 6 great, excellent

#### Exercise 5

- 1 wonderful
- 2 terrible
- 3 amazing
- 4 horrible
- 5 awful
- 6 fantastic

very good	very bad
wonderful	terrible
amazing	horrible
fantastic	awful

# HOW TO MAKE YOUR WRITING BETTER: ADVERBS AND INTERESTING VERBS

### Exercise 1

- **2b** The children were playing <u>happily</u> in the garden.
- 3b I read the invitation carefully.
- 4b She opened the letter slowly.
- **5b** I couldn't see <u>well</u> because it was cloudy.

# **Exercise 2**

- 1 true
- 2 true
- 3 false
- 4 true

# Exercise 3

- 1 loudly
- 2 hungrily
- 3 clearly
- 4 fast
- 5 carefully
- 6 easily
- 7 well
- 8 beautifully

### Exercise 4

- 2 I quickly read the letter.
- 3 She closed the door quietly.
- 4 He carefully carried the hot drinks into the sitting room.
- 5 We walked slowly through the park.
- 6 Mark didn't sleep well last night.

#### Exercise 5

- 1 hurried
- 2 shouting
- 3 relaxing
- 4 jumped
- 5 threw
- 6 cried

# **Exercise 6**

- 1 ran
- 2 shouted
- 3 relaxed
- 4 jumped
- 5 threw

# USE VERB FORMS CORRECTLY TO TALK ABOUT THE PAST, PRESENT AND FUTURE

#### Exercise 1

Hi Jo.

I go swimming next Saturday. My cousin are here at the moment, and he <u>love</u> films. Are you want to come too? There's a new cinema on Wood Road. We can to get the bus. I meet you at the bus stop.

#### Exercise 2

Hi Jo,

I'm going swimming next Saturday. My cousin is here at the moment, and he loves films. Do you want to come too? There's a new cinema on Wood Road. We can get the bus. I can/will meet you at the bus stop.

Sam

# **Exercise 3**

- 1 'm going
- **2** is
- 3 loves
- 4 Do you want
- 5 've never been
- 6 went
- 7 get
- 8 can meet

# **Exercise 4**

- 1 'm going
- 2 went
- 3 've never been
- 4 can get, can meet

- 1 'm going
- 2 bought
- 3 starts
- 4 to come
- 5 have met
- **6** go

# Model answer

Hi Max.

I'm going to a water park next Saturday. Would you like to come? My friend Paul is coming too. He went there last month and loved it. We can get there by train. I think it will be amazing!

Stan

# USE LINKING WORDS AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS TO MAKE SENTENCES LONGER

### Exercise 1

10 sentences

### **Exercise 2**

Dan woke up <u>and</u> got out of bed. He didn't look at his clock. He opened the fridge, <u>but</u> it was almost empty. He was hungry, <u>so</u> he decided to go out for some food. He went to a café, <u>but</u> it was closed <u>because</u> it was only 6.30 in the morning!

# Exercise 3

- 1 but
- 2 and
- **3** so
- 4 because
- 5 but
- **6** so

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 which
- 2 who
- 3 who
- 4 that

## **Exercise 5**

- 1 who
- 2 which

### Exercise 6

- 1 who
- 2 which
- 3 which
- 4 who

# Page 233

# WRITING PART 6: A SHORT MESSAGE

3 d

**4** e

# **Exercise 1**

Write about three things. Write 25 words or more.

# Exercise 2

- 1 don't
- 2 could
- 3 Shall
- 4 Let's
- 5 Why

# Exercise 3

1 c 2 a **5** b

#### **Exercise 4**

- 2 I'm afraid I can't come to your party.
- 3 I'm sorry, but I'll be a bit late.
- 4 Guess what! I won the competition!

#### **Exercise 5**

Hi Joe,

My cousin <u>Beth is</u> (Beth's) coming to visit on Saturday, and I <u>am</u> (I'm) really excited. <u>She is</u> (She's) very good at computer games <u>I have</u> (I've) got a new game and <u>we are</u> (we're) going to play some games together. Do you want to come too? <u>I will</u> (I'll) call you later.

Sam

# Exercise 6

You should say that you can't go to the concert, give a reason why you can't go and suggest another day when you can go.

#### **Exercise 8**

#### Model answer

Hi Laura,

I'm sorry, but I can't go to the concert on Saturday. I have to stay at home because my grandparents are coming to visit. Why don't we meet on Sunday and go to the cinema?

See you soon,

Ana

#### Page 234

# **WRITING PART 7: A STORY**

#### Exercise 1

35 words or more

# **Exercise 2**

- 1 was feeling
- 2 was raining
- 3 arrived
- 4 was carrying
- 5 ate
- 6 played

# Exercise 3

- 1 First
- 2 Next
- 3 Finally
- 4 Suddenly
- 5 Then
- 6 Finally

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 tall
- 2 empty
- 3 pleased
- 4 quick
- 5 high
- 6 ready

# Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

#### Exercise 6

#### Model answer

Alice wanted to watch TV, but her TV was broken. She told her sister. They looked on their computer and quickly found a big, new TV online. It wasn't expensive, so Alice's sister bought it. The next day, the new TV arrived, and Alice felt really happy.

#### Exercise 7

Students' own answers.

# **SPEAKING BANK**

Page 237

# GIVING PERSONAL INFORMATION

# Exercise 1

	Pablo	Lucia
Age	17	18
From	Madrid	Milan

#### **Exercise 2**

1 b 2 c 3 d 4 a

# Track 119

**Pablo:** Hello. My name's Pablo and I'm 17 years old. I'm Spanish and I come from Madrid.

**Lucia:** Hi. My name's Lucia. I'm 18 years old, and I'm Italian. I live in Milan.

# TALKING ABOUT HABITS, LIKES AND DISLIKES

### Exercise 1

doing homework, meeting friends, playing tennis, watching TV

# Exercise 2

- 1 always get up
- 2 am never
- 3 usually do
- 4 often watch
- 5 on Saturdays
- 6 sometimes meet

# Track 120

Girl: I always get up early on school days, and I'm never late for school. I usually do my homework when I get home from school. I don't often watch TV. I usually play tennis on Saturdays, and I sometimes meet my friends at the weekend too.

# **Exercise 3**

basketball

- 1 like
- 2 don't
- 3 listening
- 4 prefer
- 5 favourite

# Track 121

**Boy:** I like maths and science, but I don't like art. I enjoy listening to music, but I don't like singing because I'm not a very good singer. I love sport! I like tennis, but I prefer football to tennis. Basketball is my favourite sport because it's very exciting.

# GIVING OPINIONS AND REASONS

Exercise 1

cycling

#### Exercise 2

- 1 Do
- 2 do
- 3 about
- 4 don't
- 5 think
- 6 going
- 7 What
- 8 prefer
- 9 fun
- 10 love

# Track 122

Girl: Do you like swimming?

Boy: Yes, I do. It's fun. What about you?

**Girl:** No, I don't like swimming. I think it's boring. But I love going to the cinema. It's really interesting. What do you think?

**Boy:** No, I think going to the cinema is expensive. I prefer to watch films at home. My favourite activity is cycling. Do you think cycling is fun?

Girl: Yes, I do. I love cycling!

#### Exercise 3

1 b 2 a

**3** a

#### Track 123

Narrator: One

**Boy:** I often travel to other countries with my family. I like travelling because you visit interesting places and you learn about different countries.

Narrator: Two

**Girl:** My brother loves skateboarding, but I don't like it because I think it's dangerous. You can fall down and hurt yourself.

Narrator: Three

**Boy:** This is my new computer game. I play it a lot. I'm not very good at it, but I love it because it's exciting. Oh, no!

### **Exercise 4**

Students' own answers.

Track 124

Narrator: One

**Girl:** I like reading because it's relaxing and you can learn about a lot of different things.

Narrator: Two

**Boy:** I love football because it's an exciting game, and you feel really good when you win.

Narrator: Three

**Boy:** I don't like shopping because there aren't any good shops here.

# AGREEING AND DISAGREEING

Exercise 1

1

#### Exercise 2

- 1 not sure about
- 2 That's true
- 3 agree with you
- 4 Yes, but

# Track 125

Girl: Do you play any musical instruments?

**Boy:** Yes, I'm learning to play the guitar. What about you?

**Girl:** I'm learning the piano. I think it's very difficult to learn an instrument.

**Boy:** I'm not sure about that. The guitar isn't very difficult, but it's important to practise every day.

**Girl:** That's true. I agree with you that it's important to practise so that you can get better. I think that lessons are very expensive, too.

**Boy:** Yes, but you can watch lessons online and teach yourself. That isn't expensive.

# **DEALING WITH PROBLEMS**

#### Exercise 1

- 1 Could you repeat
- 2 Can you repeat
- 3 say that again

# Exercise 2

- 1 Could you repeat again that again, please?
- 2 Can you repeat me the question, please?
- 3 Could you say that again, please?

# Track 126

Narrator: One

**Teacher:** Don't forget the trip to the museum tomorrow. We're meeting at 9.45.

**Girl:** Could you repeat that, please? **Teacher:** Yes. It's 9.45 tomorrow

**Teacher:** Yes. It's 9.45 tomorrow morning.

Girl: Thank you.
Narrator: Two

**Teacher:** Do you think swimming in the sea is dangerous?

**Boy:** Can you repeat the question, please?

**Teacher:** Of course. Do you think swimming in the sea is dangerous?

**Boy:** Yes, I think that sometimes it can be dangerous, especially in bad weather.

# Narrator: Three

**Girl:** I'm glad you can come to my party. It's at my house. I live at 29, West Street.

**Boy:** Could you say that again, please? I need to write it down.

**Girl:** Sure. It's 29, West Street. It isn't far from here.

#### Exercise 3

1 c 2 a 3 b

# **Exercise 4**

- 1 not, word
- 2 what, called
- 3 know, is

# Track 127

Man: I'm not sure what the word is, but you often play this on the beach, with your friends. You have a ball, and you hit the ball with your hand.

**Woman:** I'm not sure what this is called, but it's something you wear around your neck in winter, when it's very cold.

Man: I don't know what the word is, but it's something you eat. It's sweet, and very cold, and you often eat it in the summer.

# Page 240

# **SPEAKING PART 1**

# Exercise 1

Yes, she does.

# Exercise 3

- 1 or
- 2 because
- 3 because

# Track 128

**Examiner:** Now, let's talk about weekends. What do you do at weekends?

**Ana:** I often go shopping, or I sometimes go to the cinema.

**Examiner:** And who do you like spending your weekends with?

**Ana:** I like spending my weekends with friends, because we laugh and have fun together.

**Examiner:** Now, let's talk about shopping. Where do you like going shopping?

**Ana:** I like going shopping in London because there are lots of good shops.

**Examiner:** And what do you like buying?

Ana: I like buying clothes and shoes because I'm interested in fashion.

- 1 love
- 2 buy
- 3 bought
- 4 liked
- 5 'm going to take

# Track 129

**Examiner:** Now, please tell me something about presents that you buy for other people.

Ana: Well, I love buying presents for people. I usually buy presents for people when it's their birthday. For example, last month I bought a T-shirt for my brother and he really liked it. It's my friend's birthday next week, and I'm going to take her to the cinema as a present.

# **Exercise 5**

1	b	3	b	5	b
	a	4	a	6	b

#### Exercise 6

- 1 have present
- 2 'm going to meet future
- 3 watch present
- 4 cooked past
- 5 'm going to play future
- 6 bought past

# Exercise 7

1	С	<b>3</b> e	<b>5</b> a
	d	4 b	

# Track 130

**Examiner:** Tell me something about what you like doing at home.

Ana: I like watching films, and I enjoy playing video games. I've just got a new game, so I'm quite excited about that.

**Examiner:** Tell me something about what you like to eat with friends.

Ana: I sometimes go to restaurants with my friends, and I prefer Italian food. We went to a pizza restaurant last weekend, and it was very nice.

**Examiner:** Tell me something about the clothes you like to buy.

Ana: I love buying new clothes, and my favourite thing to buy is jeans, because I like wearing them. I bought some really nice jeans last week, so I was happy.

**Examiner:** Tell me something about the places you like to visit.

Ana: I don't like going to big cities because there's too much traffic. I like visiting places that are near the sea. I love swimming when the weather's hot.

**Examiner:** Tell me something about the sports you like to do.

Ana: I like playing football. I play for a team, and we have a game every Saturday. My team doesn't often win, but it's still fun.

#### **Exercise 8**

Students' own answers.

# Page 241

# **SPEAKING PART 2**

Exercise 1

Yes, they do.

#### Track 131

**Girl:** So, do you like playing video aames?

**Boy:** Yes, I do. I've got a lot of video games, and I often play with my friends. I think they're exciting. What do you think?

**Girl:** I'm not sure about that. I sometimes play video games, but I think they're a bit boring.

**Boy:** What about taking photos? Do you like taking photos?

**Girl:** I often take photos when I'm with my friends, but I don't have a camera. I take photos on my phone. What about you?

**Boy:** I like taking photos, too. I have got a camera, and I love taking photos of animals and the countryside.

**Girl:** What about cycling? I love cycling because it's fun, and it's healthy. I always go cycling at weekends. What do you think about it?

**Boy:** I agree with you that it's fun and it's also good exercise. What about music? Do you play any instruments?

**Girl:** No, I don't. But I enjoy listening to music. What about you? Do you play an instrument?

**Boy:** I'm learning to play the drums. I'd like to be in a band one day.

**Girl:** And what about reading books? Do you like reading?

**Boy:** Yes, I like reading books, for example adventure books. But I prefer films to books.

**Girl:** Yes, I agree with you. I think films are more exciting than books.

# Exercise 2

Yes, she does.

# Track 132

**Examiner:** So, which of these hobbies do you like best?

**Girl:** I like cycling the best because I enjoy being active and I like spending time outside, and I think that cycling keeps you fit and healthy.

#### **Exercise 3**

- 1 think
- 2 sure
- 3 like
- 4 about
- 5 do
- 6 agree

### Track 133

**Boy:** I think video games are exciting. What do you think?

Girl: I'm not sure about that.

**Boy:** What about taking photos? Do you like taking photos?

Girl: I often take photos when I'm with my friends.

**Girl:** I take photos on my phone. What about you?

**Boy:** I like taking photos, too. I've got a camera.

**Girl:** I always go cycling at weekends. What do you think about it?

Boy: I agree with you that it's fun.

#### Exercise 4

1	d	3	е	<b>5</b> c	
2	а	4	b		

#### Exercise 5

Students' own answers.

# Track 134

**Boy:** Well, I love music festivals because I'm a music fan. I think they're great. What about you?

**Girl:** I agree with you. I like going to music festivals with my friends. And do you like going to the beach?

**Boy:** Yes, I do. I like swimming in the sea and playing with a ball on the beach. What about you?

**Girl:** Yes, I agree. Going to the beach is fun when the weather's hot. And what about walking in the mountains? I don't like that because it's really difficult. What do you think?

**Boy:** I'm not sure. I like it because you can see the beautiful countryside. I like camping, too because it's fun and you're outside. Do you agree?

**Girl:** No, I don't agree. I hate camping because I prefer to sleep in a comfortable bed! But I like picnics. I often go for picnics with my friends in the summer. Do you like picnics?

**Boy:** Yes, I do. When it's sunny, it's lovely to eat outside in a nice place, for example near a river.

# Exercise 6

Students' own answers.

# Track 135

**Examiner:** Which of these activities do you like the best?

**Boy:** I like going to music festivals because you can listen to some exciting bands and also spend time with your friends and have fun.

**Examiner:** Do you prefer to go on holiday to the beach or the countryside?

**Boy:** I prefer to go to the beach because in the countryside it's sometimes a bit boring, because there aren't many people and there are no restaurants or cafés. At the beach there are lots of people, so it's more exciting.

**Examiner:** Do you prefer swimming in the sea or in a swimming pool?

Boy: I prefer swimming in the sea.

It's more interesting because you can see different things around you, but in the swimming pool you just have to go up and down all the time, so I think it's a bit boring.

# ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and publishers would like to thank the following contributors:

Grammar on the move: Lucy Passmore Grammar reference: Bryan Goodman-Stephens

The authors and publishers are grateful to the following for reviewing the material during the writing process: Italy: Cressida Hicks, Rachael Smith; Portugal: Liliana Moreira; Spain: Vicky Gibney, Chris Johnson

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting and in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

# Photography

Key: ST = Unit Starter, U = Unit, CA = Communication activities, GR = Grammar Reference, PVB = Phrasal verb builder, WRB = Writing Bank, SPB = Speaking Bank.

The following images are sourced from Getty Images.

ST: Ben Pipe Photography/Cultura; Hero Images; Sam Edwards/OJO Images; Eric Audras/ONOKY; mediaphotos/E+; Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/ Blend Images; Klaus Vedfelt/DigitalVision; Tom Werner/DigitalVision; Klaus Tiedge; Mike Lawrie/Getty Images Entertainment; NurPhoto; Jean Baptiste Lacroix/WireImage; U1: Maskot; Westend61; Peathegee Inc./Blend Images; bymuratdeniz/E+; dardespot/E+; Sergey Ryumin/ Moment; LWA/Sharie Kennedy/Blend Images; Blend Images-Hill Street Studios/Brand X Pictures; GiorgioMagini/iStock/Getty Images Plus; RoBeDeRo/E+; Keith Wood/The Image Bank; ERproductions Ltd/ Blend Images; Chris Ryan/Caiaimage; Er Creatives Services Ltd/ Photodisc; Vladimir Godnik; Digital Vision/Photodisc; Yellow Dog Productions/The Image Bank; aurmios000720/Aurora Photos; Echo/ Juice Images; Hero Images; Hill Street Studios/Blend Images; Juanmonino/E+; @fitopardo.com/Moment; fitopardo.com/Moment Open; Thomas Barwick/Stone; U2: Tetra Images; Kangheewan/Moment Open; Philippe Sainte-Laudy Photography/Moment; mikroman6/ Moment; Sergey Ryumin/Moment; DEA/G.SIOEN/De Agostini; Stefan Christmann/Corbis NX; Shaji Manshad/Moment Open; Mariia Kamenska/EyeEm; David Crespo/Moment; Daniel Delgado/Moment; Jeremy Walker/The Image Bank; John Coletti/The Image Bank; VukasS/ E+; Klaus Tiedge; Nico Tondini/Photographer's Choice RF; nullplus/ iStock/Getty Images Plus; LightFieldStudios/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Justin Lewis/Taxi; Henn Photography/Cultura; Caiaimage/Trevor Adeline; Kieran Stone/Moment; annhfhung/Moment; James O'Neil/ Stone; 1001slide/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Kim Rogerson/Moment; PeopleImages/E+; Blend Images-JGI/Jamie Grill; BFG Images; RYO/a. collectionRF; Don Hammond; imagenavi; Fertnig/E+; Echo/Juice Images; SolStock/E+; Klaus Vedfelt/DigitalVision; Compassionate Eye Foundation/DigitalVision; Thomas Northcut/DigitalVision; U3: Pekic/ E+; Peter Dazeley/The Image Bank; Colin Anderson/Blend Images; stilletto82/DigitalVision Vectors; Resolution Productions; Tom Merton/ Caiaimage; Nattapong Wongloungud/EyeEm; Tim Robberts/The Image Bank; ISAAC LAWRENCE/AFP; Westend61; Sofie Delauw/Cultura; DougSchneiderPhoto/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Walter McBride/ WireImage; Rob Kim/Getty Images Entertainment; tomch/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Zsolt Hlinka/Moment; U4: Matthew Leete/DigitalVision; GibsonPictures/E+; MoMo Productions/Stone; Laurence Monneret/The Image Ban; Peter Muller/Cultura; alvarez/E+; skynesher/E+; Oliver Burston/Ikon Images; Stockbyte; Westend61; PhotoAlto/Eric Audras; Ebby May/The Image Bank; Michael Heim/EyeEm; amanaimagesRF; elenaleonova/E+; interstid/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Pollyana FMS/ Moment; Ian Lishman/Juice Images; Sally Anscombe/Moment; svetikd/ E+; Maskot; Adie Bush/Image Source; Nick David/DigitalVision; powerofforever/iStock/Getty Images Plus; kulicki/iStock/Getty Images Plus; David Soanes Photography/Moment; Samarskaya/DigitalVision

Vectors; U5: franckreporter/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Matthias Tunger/ Photodisc; traumlichtfabrik/Moment; Jose A. Bernat Bacete/Moment; Yaorusheng/Moment; Miss Pearl/Moment; Alex B. Huckle/FilmMagic; Image Source; Keystone-France/Gamma-Rapho; Geber86/E+; DEA/V. GIANNELLA/De Agostini; Sean Gallup Getty Images News; fhm/ Moment; Schöning/ullstein bild Dtl; martin-dm/E+; Maskot; kosmos111/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Neustockimages/E+; Tom Merton/OJO Images; Todd Pearson/Photodisc; Westend61; Nutexzles/ Moment; kbeis/DigitalVision Vectors; U6: Image Source; Sigrid Gombert/MITO images; Westend61; FotografiaBasica/E+; Jupiterimages/Taxi; ATU Images/Photographer's Choice; David Murray/Dorling Kindersley; The Real Tokyo Life/Moment; Keiko Iwabuchi/Moment; Steven Puetzer/Photolibrary; Paolo De Santis/ EyeEm; markos86/E+; Pekic/E+; Andrea Chu/DigitalVision; andresr/ E+; Alina555/E+; Lumina Images/Blend Images; Mathias Kniepeiss/ Getty Images News; Digital Vision/Photodisc; Basilios1/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Maica/E+; Maskot; Sandeep Kapoor/EyeEm; Halfpoint Images/Moment; U7: mikroman6/Moment; FatCamera/E+; BraunS/E+; zeljkosantrac/E+; EmirMemedovski/E+; Yuri\_Arcurs/DigitalVision; Mike Harrington/DigitalVision; Westend61; De Agostini Picture Library; CRIS BOURONCLE/AFP; Peathegee Inc; Philippa Langley/ Cultura; Dave J Hogan/Getty Images Entertainment; Steve Prezant/ Image Source; Hero Images; Matt Anderson Photography/Moment; Loop Images/Universal Images Group; jax10289/iStock Editorial/Getty Images Plus; Eye Ubiquitous/Universal Images Group; Caiaimage/Tom Merton; U8: Amer Ghazzal/Moment; mbtaichi/iStock/Getty Images Plus; thyme/E+; a40757/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Martin Barraud/OJO Images; shen wei/Moment Open; Westend61; simonlong/Moment; rappensuncle/E+; Martin Deja/Moment; Jumping Rocks/Universal Images Group; Katherine Frey/The Washington Post; Miemo Penttinenmiemo.net/Moment; Halfpoint/iStock/Getty Images Plus; patrickheagney/E+; Fancy/Veer/Corbis; WLADIMIR BULGAR/ SCIENCE PHOTO LIBRARY; Dieter Weck/500px Prime; Tara Moore/ DigitalVision; diane39/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Westend61; Jed Share/ Kaoru Share; U9: Westend61; Martin Novak/Moment; praetorianphoto/ E+; Ariel Skelley/DigitalVision; Francesco Piacentini/EyeEm; Gary John Norman; Echo/Juice Images; Hill Street Studios LLC/ DigitalVision; BananaStock/Getty Images Plus; Ezra Bailey/ DigitalVision; Dougal Waters/Photodisc; DGLimages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; PeopleImages/E+; PeopleImages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Steve Debenport/E+; Boy\_Anupong/Moment; maydays/Moment; WILLIAM WEST/AFP; Dean Fikar/Moment; Igor Ustynskyy/Moment; U10: Jeff Greenberg/Universal Images Group; Sasha Mordovets/Getty Images News; Tom Shaw/Getty Images Sport; E\_Rojas/iStock Editorial/ Getty Images Plus; Elizabeth Beard/Moment; kasto80/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Sascha Kilmer/Moment; Dmitry Lopatin/EyeEm; PeopleImages/E+; Jutta Klee/Canopy; xavierarnau/E+; DuKai  $photographer/Moment; zoranm/E+; David Callan/i Stock/Getty\ Images$ Plus; Hero Images; Prapass Pulsub/Moment; GARDEL Bertrand/hemis. fr; Miles Ertman/All Canada Photos; joe daniel price/Moment; Pablo Cersosimo/robertharding; U11: Hero Images; JGI/Jamie Grill; GCShutter/E+; Eric Audras/ONOKY; Tetra Images; Nikada/E+; Cristian Bortes/EyeEm Premium; martin-dm/E+; vgajic/E+; piola666/ E+; Portra/E+; SolStock/E+; Isabel Meinhold/EyeEm; Doug Armand/ Photolibrary; poba/E+; Juanmonino/E+; Marco Bottigelli/Moment; brittak/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Johner Images; Anna Bizon; olaser/ iStock/Getty Images Plus; Vijay Patel/DigitalVision Vectors; U12: Monty Rakusen/Cultura; Sebastián Crespo Photography/Moment; SolStock/E+; Hill Street Studios/Blend Images; bo1982/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Sergio Mendoza Hochmann/Moment; Sam Edwards/ Caiaimage; Ariel Skelley/DigitalVision; davidf/E+; Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/ DigitalVision; Amanda Edwards/WireImage; SusanHSmith/E+; Seth Joel/The Image Bank; BJI/Blue Jean Images/Collection Mix: Subjects; kali9/E+; Blend Images-Peathegee Inc; track5/E+; Bastiaan Slabbers/ NurPhoto; Boston Globe; Artyom Geodakyan/TASS; Janina Laszlo/ STOCK4B; GlobalVision Communication/GlobalVision 360/Moment; MichalLudwiczak/iStock Editorial/Getty Images Plus; Elenarts/iStock/ Getty Images Plus; John Wildgoose/Caiaimage; U13: Caiaimage/Robert Daly; Hero Images; martinedoucet/E+; Christie Goodwin/Redferns; Csondy/E+; Fred Duval/FilmMagic; Nicholas Hunt/Getty Images Entertainment; MPI02/Bauer-Griffin/GC Images; Megan Maloy/Image

Source; Klaus Vedfelt/DigitalVision; Maskot; Flashpop/DigitalVision; JD Dallet/arabianEye; Amanda Hall/robertharding; COPIX/ Construction Photography/Avalon/Hulton Archive; Image Source/ Photodisc; U14: mihailomilovanovic/E+; ADRIAN DENNIS/AFP; IAN KINGTON/AFP; Charlotte Wilson/Offside; Simon Stacpoole/Offside; Patrick HAMILTON/AFP; Massimiliano Ferraro/NurPhoto; Tim Nwachukwu/NCAA Photos; SIMON MAINA/AFP; peepo/E+; Caiaimage/Chris Ryan; Axel Bueckert/EyeEm; aldomurillo/E+; Angel Martinez/Real Madrid; Akbulut/Anadolu Agency; Matthew Ashton/ Corbis Sport; Juan Silva/Photographer's Choice; Thomas Barwick/ Stone; Cavan Images; Kevin Vandenberghe/Moment; simonkr/E+; Ralf Hiemisch; CA: Dave and Les Jacobs/Blend Images; Danita Delimont/ Gallo Images; Nazar Abbas Photography/Moment; Kyle Monk/Blend Images; lightkey/E+; Hinterhaus Productions/DigitalVision; Shy Al Britanni/arabianEye; izusek/E+; Hero Images; GR: Tony Anderson/ DigitalVision; Sean Justice/Taxi; fstop123/E+; Zubin Shroff/The Image Bank; Jonelle Weaver/Photolibrary; Frank Rothe/The Image Bank; skynesher/iStock/Getty Images Plus; NomadicImagery/Moment; Images say more about me than words/Moment; Morsa Images/ DigitalVision; MATJAZ SLANIC/E+; FG Trade/E+; creacart/iStock/ Getty Images Plus; Michael Heim/EyeEm; Dan Dunkley/Cultura; Mike Harrington/DigitalVision; Vasil Nanev/EyeEm; Westend61; SolStock/ E+; Fancy/Veer/Corbis; PVB: Laurence Dutton/E+; Andrea Comi/ Moment; PeopleImages/E+; Hero Images; WRB: hobo\_018/iStock/ Getty Images Plus; Carlina Teteris/Moment; South\_agency/E+; SPB: Benjamin Van Der Spek/EyeEm; Ben Pipe Photography/Cultura; Alain SHRODER/ONOKY.

The following images are sourced from other sources.

U4: Aurora Photos/Alamy Stock Photo; David Crausby/Alamy Stock Photo; U5: Adrian Arbib/Alamy Stock Photo; petererikforsberg/Alamy Stock Photo; U7: WENN Rights Ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; U9: Thomas Cockrem/Alamy Stock Photo; U10: Richard Levine/Alamy Stock Photo; Leonardo da Vinci Museo for the image 'Leonardo Da Vinci Museum in Rome, Italy'. Copyright © Leonardo da Vinci Museo. Reproduced with permission; U13: Jade ThaiCatwalk/Shutterstock; U14: ImageBroker/Alamy Stock Photo.

Front cover photography by Supawat Punnanon/EyeEm; Patrick Foto; fStop Images-Caspar Benson; Alexander Spatari; primeimages.

# Video still photography

The following stills are sourced from Getty Images.

U2: Chris Cheadle/All Canada Photos; Christopher Morris-Corbis/
Corbis Historical; U3: John Lamparski/WireImage; Andersen Ross/
Photodisc; U4: allinvisuality/iStock/Getty Images Plus; U6: Grant Faint/
Photographer's Choice; Imagno/Hulton Archive; Creativemarc/iStock
Editorial/Getty Images Plus; U8: Dragos Cosmin photos/Moment;
U9: Jeff Greenberg/Universal Images Group; Boy\_Anupong/Moment;
U11: naruedom/iStock/Getty Images Plus; Lisa Stirling/DigitalVision;
andresr/E+; Thinkstock Images/Stockbyte; Jorg Greuel/Photodisc;
U12: Jeoffrey Maitem/Getty Images News; Mike Hewitt/Getty Images
Sport; U13: SEBASTIAN D'SOUZA/AFP; U14: Lonely Planet; Chris
Brunskill/Fantasista/Getty Images Sport; Soccrates Images/Getty
Images Sport; TF-Images/Getty Images Sport; CdelRio/RooM; JEANPHILIPPE KSIAZEK/AFP.

#### Video

The following videos are sourced from Getty Images

U1: AhmetovRuslan/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Mageed/
Creatas Video; Aerial Filmworks; ferrantraite/Creatas Video;
Miguel Fernández Sitges/Moment Video RF; Geoff Tompkinson/
Iconica Video; Schroptschop/Creatas Video; Thomas Barwick/Image
Bank Film: Signature; Yellow Dog Productions Inc./Image Bank
Film:Signature; Stewart Cohen Pictures/Image Bank Film:Signature;
HeroImagesFootage/Creatas Video; U2: AhmetovRuslan/Creatas
Video+/Getty Images Plus; Guillaume749/Creatas Video+/Getty
Images Plus; Maxvis/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; John Downer
Productions/Image Bank Film; laughingmango/Creatas Video; gilaxia/
Creatas Video; 1001slide/Creatas Video; selected-takes/Vetta; ABC
Studios; shironosov/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Kevin K Li/

Image Bank Film; joelnberg/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; U3: AhmetovRuslan/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Craig McCourry/ Verve+; Chuck and Sarah Fishbein/Image Bank Film; Colm O'Molloy/ Image Bank Film; Fluorescent Films Ltd/Image Bank Film:Signature; HeroImagesFootage/Creatas Video; Andrew Burton/Getty Images Editorial Footage; Sony Pictures Entertainment/Image Bank Film; U4: AhmetovRuslan/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Erik Van Ingen/ Image Bank Film; danr13/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; simonkr/ Creatas Video; Wavebreakmedia/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; MediaProduction/Creatas Video; Education Images/Universal Images Group; NurPhoto; A&E Television Networks/Image Bank Film; U5: AhmetovRuslan/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; querbeet/Creatas Video; Jumpystone/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; INP Media/ Photodisc; John Ambrose/Image Bank Film; Gal Productions/Image Bank Film; Martin Ruegner/Image Bank Film; jaksa95/Creatas Video; Jochen Eckel/Creatas Video; HDXD CREWS/Image Bank Film; INP Media/Image Bank Film; Rick Steves/Image Bank Film; Jorg Greue/ Image Bank Film; Robert Toebbe/Image Bank Film; Doug Armand/ Image Bank Film; U6: AhmetovRuslan/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; pigprox/Creatas Video; vichie81/Creatas Video; John Ambrose/ Image Bank Film; Gogol Lobmayr/Corbis Video; YurySha/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Jannoon028/Creatas Video+; Captamotion/ Image Bank Film; Origlia Video/Image Bank Film; Visivasnc/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; U7: AhmetovRuslan/Creatas Video+/ Getty Images Plus; emrezengin/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; giddyuptimelapse/Creatas Video; Pawel Libera/Moment Video RR; ProFilm4K/Creatas Video; Querbeet/Creatas Video; TobyBritton/ Creatas Video; Hal Bergman/Image Bank Film; Do Diligence Inc./ Image Bank Film:Signature; John Lamb/Iconica Video; cetinozbilen/ Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Sky News/Film Image Partner; Mattia Bicchi Photography/Moment Video RR; captamotion/Creatas Video; ITN; OmniMovi Ltd/Corbis Video; Robert Harding Video/ Verve+; U8: AhmetovRuslan/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; edwardmallia/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; TrEKzo/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Ascent Xmedia/Image Bank Film; Geoff Tompkinson/Iconica Video; LAND comunicazioni srl/DigitalVision; opal2/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Sky News/Film Image Partner; londonimages/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Allstar Picture Library/Photolibrary Video; monkeybusinessimages/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Nikocam/Corbis Video; Peresmeh/Creatas Video; FancyStudio/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Spotmatik/ Photolibrary Video; Henglein And Steets/Image Bank Film; Steve Duchesne/Image Bank Film:Signature; simonkr/Creatas Video; Kosamtu/Creatas Video; U9: AhmetovRuslan/Creatas Video+/ Getty Images Plus; Gerard\_3183/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Earthvisions/Image Bank Film; Cordell Jigsaw Productions/Image Bank Film; David Ewing/Moment Video RR; giddyuptimelapse/Creatas Video; Wavebreakmedia/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; SolStock/ Vetta; helivideo/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Salvador Sanchez/ Getty Images Editorial Footage; Helifilms/Image Bank Film; Quinn Rooney/Getty Images Editorial Footage; narkorn/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; phaitoons/Creatas Video; Discovery FootageSource; Rick\_ Jo/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Seven Network (Operations) Ltd/Seven West Media; U10: AhmetovRuslan/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; creuxnoir/Creatas Video+; SkyworksFootage/Vetta; Paolo Cipriani/Image Bank Film; SimonSpear/Creatas Video; Discovery FootageSource; piola666/Creatas Video; Multi-bits/Image Bank Film; Marco Maccarini/Creatas Video; Christopher Furlong/Getty Images Editorial Footage; Julian Elliott/Image Bank Film; Komplett Media/ Image Bank Film; U11: AhmetovRuslan/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Geoff Tompkinson/Iconica Video; Nordic United Publishing/ Image Bank Film; Rolf Sjogren/Image Bank Film; scanrail/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; TRAVELXP HD/Image Bank Film; Johnér Motion/Verve+; SaddamStock/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; simonkr/Creatas Video; monkeybusinessimages/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; WOWstockfootage/Iconica Video; U12: AhmetovRuslan/ Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; xenotar/Creatas Video; GoranQ/ Creatas Video; Purplevideos/Creatas Video; alice-photo/Creatas Video; DonHammond/Creatas Video; kali9/Vetta; Linghe Zhao/Image Bank Film: Signature; HeroImagesFootage/Creatas Video; Henglein And Steets/Image Bank Film; Stock KM/Image Bank Film; Simonkr/

one80: Signature; U13: AhmetovRuslan/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; creuxnoir/Creatas Video; Henglein And Steets/Image Bank Film; Aerial Filmworks; Spotmatik/Photolibrary Video; Martin Puddy/Image Bank Film; Pierre Ogeron/one80; Geoff Tompkinson/Iconica Video; ImageDB/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; pictafolio/Creatas Video; viafilms/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; Robert Harding Video/Photolibrary Video; FluxFactory/Creatas Video; nk87/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; DeReGe/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; U14: AhmetovRuslan/Creatas Video+/Getty Images Plus; piola666/Creatas Video; GoranQ/Creatas Video; vichie81/Creatas Video; Mattia Bicchi Photography/Moment Video RR; Denis Doyle/Getty Images Sport; Clippn/Getty Images Editorial Footage; ITN; Anadolu Agency/Footage.

#### Illustrations

Chris Chalik; Denis Cristo; Niall Harding (In the style of Steven Johnson); Derren Toussaint (In the style of Steven Johnson).

#### Audio

Produced by Creative Listening and recorded at Tileyard Studios, London.

Speaking bank produced by Dan Strauss and recorded at Triangle, Cambridge.

Grammar on the move audio produced by Dan Strauss and recorded at Triangle, Cambridge.

Real World documentary audio produced by Dan Strauss and recorded at Half-ton Studios, Cambridge.

The following audios are sourced from Getty Images.

U1: Lenny Marcus/Soundexpress; U2: Mike Bridge/Soundexpress; U3: EasyTunes/Soundexpress; U4: Emerson Swinford/Soundexpress; U5: Claudio Giovann Colombo/SoundExpress; U6: Streicher Trio/SoundExpress; U7: Vytenis Misevicius/SoundExpress; U8: Dmitriy Shironosov/SoundExpress; U9: Sergii Pavkin/SoundExpress; U10: juqboxmusic/SoundExpress; U11: CagdasTakmaz/SoundExpress; U12: Claudio Giovann Colombo/SoundExpress; U13: Francesco Biondi/SoundExpress; U14: RFM/SoundExpress.

Page make up EMC Design Ltd

# OPEN WORLD

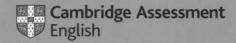
# TAKING YOU FURTHER!

Embark on a journey beyond the traditional boundaries between exam preparation and real-world language in Open World A2 Key.

- Maximise performance with the systematic Exam Journey: training for each task, leading to full task practice in the Exam Focus
- Embed strategies for exams success with *Exam tips* and *Exam facts* throughout
- Open up Real World language knowledge with audios and texts introducing common yet surprising expressions, then dive into short video documentaries
- Grow students' capability and confidence with higher-level vocabulary and reach new heights with Push yourself to B1 sections
- Launch mobile animations, before or after class, to spark learning with Grammar on the move









# **Experts together**

Our aim is to deliver the materials you tell us you need. Exclusive insights from test development and candidate performance guarantee expert content. The result is a unique Exam Journey in each course, ensuring every student is ready on exam day. From skills development to exam tasks, language discovery to real-world usage, we create better learning experiences, together.

Experience

Better

Learning

